

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN  
VISWA BHARATI  
LIBRARY

435

A9





*CHAMBERS'S EDUCATIONAL COURSE.*

---

GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
GERMAN LANGUAGE  
WITH EXERCISES.

By CARL EDUARD AUE, PH. D.

FORMERLY GERMAN MASTER IN THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.



W. & R. CHAMBERS  
LONDON AND EDINBURGH  
1883



Edinburgh :  
Printed by W. & R. Chambers.

## P R E F A C E.

---

IN placing the present volume in the hands of students of the German language, we cannot refrain from impressing upon their minds the incalculable importance of a thorough study of the grammar. We state the result of our long and undivided attention to this branch of education, when we say, that every endeavour to teach or learn German, in which the grammar does not hold the principal place, must necessarily prove an unsatisfactory, if not unsuccessful, attempt. The complaint which is not unfrequently made, that the German is a difficult language, is generally occasioned by an imperfect knowledge of the theory upon which it is constructed. Every intelligent teacher, we believe, will bear us out in saying, that any student of moderate abilities can in a comparatively short time acquire a correct and thorough knowledge of German, if he be taught by a sound and well-arranged system of grammar; whereas even the most cursory glance at the peculiar character of the language, must convince every unprejudiced mind of the absurdity of expecting the same result from a method which either ignores the theory altogether, or assigns to it a secondary place.

For the system adopted in the present treatise, we have the authority of the best German grammarians, whose names in themselves vouch for its soundness and stability. We have availed ourselves of the works of Grimm, Becker, Heyse, Kellner, and others, and have added from our own experience whatever seemed best fitted to lead the student to a full understanding of the modern views of grammar applied to the German tongue.

The rules have been stated with all the clearness and precision we could command; and wherever any phenomena of the language appeared to require further illustration, the pupil's attention has been directed to the usage of the English language, or to

such forms of the older language of Germany, as seem calculated to throw light upon its present state. In connection with the rules, German examples are given throughout, most of which have been selected from the best authors. The names of the latter are given in full after every example, with the exception of the following, in the case of whom, on account of their frequent occurrence, abbreviations have been employed; namely—*B.* stands for *Bible*; *G.* for *Goethe*; *Sch.* for *Schiller*; *Kr.* for *F. A. Krummacher*; *U.* for *Uhland*; *Prov.* for *Proverb*. A larger space than usual has been allotted to the rules on pronunciation and on the formation of words. A sufficient number of easy exercises for translation into German are diffused through the whole grammar. They are of an entirely practical character, but at the same time stand in strict connection with the rules to which they are subjoined.

C. E. AUE.

# C O N T E N T S.

---

INTRODUCTION,	Page vii
---------------	-------------

## ETYMOLOGY.

I. ALPHABET,	1
II. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY,	2
III. ELEMENTS OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES,	15
IV. VERB,	21
V. THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE,	28
VI. THE STRONG AND WEAK CONJUGATIONS,	40
VII. CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS,	48
VIII. IRREGULAR CONJUGATION,	65
IX. CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE,	73
X. REFLECTIVE VERBS,	77
XI. COMPOUND VERBS,	80
XII. THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ITS KINDS,	88
XIII. THE ARTICLE, AND ITS CONNECTION WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.	89
XIV. THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES,	94
XV. THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES,	111
XVI. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES,	136
XVII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES,	146
XVIII. PRONOUNS,	152
XIX. NUMERALS,	178
XX. ADVERBS,	192
XXI. PREPOSITIONS,	202
XXII. CONJUNCTIONS,	216
XXIII. INTERJECTIONS.	230

---

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

XXIV. DERIVATION,	221
XXV. FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS,	232

## SYNTAX.

	Page
XXVI. SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES, . . . . .	239
I. PREDICATIVE COMBINATION.	
XXVII. AGREEMENT BETWEEN SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, . . . . .	242
XXVIII. THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE FORMS OF THE VERB, . . . . .	247
XXIX. REFLECTIVE VERBS, . . . . .	249
XXX. IMPERSONAL VERBS, . . . . .	253
XXXI. THE TENSES, . . . . .	256
XXXII. THE MOODS, . . . . .	260
XXXIII. USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD, . . . . .	266
II. ATTRIBUTIVE COMBINATION.	
XXXIV. GENERAL REMARKS, . . . . .	270
XXXV. THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE AND THE APPPOSITION, . . . . .	271
XXXVI. THE ATTRIBUTE EXPRESSED BY THE GENITIVE OR BY PREPOSITIONS, . . . . .	274
XXXVII. THE ATTRIBUTE EXPRESSED BY A WHOLE CLAUSE, . . . . .	279
III. THE OBJECTIVE COMBINATION.	
COMPLETING OBJECT.	
XXXVIII. THE OBJECT EXPRESSED BY CASES OR PREPOSITIONS, . . . . .	281
XXXIX. THE OBJECT EXPRESSED BY A CLAUSE, OR BY THE SUPINE OR THE INFINITIVE, . . . . .	297
ADVERBIAL EXPRESSION.	
XL. RELATIONS OF PLACE AND TIME, . . . . .	301
XLI. RELATIONS OF MANNER AND INTENSITY, . . . . .	308
XLII. RELATIONS OF CAUSE AND PURPOSE, . . . . .	313
•	
ABBREVIATIONS, . . . . .	322
INDEX, . . . . .	323

## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE German language belongs to the Teutonic family of the great Indo-European stock, and stands forth among the innumerable languages now spoken as one of the oldest, purest, and noblest, surpassing most of its neighbours in power as well as in richness and flexibility. The history of its development, from its earliest traces down to the present time, comprises a period of not less than two thousand years. The first accounts of ancient Germany and the primitive condition of its people we derive from Roman writers, who inform us that the German was the original language of an ancient and wide-spread people, which consisted of many tribes. This people at a very early period migrated from Asia, and gradually spread over the northern and central parts of Europe. The tribes were called by different names. Each had its own chief, and they were not only independent of each other, but often lived in open hostility. The name, however, which they bore in common—namely, *deutsch*, or, in its complete form, *deutisch*—refers to their common origin, and represents them as members or parts of one people. For the word *deutsch* (in Gothic *thiudiskō*, in old High-German *diutisc*, in Anglo-Saxon *theo'disc*) is correctly derived from the Gothic word *thiuda* (in old High-German *diot*, in Anglo-Saxon *theo'd*)—that is, 'people,' the Latin *gens*—and therefore originally signifies 'belonging to the people,' the Latin *gentilis*. The Romans called them *Germani*—that is, 'men-at-arms, or warriors'—the name having respect to the wars in which the two nations were repeatedly engaged, and during which the Germans, especially the tribes living on the Rhine and Danube, made themselves dreaded by their hostile neighbours. The term *deutsch* is now only applied to that portion of the Teutonic race which inhabits the continent of Europe, including the Anglo-Saxon branch; whilst the term *germanisch* refers not only to the people properly called *deutsch*, but also to the inhabitants of the Scandinavian islands and peninsulas.

The oldest of all the known languages of the Germanic or Teutonic family was the *Gothic*, but all the knowledge we now possess of that ancient language is derived from a single source—namely, some considerable fragments of the translation of the Bible by Bishop Ulfilas, who lived in the fourth century. As a spoken language, the Gothic is extinct. The living branches of this extensive family are comprised under the following three groups:—

1. The *Scandinavian* languages, comprising the Swedish, Danish, and Norwegian, which have sprung from the old Norse, a language still spoken in Iceland.

2. The *Low-German* languages, comprising the various dialects of the 'Plattdeutsch' (that is, Low-German in a limited sense), spoken in the 'flat' parts of Northern Germany, its oldest form being the old Saxon; the Dutch spoken in Holland; the Frisian, now all but extinct; and the Anglo-Saxon, which forms the principal element of the English tongue.

3. The *High-German* languages, comprising the various dialects of Southern Germany and the German portion of Switzerland, especially the Franconian, Suabian, and Bavaro-Austrian.

The High-German of the earlier ages—that is, of the time before and after the reign of Charlemagne, down to the eleventh century—embracing chiefly the development of the Franconian dialect, now bears the name of the 'old High-German language' (*die althochdeutsche Sprache*); whilst that of the subsequent three centuries, when the Suabian dialect was predominant, is distinguished by the name of the 'middle High-German language' (*die mittelhochdeutsche Sprache*). Through the translation of the Bible and other writings of Luther, as well as through the influence of the Reformation generally, the 'new High-German language' (*die neuhochdeutsche Sprache*) became, and has ever since remained, the written and spoken language of the educated people of all the countries constituting the German confederation; while the various dialects both of the Low and High-German have either altogether died away, or are employed in certain localities merely as a means of oral communication among the lower classes. Although the principal ingredient of the so-called new High-German is to be found in the High-German, yet it would be erroneous to suppose it to be the dialect of some particular locality. Being the language of the educated, it differs from any peculiar dialect spoken in any particular part of the country; but in becoming the instrument both of written and oral intercourse between *all* the educated of *all* Germany, it received more or less of the peculiarities of all dialects.

It is more than probable that the ancient Germans were acquainted with the runic letters of the Scandinavians; it would

appear, however, that the people in their primitive condition found little occasion to make use of them. In the Gothic and old High-German periods, the Roman letters were used; they assumed, however, in the hands of the monks, who during the middle ages were largely employed in the copying of manuscripts, those angular and corrupt shapes known in English by the name of 'black letter.' This mode of writing has been generally adopted since the regeneration of German poetry in the twelfth century, and has given rise to that peculiar kind of print to which the Germans still adhere. The letters used in German handwriting were originally the same as those used in print, but have assumed a somewhat simplified form.





# GERMAN HANDWRITING.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m  
n o p q r s t u v w x y z (b final) & ã &

100 Cursive.

A B C D E F G H I J  
K L M N O P Q  
R S T U V W X Y Z.

Modified Vowels Æ a Æ e Æ o Æ u

Diphthongs. ai ei au ie ou

Double Consonants ff ch gg ph  
ss th ss ssz pp ps psch tsch  
Pch.

Wollen Gessen Tausch  
Lassen Gehen



# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### L.

#### ALPHABET.

§ 1. The German alphabet consists, like the English, of twenty-six letters ; namely—

GERMAN LETTERS.		ROMAN LETTERS.		NAMES.
A	a	A	a	ah.
B	b	B	b	bay.
C	c	C	c	tsay.
D	d	D	d	day.
E	e	E	e	aye.
F	f	F	f	eff.
G	g	G	g	gay.
H	h	H	h	hah.
I	i	I	i	ee.
J	j	J	j	yot.
K	k	K	k	kah.
L	l	L	l	ell.
M	m	M	m	em.
N	n	N	n	en.
O	o	O	o	oh.
P	p	P	p	pay.
Q	q	Q	q	koo.
R	r	R	r	err.
S	s	S	s	ess.
T	t	T	t	tay.
U	u	U	u	oo.
V	v	V	v	fow.
W	w	W	w	vay.
X	x	X	x	iks.
Y	y	Y	y	ypsilon.
Z	z	Z	z	tset.

Note.

The s final is substituted for the so-called long f at the end of a syllable only, as in *baß*, *beß*, *feß*-bar.

§ 2. Besides the simple letters of the alphabet, the following compound letters are employed :—

As substitutes for simple sounds—

ch	=	ch	tsay-hah ; the guttural ch.
ph	=	ph	pay-hah ; sounds like f.
sch	=	sch	ess-tsay-hah ; sounds like sh.
th	=	th	tay-hah ; sounds like t.

As substitutes for double consonants—

ck	=	ck	tsay-kah ; is used for double f.
sz	=	sz	ess-tset ; is used for double f.
tz	=	tz	tay-tset ; is used for double z.

## II.

### PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

#### I. VOWELS.

§ 3. The pure vowels are a, e, i, o, u. Of these the primary are a, i, u ; the other two are of a secondary nature, the sound of e being between i and a, and the sound of o between a and u. The five pure vowels are pronounced thus—

a sounds like the pure Italian *a* in ‘father.’

e sounds like *a* in ‘gate,’ or *e* in ‘get.’

i sounds like *ee* in ‘feel,’ or *i* in ‘fill.’

o sounds like *o* in ‘shore,’ or *o* in ‘short.’

u sounds like *oo* in ‘fool,’ or *u* in ‘full.’

ψ (ypsilon) is a foreign vowel, and its use is almost confined to words of Greek origin ; it has the sound of the modified u. (§ 4.)

Every vowel has, according to circumstances, either a long or a short sound—that is, its pronunciation may occupy a longer or shorter portion of time.\* Beyond this, the position of a vowel does not materially affect its pronunciation.

EXAMPLES :—a long in *fam*, *gar*, *bat* ; short in *flamm*, *Mann*, *balb*.

e long in *reden*, *stehen*, *geben* ; short in *retten*, *stellen*, *gelten*.

\* In Prosody, it is the accent which determines the quantity of syllables, not the natural length or shortness of vowels.

i long in mir, dir, Mine; short in mit, still, Hirt.  
 o long in Ton, Strom, loben; short in Sonne, Gott, Form.  
 u long in du, gut, Hut; short in dumm, Gunst, Hund.  
 y long in Hydra, Polyp, Ufhl; short in Myrte, Idylle,  
 System.

§ 4. Three of the pure vowels—namely, a, o, u—admit of being softened or modified by a change of their original sounds. The vowels so changed are termed *modified vowels* (in German, Umlaute). The modification is marked by e put after the letter, when it is a capital, and by é, or two little strokes or dots above it, when it is a small letter.

Ae, ä sounds like e in 'get,' or like the French è in 'père.'

Oe, ö sounds like the French eu in 'peu.'

Ue, ü sounds like the French u in 'du,' 'fus.'

The modified vowels are either long or short, but the nature of the sound of each remains the same under all circumstances.

EXAMPLES:—ä long in käme, Bär Räder; short in Kämme, Männer, fällt.

ö long in Löne, Ströme, Del; short in Götter, können, Dörfer.

ü long in für, Hüte, Uebel; short in Fürst, Hütte, füllen.

Notes.

1. For the sounds of the modified o and u, there are no equivalents in English; but the student may acquire the correct pronunciation of ö by trying to pronounce e with contracted or rounded lips; and that of ü by trying to pronounce i in a similar manner.

2. The modification takes place especially when a stem, having one of the vowels a, o, or u, takes a derivative or inflectional termination which contains i or e; e.g.—Kamm, comb, plural Kämme, combs; lang, long, comparative länger, longer; Ton, sound, plural Töne, sounds; Gunst, favour, adjective günstig, favourable.

§ 5. A vowel is long when not followed by any consonant, or by one consonant only; it is short when followed by a double consonant, or by two consonants (frequently a liquid and a mute) originally belonging to the same syllable.

EXAMPLES:—With a long vowel—du, mir, Graf, Brod, Blut, Bäd=er, streb=en, lob=t. With a short vowel—Ball, Narr, fromm, Stoff, Kraft, falt, Gast, Hand, fremd, Gold, Bänd=er, sterb=en, find=en.

## Notes

1. Some pronouns, prepositions, and other words incapable of inflection, form an exception to this rule; *e.g.*—*es, das, es, man, in, an, von, mit, bis, ab, ob, weg.* In like manner *bin, (I) am, hat, (he) has.* Unaccented syllables, as *be, ge, er, ver, zer, en, em, phen, &c.*, are also excepted.

2. The double consonants *ff* and *ch* at the end of a syllable, leave it uncertain whether the preceding vowel is long or short.

3. The following words have a long vowel, although followed by two consonants:—

K <sup>u</sup> nd, kind.	M <sup>o</sup> nd, moon.	T <sup>re</sup> st, consolation.
B <sup>ar</sup> t, beard.	O <sup>b</sup> st, fruit.	B <sup>eg</sup> t, bailiff.
E <sup>rd</sup> e, earth.	P <sup>ap</sup> st, pope.	W <sup>ar</sup> z, wart.
R <sup>os</sup> z, rosin.	P <sup>fer</sup> t, horse.	w <sup>er</sup> ten, to become.
H <sup>er</sup> d, hearth.	P <sup>re</sup> bst, prebendary.	w <sup>er</sup> th, worth.
S <sup>ch</sup> erz, flock.	S <sup>chw</sup> ert, sword.	w <sup>is</sup> t, waste.
K <sup>ra</sup> ch, crab.		
M <sup>ag</sup> d, maid-servant.	t <sup>ot</sup> t, dead.	z <sup>ar</sup> t, tender.

This anomaly is accounted for, in some instances at least, by the circumstance, that a vowel is dropped between the two consonants.

§ 6. In a great number of words, orthography employs particular signs to shew that a vowel is long.

1. Three of the pure vowels can be doubled—namely, *a, e, and o.*

EXAMPLES:—*Haal, Paar, Haar, Staat; leer, Meer, Beet, Klee; Moor, Loos, Boot.*

## Note.

When two vowels belong to different syllables, they are pronounced separately, as in *Rana-an, he-uten, Zo-ologie.*

2. The vowel *i* is lengthened by *e* being put after it.

EXAMPLES:—*die, nie, tief, Vier, Brief, Lied.*

## Note.

In foreign words, *ie* is pronounced as two separate vowels when the syllable has not the accent—as in *Fami'lie, Histo'rie, Ita'lien, Spa'nien, Ma'gier.* When the syllable has the accent, the rule is adhered to—as in *Harmoni'e, Astrenomi'e.* But in the proper names *Sephie* and *Marie*, the two vowels are pronounced separately.

3. All vowels, whether pure or modified, are long when followed by *h*, provided the *h* belongs to the same syllable. The *h* in such cases is mute.

EXAMPLES:—*Ba<sup>h</sup>n, la<sup>h</sup>m, me<sup>h</sup>r, le<sup>h</sup>ren, i<sup>h</sup>m, D<sup>h</sup>r, K<sup>o</sup>hl, Ru<sup>h</sup>m, U<sup>h</sup>r, K<sup>a</sup>h<sup>h</sup>ne, H<sup>o</sup>h<sup>h</sup>le, f<sup>u</sup>h<sup>n</sup>.*

## PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

### II. DIPHTHONGS.

§ 7. The German language has five diphthongs—namely, *ei*, *ai*, *au*, *eu*, *äu*, the latter being the modified *au*.

*ei* is pronounced like the English *i* in ‘*fine*,’ or *y* in ‘*my*.’

*ai* has nearly the same sound as *ei*.

*au* is pronounced nearly as the English *ou*.

*eu* and *äu* are both pronounced like *oi* in ‘*point*.’

All diphthongs are long.

EXAMPLES :—*mein*, *rein*, *fein*, *breit* ; *Main*, *Rain*, *Hain* ; *laut*, *braun*, *blau*, *Traum* ; *neu*, *treu*, *Freude*, *heute* ; *Träume*, *Bäume*, *Häuser*, *Häute*.

#### Note.

The diphthong *oi* (pronounced like the English *oi*) occurs only in a very few words, mostly proper names. The occasional use of *ey* and *ay*, in place of *ei* and *ai*, is now considered as antiquated.

### III. CONSONANTS.

§ 8. It must be observed here, as a general rule, that the German language has no silent letters. The pronunciation, therefore, of such words as *Gnade*, *Snabe*, *Psalm*, *Palme*, *Richt*, *Nacht*, &c., differs from the pronunciation of similar words in English, inasmuch as no consonant is passed over.

The only exception to this rule is the letter *h*. Besides the cases already noticed (§ 6, 3), it is silent after *t*, when belonging to the same syllable ; *th* is accordingly pronounced like *t*, there being no sound in German like the English *th*. In such a position, however, the vowel preceding *th* is long.

EXAMPLES :—*roth*, *Blath*, *Muth*, *Noth*, *Loth*.

§ 9. The consonants are divided, according to the organs by which they are articulated—the throat, tongue, and lips—into gutturals, linguals, and labials ; and, according to the degree of their more or less perfect articulation, into semi-consonants or spirants (that is, breathing-sounds), liquids, and mutes. The mutes are subdivided, according to the lesser or greater intensity with which they are uttered, into



soft, hard, and aspirate. This classification is exhibited in the following table :—

	GUTTURALS.	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMI-CONSONANTS,	j	f, fch	w
2. LIQUIDS, . . .	r	l, n	m
3. MUTES—			
a. Soft, . . . .	g	b	h
b. Hard, . . . .	f (c), q	t (ff, z, c)	p
c. Aspirate, . .	ch	wanting	f, v (ph)

Notes.

1. The spirant *h*, being formed by the mere breath, does not belong to any of the articulating organs in particular. It is pronounced as in English, except in those cases which have previously been adverted to.

2. The letters *f* (*ff*), *ff*, *z*, *ch*, are also called sibilants, from the hissing nature of their sounds.

1. GUTTURALS.

§ 10. *ſ* (yot) has the sound of the English *y* in 'yes.'

EXAMPLES :—ja, Jahr, je, jeder, Jammer, Jubel.

In words of French origin, *j* is pronounced as in that language—namely, like a soft *sh*, as Journal, Jalouffe.

§ 11. *ſ* is pronounced with greater force and roughness than in English.

EXAMPLES :—Raſe, Bier, hier, hart, braun, brennen.

§ 12. *g* commonly sounds like the English *g* in 'give.' When it stands at the end of a word or syllable, and is preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, or *au*, its sound approaches, but is not quite so strong, as that of *ch* in the Scotch word 'loch.' When at the end of a word or syllable, and preceded by *e*, *i*, *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *ei*, *eu*, or *äu*, it sounds like *j* in *ja*, or *y* in 'yes.' It takes the latter sound also after *r* and *l*.

EXAMPLES :—gut, Gott, groß, Garten; Tag, bog, flug; Steg, Krieg, Teig, leug-nen, trüg-lich; Berg, Burg, arg, farg, ſalg.

When a word of this nature increases by inflection, so that *g* remains no longer the final letter, but becomes the first letter of the next syllable, its pronunciation inclines towards

that of *g* in 'give,' but without entirely losing the peculiar sound of *ch* or *y* respectively.

EXAMPLES:—*La=ge, Vo=gen, flu=ge; Ste=ge, Krie=ges, heu=gen; Ber=ge, Bur=gen, Tal=ges.*

When at the end of a word, and preceded by *n*, *g* preserves its original sound of *g* in 'give,' but coalesces into one sound with *n* (as *ng* in 'long' or 'ring') when the word increases by inflection.

EXAMPLES:—*lang, Ring, jung; länger, Ringe, jünger.*

In some words taken from the French, *g* is pronounced as in that language—namely, like a soft *sh*; *e.g.*—*Genie, geniren, obfigirt, Løge, fogiren.*

§ 13. *ſ* is pronounced as in English; *ſſ* is employed for a double *f*.

The consonant *q* occurs only in very few German words, and is always followed by the vowel *u*. The two joined together are pronounced nearly like *fw*.

EXAMPLES:—*Qual, quälen, Qualm, Quaſt, quer, Quelle.*

§ 14. The aspirate guttural *ch* has the two different sounds of *ch* in 'loch,' and of *y* in 'yes' (or rather a little stronger), under circumstances similar to those mentioned above with regard to the letter *g*; for it has the pronunciation of *ch*, when preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, or *au*; and that of *y* (or somewhat stronger), when preceded by any of the other vowels or diphthongs, or by *r*, *l*, *n*.

EXAMPLES:—*Dach, nach, machen, Nacht, doch, Loth, kochen, Tuch, Buch, auch, Brauch, Taucher; ich, recht, brechen, rächen, richen, reich, gleich, euch, leuchten, Licht, nicht, nächtllich; durch, Furcht, fürchten, Voldch, Feldch, manch.*

When, in words of Greek extraction, *ch* occurs as initial before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, it is (improperly) pronounced like *f*; but it has the soft sound resembling (though stronger than) that of *y* in 'yes' before *i* or *e*.

EXAMPLES:—*Charakter, Chor, Chriſt, Chronik; Chemie, Chirurg, Chiliaſt.*

In words originally French, *ch* is pronounced as in that language—namely, like the English *sh*.

EXAMPLES:—*Chef, Chiffre, Chicane, Charlotte, Charade, Charpie, Chauffee.*

In words originally German, *ch* is pronounced like *f* only before *s* (*ß*), provided the *s* forms part of the stem. In words of this description, *x* is the equivalent in English of the German *chß*.

EXAMPLES:—*Ochß*, ox; *Fuchß*, fox; *Buchß*, box-wood; *Büchse*, a box; *sechß*, six; *Flachß*, flax; *Dachß*, badger; *Wachß*, wax; *wachßen*, to wax; *Wechsel*, change. Compare, for example, *Dachß*, 'badger,' with *Dachß*, a contraction for *Dach=esß*, 'of a roof;' or *wachßen*, 'to grow' (*wachß* being the stem of the word), with *wach=sam*, 'watchful' (derived from *wachen*, to watch.)

NOTE.

There is only one originally German word in which *ch* occurs as the substitute, and having the sound of *f*, although in the position of an initial—namely, *Char*, in the compounds *Charwoche*, passion-week; *Charfreitag*, Good-Friday, from the old *chara*, *kar*, which is also preserved in the English 'care,' and means 'lamentation,' 'sorrow.' Some authors still adhere to the antiquated mode of spelling *Churfürst*, Elector, and other compounds of *kur*, for which *Kurfürst* is now in ordinary use, from the old verb *kiren*, to choose.

2. LINGUALS.

§ 15. The sound of *f* is soft, and resembles that of the English *z* in 'zone,' 'zeal,' or *s* in 'desire,' 'bosom,' except at the end of words or syllables, when it is pronounced harder, so long as it remains the final letter.

EXAMPLES:—Soft in *Sohn*, *Sonne*, *sagen*, *Rose*, *Busen*, *reisen*; harder in *daß*, *biß*, *Gläß*, *Kreis*, *Hauß*; but soft again in the inflected forms *Gläser*, *Kreise*, *Häuser*.

§ 16. The *ß* and *ff* are pronounced like *ss* in English. The *ff* is used only after a short vowel, *ß* after a long vowel or a diphthong. At the end of a word, however, orthography forbids the use of *ff*, even though a short vowel precede.

EXAMPLES:—Short vowels in *essen*, *lassen*, *müssen*; long in *reißen*, *grüßen*, *fließen*, *Muße*. Long in *Gruß*, *Maß*, *ließ*; short in *daß*, *faß*, *muß*, *fluß*, *fluß*.

§ 17. The compound consonant *sch* indicates a simple sound—namely, that of the English *sh*; its parts, therefore, cannot be separated. At the beginning of a word, *sch* is frequently

followed by one of the consonants l, m, n, r, w, but must even then have its full sound.

EXAMPLES :—*rasch, frisch, Tisch, schön, Schaf, Schiff, englisch; Schlitten, schmelzen, Schnee, schreiben, Schwan.*

NOTE.

It should be observed, that when s (final) concludes a syllable, and ch begins the next (as in *Röschen*, little rose; *Mäuschen*, little mouse), s and ch must be pronounced separately.

§ 18. The letters l, n, and d are pronounced as in English. When d is the final consonant, its sound inclines towards that of t; but it resumes its natural softness when the word increases by inflection.

EXAMPLES :—Hard in *Hand, bald, Bad, Tod*; soft in *Hände, baldig, Bäder, Todes*.

§ 19. t is always pronounced as in English, except before i with another vowel after it, in which position it sounds like the German z.

EXAMPLES :—*Nation, Patient, Portion, Venetianer.*

§ 20. z is a simple sign for a mixed sound—namely, ts; accordingly, its sound is much harder than that of the English z. After a short vowel, z is made the substitute for a double z.

EXAMPLES :—*zu, zehn, Zahl, zahm, Zeit, Holz, Herz, Weiz; Satz, Platz, Blitz, stehn, Kage, schwäzen.*

§ 21. c is pronounced like f before a, v, u, au, and before a consonant; but like z or English ts before e, i, ä, ö, ü, y. Its use is limited to words of foreign origin, whilst, in words originally German, its place is now supplied by f and z.

EXAMPLES :—*Candidat, Consistorium, Claudius, Acten; Centrum, Cicero, civil, Cäsar, Cylinder.*

In French words, it has the sound of p, as in *Sauce, forciren.*

§ 22. x is pronounced like ts, of which two consonants it is composed.

EXAMPLES :—*Art, Text, Here*

## 3. LABIALS.

§ 23. **W** sounds nearly like the English *v*, slightly inclining towards *w*.

EXAMPLES:—Wein, wo, wann, wie, Wind, will, wahr, Wolfe, Wolf, Wort, Wasser.

§ 24. **W** is pronounced like *f* in all originally German words, whilst in all words borrowed from the Latin or French languages, it has the sound of the English *v* or the German *w*.

EXAMPLES:—Like *f* in Vater, von, voll, Volf, Vogel, vier, viel; like *w* in Venus, Advocat, dividiren, November, Livree.

§ 25. All the rest of the labial consonants—namely, *m*, *b*, *p*, *f* (*ph*)—are pronounced as in English.

**B**, at the end of a word or syllable, is pronounced harder than usual, almost like *p*; but when the word increases by inflection, the sound resumes its natural softness.

EXAMPLES:—Hard in lieb, Raub, ob; soft in lieber, Räuber, oben.

§ 26. In the pronunciation of *pf*, which is a stronger aspirate labial than the simple *f*, both letters, *p* and *f*, are heard, although they coalesce as nearly as possible into one sound. This compound consonant had its origin in the Gothic *p*, which letter still is its equivalent in the Low-German dialect, and in kindred languages; also in English.

EXAMPLES:—Pfund, pound; Pfand, pawn; Pfad, path; Pfeffer, pepper; Pflaume, plum; pfeifen, to pipe; pflanzen, to plant; Pflug, plough; stopfen, to stop; Tropfen, drop.

## IV. ACCENTUATION.

§ 27. The rise and fall of the voice in reading, or the comparatively greater or less stress with which the syllables of a word, and the words of a sentence are uttered, is called Accentuation.

In a word of more than one syllable, a greater stress is naturally laid on one syllable than on another; and in a combination of words, one word is pronounced with greater

force than another. For example, in the words *Bäume*, *blühen*, *befchneiden*, the syllables *Bäu*, *blüh*, *schnei*, are pronounced with greater force than those which follow or precede them. In the sentences *der Hund bellt*, the dog barks; *er trinkt Wein*, he drinks wine—a greater stress is laid on the words *bellt*, *Wein*, than on those with which they are joined. This is called the *grammatical accent* (*der grammatische Ton*), and tends not only to increase the euphony of the language, by imparting to it a melodious variety, but is, at the same time, the bond which exhibits to the ear and mind the logical unity of the syllables and words joined together.

What is generally termed *emphasis* (*Redeton*), is essentially different from accent. Emphasis consists in the speaker's laying stress on some particular word or syllable, which may otherwise be of minor significance, but which, for rhetorical reasons, he desires to make emphatic. For example:—*der Name ist mir bekannt*, the *name* is known to me (but not the *person*); *er nimmt Geld*, he *takes* money (but he does not *give* any); *der Knabe ist nicht erzogen*, sondern *verzogen*, the boy is not *educated*, but *spoiled*; *die Zeitung liegt unter dem Tische*, the newspaper lies *under* the table (not *upon* it).

Whilst grammatical accent is based upon fixed laws inherent in the nature or established by the usage of a language, emphasis depends more or less on the mind or intention of the speaker. Regarding the grammatical accent in the German language, the following general rules are commonly observed:—

§ 28. A syllable has, according to its logical importance, either the *full accent*, or a *subordinate accent*, or is *unaccented*. For example, in the word *Landſchaften*, the syllable *Land* has the full accent, *ſchaft* has a subordinate accent, and the termination *en* is unaccented. In *genüßsam*, *contented*, *ge* is unaccented, *nüg* has the full, and *ſam* a subordinate accent.

§ 29. *The Full Accent*.—1. In every simple word of more than one syllable, the full accent or main stress is laid on the principal syllable—that is, on the syllable containing the stem—the stem being that part of the word from which the whole has been formed, by the prefixing and suffixing of syllables, and to which it can be reduced by being deprived

of these. For example, *lieb* is the stem in *lieben*, *Liebe*, *geliebt*, *verliebt*, *Liebling*, *lieblich*, *Lieblichkeit*.

Note.

The adjectives *leben'tig*, *wahrhaftig*, *seibhaftig*, *balsam'isch*, *Luther'isch*, have an anomalous accentuation. The general rule is likewise departed from in words having the suffix *ci* (e. g.—*Spiele'ci*, *Stiche'ci*, *die Ture'ci*). In these the full accent is given to a derivative syllable, whilst the stem takes only a subordinate accent.

2. In compound words, the principal accent is laid on the determinative component. In compound substantives, adjectives, and verbs, the determinative component generally precedes, in other compound words it generally follows, the component which it tends to determine.

EXAMPLES :—*Kirch'hof*, church-yard ; *Geburt's'tag*, birth-day ; *Reit'pferd*, riding-horse ; *see'frant*, sea-sick ; *heim'feh'ren*, to return home. But, on the other hand, *wov'en*, whereof ; *damit*, therewith ; *hin'fort*, henceforth ; *berg'an*, uphill.

3. In verbs compounded with separable prefixes, the prefix, in accordance with the preceding rule, has the principal accent. Verbs compounded with inseparable prefixes, on the contrary, retain the full accent on their radical syllable. The same rule is applicable to almost all substantives and adjectives derived from compound verbs.

EXAMPLES :—*aus'geben*, to give out ; *an'fang'en*, to begin ; *vor'schlagen*, to propose ; *Aus'gabe*, expense ; *An'fang*, beginning ; *Vor'schlag*, proposal. But *versteh'en*, to understand ; *beschlie'ssen*, to resolve ; *entschei'den*, to decide ; *Ver'stand*, understanding ; *Beschlu'ss*, resolution ; *Entschei'dung*, decision.

4. The last rule holds good also with regard to those compound verbs whose prefixes are, according to circumstances, either separable or inseparable, and likewise with regard to substantives and adjectives derived from them, with a few exceptions ; as—*Wi'derspruch*, contradiction, from *wider'spre'chen*, to contradict ; *Wi'derstand*, resistance, from *wider'ste'hen*, to resist ; *Un'terhalt*, maintenance, from *unterhal't'en*, to maintain.

§ 30. *The Subordinate Accent*.—1. All derivative terminations, the vowel of which is not *e*, have a subordinate

accent, especially the following:—at, bar, haſt, heit, icht, in, ſeit, lei, lein, lich, ling, niß, ſal, ſam, ſchaft, thum, ung, &c.

EXAMPLES:—Heimat, home; dankbar, grateful; glaubhaft, credible; Freiheit, freedom; Finſterniß, darkness; Schickſal, fate; Freundschaft, friendship; Befreiung, deliverance.

2. In compound words, in which the determinative component takes the principal accent, a secondary accent is given to the determined component; as—hof in Kirch'hof, frant in ſee'frant, geh in auß'gehen, ſang in an'ſangen, &c.

§ 31. *Unaccented Syllables*.—1. The following derivative ſyllables, uſed as prefixes:—be, er, ent, emp, ver, zer, ge.

EXAMPLES:—berauben, to deprive; erhalten, to receive; entkommen, to eſcape; Entwurf, deſign; verſtehen, to underſtand; zerreißen, to tear to pieces; Gewinn, gain.

2. All terminations (either derivative or inflectional) which have the vowel e, eſpecially e, el, em, en, er, end, ſel, then, &c.; alſo ig, zig, ſig.

EXAMPLES:—Liebe, love; Schlüssel, key; Athem, breath; ſingen, to ſing; Sänger, ſinger; ſingend, ſinging; Räthſel, riddle; Bäumchen, little tree; heilig, holy; vierzig, forty; dreißig, thirty.

§ 32. The ſame general law which determines the accent in a combination of ſyllables, holds good alſo in a combination of words or a ſentence—namely, the law, that the relative importance of a word decides the intensity of its tone. This matter, however, requires no further explanation here, as every one is in this reſpect guided by his own inſtinctive feeling.

#### V. FOREIGN WORDS.

§ 33. Through intercourse with neighbouring nations, many foreign words have found their way into the German language. To moſt of theſe the rules on accentuation ſtated in the preceding paragraphs are not applicable, becauſe the languages from which they have been taken do not entirely follow the ſame logical law of accentuation as the German.

§ 34. A conſiderable number of words, however, derived partly from the Latin, partly from the Greek, have become



so completely part of the German language, and so entirely accommodated themselves to its laws, both in form and accent, that it seems scarcely proper to classify them among foreign words. We mention here only a few as examples:—*Sylbe*, syllable, Greek *syllabe*, Latin *syllaba*; *Krone*, crown, Gr. *korone*, L. *corona*; *Scepter*, sceptre, Gr. *skeptron*, L. *sceptrum*; *Fabel*, fable, L. *fabula*; *Tafel*, table, L. *tubula*; *Insel*, island, L. *insula*; *Fenster*, window, L. *fenestra*; *Körper*, body, L. *corpus*; *Kloster*, cloister, L. *claustrum*; *Fieber*, fever, L. *febris*; *Mönch*, monk, L. *monachus*; *Familie*, family, L. *familia*.

§ 35. But, besides these, the German language has adopted from the Greek and Latin a very large number of words, which, although considered as naturalised, are still recognisable as foreign, both by their un-German form and accent. They are pronounced according to the German pronunciation of the ancient languages, and mostly retain their original accent, which in a very large number of them is on the last syllable, on account of the inflectional termination, which they originally had, being dropped.

EXAMPLES:—*Natur'*, nature, Latin *natura*; *Figur'*, figure, L. *figura*; *Februar'*, February, L. *Februarius*; *Nation'*, nation, L. *natio*, genitive *nationis*; *Person'*, person, L. *persona*; *Patient'*, patient, L. *patiens*, genitive *patientis*; *Provinz'*, province, L. *provincia*; *Patron'*, patron, L. *patronus*; *Majestät'*, majesty, L. *majestas*, genitive *majestatis*; *Triumph'*, triumph, L. *triumphus*; *Bibliothek'*, library, Greek *bibliothēke*; *Planet'*, planet, Gr. *planetes*; *Philosophie'*, philosophy, Gr. *philosophia*; *religiös'*, religious, L. *religiosus*; *absolut'*, absolute, L. *absolutus*; *universal'*, universal, L. *universalis*; *subtil'*, subtle, L. *subtilis*.

Note.

In many words of this description, the accent, for the sake of analogy, is removed to the last syllable, although it was not there originally; e. g.—*Symbol'*, *Philosoph'*, *Termin'*, *Barbar'*

§ 36. In the accentuation of substantives ending in *ist*, the German language is not consistent. In some, the accent is on the last syllable, as *Musik*, *Politik*, *Supplik*; in others, on the second last, as *Logik*, *Grammatik*, *Lyrik*, *Mechanik*, *Plastik*, *Gymnastik*; in a few, the usage is variable, as *Metaphysik* or *Metaphysik'*, *Mathema'tik* or *Mathematik'*.

§ 37. When foreign substantives undergo inflectional or derivational changes, the accent is sometimes transferred from one syllable to another.

EXAMPLES:—Profess'or, plural Profess'o'ren; Charaf'ter, plural Charaf'te're; Ne'ther, adjective a'the'risch; Mu'sik', adjective mu'sika'lisch; Me'lodie', adjective melo'disch; Na'tion', adjective national'.

§ 38. Most verbs ending in *iren* are of foreign origin. They have the principal accent on the syllable *ir*, in analogy with the Latin termination *āre*, *ēre*, *īre*, of the infinitive. Verbs of German or French origin having the termination *iren*, follow the same rule as verbs of Latin extraction.

EXAMPLES:—studiren, to study, Latin *studēre*; dociren, to teach, L. *docēre*; illustriren, to illustrate, L. *illustrāre*; stolziren, to strut, from stolz, proud; halbiren, to halve, from halb, half; buchstabiren, to spell, from Buchstabe, letter; flattiren, to flatter, French *flatter*; logiren, to lodge, French *loger*.

§ 39. Words borrowed from the French or other living languages, commonly retain their original accent. Their pronunciation must be acquired by practice. A few observations bearing upon the subject have been given in some of the preceding paragraphs.

### III.

#### ELEMENTS OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

##### I. THE DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

§ 40. Every expression of a thought by words is called a *sentence*. Every sentence asserts something about some person or thing. The person or thing of which something is said, or, in other words, which forms the subject of an assertion, is termed the *Subject*; and that which is said regarding the subject, is termed the *Predicate* (from the Latin *praedicare*, to proclaim, to assert). The subject and predicate, therefore, are the essential members of every sentence.

§ 41. But two words, although placed side by side, and designed to serve the one as the subject and the other as the predicate, do not necessarily form a sentence. The predicate must be referred to, or *asserted* of, the subject. The word by which this is done—namely, some form of the verb *sein*, to be—is called the *Assertion*. Examples:—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.
Der Fluß the river	ist is	tief, deep.
Die Rosen the roses	sind are	roth, red.
Der Mann the man	war was	ein Maler, a painter.
Der Sommer the summer	ist is	hin, gone.
Ich I	bin am	ohne Furcht, without fear.

§ 42. In the above examples, the predicate is an adjective, a substantive, or an adverbial expression. But frequently the predicate is a verb, and in that case the *assertion* is contained in the predicate itself, as the inflectional changes which a verb is capable of undergoing sufficiently indicate its relation to the subject. Examples:—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION—PREDICATE.
Der Vogel the bird	singt, sings.
Das Wasser the water	fließt, flows.
Die Blume the flower	blühte, bloomed.
Du thou	schläfst, sleepest.

§ 43. When the verb is used in a compound form—that is, when an auxiliary verb is needed to indicate some relation of time or mood of the predicate—the *assertion* is contained in the auxiliary verb; and in the case of there being two or three auxiliary verbs, the *assertion* is contained in that auxiliary which agrees with the subject in person and

number. In such cases, the participle and the infinitive of the verb are removed to the end of the sentence. Examples :—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	PREDICATE.
Die Blume	wird	blühen,
the flower	will	bloom.
Die Blume	hat	geblühet,
the flower	has	bloomed.
Die Blume	würde	geblühet haben,
the flower	would	have bloomed.
Der Vogel	kann	singen,
the bird	can	sing.
Der Fluß	muß	tief sein,
the river	must	be deep.
Er	ist	ein Maler gewesen,
he	has	been a painter.

§ 44. A substantive may be qualified or individualised by an adjective, by another substantive in the genitive case, by an apposition, or in other ways. Any word employed for this purpose is called an *attribute* of the substantive. The attributive adjective precedes the substantive; the attributive genitive, as well as the apposition, according to circumstances, either precede or follow it.

EXAMPLES :—Ein altes Haus, an old house. Unser Haus, our house. Das Haus des Bruders, the house of the brother. Des Bruders Haus, the brother's house. Der königliche Palast, the royal palace. Der Palast des Königs, the palace of the king. Des Königs Palast, the king's palace. Dieser Palast, this palace. Alexander, König von Macedonien, Alexander, king of Macedonia. König Alexander, King Alexander.

§ 45. A verb or an adjective may also be qualified or individualised, since the activity asserted of a person or thing (the subject of a sentence) may be represented as affecting other persons or things, or as being peculiar with regard to place, time, manner, or cause. The words by which the former relation is expressed—namely, the cases of substantives or pronouns—are called the *Objects* of a sentence; and those by which the latter relation is expressed—namely, adverbs, or prepositions with the cases governed by them—are called *Adverbial Expressions*. Objects as well as adverbial expressions

follow the word containing the assertion. When the verb stands in a compound form, they accordingly come in between the assertion and the participle or the infinitive. Examples :—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	ADV. EXPRESSION—OBJECT.	PREDICATE.
Wir	lesen	ein Buch,	
we	read	a book.	
Der Vogel	singt	schön,	
the bird	sings	beautifully.	
Ich	schrrieb	heute einen Brief,	
I	wrote	to-day a letter.	
Wir	werden	ein Buch	lesen,
we	shall	a book	read.
Der Vogel	hat	schön	gesungen,
the bird	has	beautifully	sung.
Ich	würde	heute einen Brief	geschrieben haben,
I	should	to-day a letter	written have.
Er	ist	seinem Bruder	ähnlich,
he	is	(to) his brother	like.
Sie	wird	ihrer Versprechens	eingedenk sein,
she	will	of her promise	mindful be.

§ 46. When there are several objects and adverbial expressions, the order in which they follow one another is also determined by certain rules. The following are especially worthy of notice :—

1. Pronouns are placed before nouns.

Man hat ihn seinen Brüdern vorgezogen,  
one has him to his brothers preferred.

2. Adverbial expressions precede objects.

Ich trinke des Morgens Kaffee,  
I drink in the morning coffee.

3. Names of persons are placed before names of things.

Mein Vater hat meiner Schwester ein Buch geschenkt,  
my father has to my sister a book presented.

4. An adverbial expression denoting place or time goes before one denoting cause.

Ich wurde gestern vom Regen naß,  
I was yesterday with rain wet.

5. An adverbial expression denoting time is put before one denoting place.

Wir gehen früh nach Hause,  
we go early home.

6. An adverbial expression denoting manner is placed after every other adverbial expression, sometimes even after the object.

Er hat in dieser Woche sehr fleißig studirt,  
he has during this week very diligently studied.

Ich habe das Buch sorgfältig gelesen,  
I have the book carefully read.

§ 47. The *negative* nicht, like every other adverb, follows the *assertion*. When there are objects or adverbial expressions in the sentence, the negative is generally placed after them. Examples:—

SUBJECT.	ASSERTION.	OBJECT—ADV. EXPRESSION.	NEGATIVE.	PREDICATE.
Das Buch	ist		nicht	leicht,
the book	is		not	easy.
Der Vogel	singt		nicht,	
the bird	sings		not.	
Der Vogel	kann		nicht	singen,
the bird	can		not	sing.
Ich	sehe	das Buch	nicht,	
I	see	the book	not.	
Wir	haben	den Brief	nicht	erhalten,
we	have	the letter	not	received
Ich	habe	ihn seit einer Woche	nicht	gesehen,
I	have	him for a week	not	seen.

Note.

The above rule concerning the position of nicht is abandoned when, in a negative assertion, a particular member of the sentence is to be made emphatic by contrast; in this case, nicht precedes the emphatic word.

## II. THE INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

. § 48. Under certain circumstances, the natural or direct order of a sentence must be inverted, so that the subject and the assertion change places with each other. A construction

of this kind is called an *inverted principal sentence*. The inversion takes place especially—

1. In direct interrogative sentences—that is, in sentences containing a direct question by the speaker.

Ist die Rose roth?—Singt der Vogel?

Is the rose red?—Does the bird sing?

Wird der Vogel singen?

Will the bird sing?

2. In imperative sentences—that is, in sentences containing a direct command by the speaker:

Seien Sie ohne Furcht,  
be (you) without fear.

3. When, for the sake of emphasis, the predicate, an object, an adverbial expression, or a dependent clause, is placed before the subject and verb:

Kurz ist das Leben,  
short is life.

Den Brief haben wir erhalten,  
the letter have we received.

Heute haben wir den Brief erhalten,  
to-day have we the letter received.

Was der Brief enthält, hat sie mir nicht verhehlt,  
what the letter contains, has she (from) me not concealed.

*Nota.*

When an inverted sentence begins with an adverb or adverbial expression, the subject may be put even after the object, if the object be a short word, such as a personal or reflective pronoun; *e.g.*—Hier hört uns Niemand, here no one hears us.

### III. THE DEPENDENT SENTENCE.

§ 49. When two or more clauses are joined together, they are either co-ordinate, or the one is subordinate to the other. If they are co-ordinate, the above rules are followed in the construction of each clause. If one is subordinate, the arrangement of the *principal* clause is the same as usual—that is, either direct or inverted—whilst in the *dependent* clause, the word containing the assertion is removed to the end. Dependent clauses are generally known from the

subordinative conjunctions (§ 257), relative pronouns, or relative adverbs, by which they are connected with the principal clause. Examples:—

1. Co-ordinate sentences :

Einige Rosen sind roth, andere sind weiß, some roses are red, others are white.

Wir sehen mit den Augen, und wir hören mit den Ohren, we see with our eyes, and we hear with our ears.

Ich will nach Deutschland reisen, deshalb lerne ich Deutsch, I intend to go to Germany, therefore I am learning German.

Es muß geregnet haben, denn die Flüsse sind angeschwollen, it must have rained, for the rivers are swollen.

2. Principal and dependent clauses :

Er weiß, daß sein Leben auf dem Spiele steht, he knows that his life is at stake.

Ich würde gekommen sein, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte, I would have come, if I had had time.

Kennst du das Land, wo die Citronen blühen? knowest thou the land where the citrons bloom?

Wir wissen Alles, was geschehen ist, we know all that has happened.

Der Vogel, welchen ich gekauft habe, singt nicht, the bird which I have bought does not sing.

Note.

There are circumstances under which the general rule regarding the construction of dependent sentences is departed from. These, however, cannot be explained here, but are reserved for the syntax.

#### IV.

#### V E R B.

§ 50. A verb expresses that a person or thing (the subject) is in a certain condition, or that he or it performs an action, or is acted upon. In the formation of a sentence, the verb is an essential element, as no thought can be expressed without it.

§ 51. A verb denoting a mere state or condition of its subject, or an action which does not admit of any bearing upon an object, is termed a *subjective verb*; as—ich schlafe,



I sleep ; *ich* *ſchl*e, I sit ; *ich* *ru*he, I rest ; *ich* *ge*he, I walk ; *ich* *lau*fe, I run ; *ich* *kom*me, I come. A verb, on the other hand, denoting an action which requires an object to complete its idea, is termed an *objective verb* ; as—*ich* *ſch*lage, I strike (the dog) ; *ich* *p*flanze, I plant (a tree) ; *ich* *ge*denke, I think of (my friend) ; *ich* *h*elfe, I help (the poor).

An objective verb which has the object suffering the activity in the accusative case, is called a *transitive verb* ; as—*ich* *ſch*lage den *H*und, I strike the dog ; *ich* *p*flanze einen *B*aum, I plant a tree. Those objective verbs, on the contrary, which have their object not in the accusative case, as well as all subjective verbs, are usually comprised under the term of *intransitive verbs*.

§ 52. The usual form of the verb, when the subject is represented as the person or thing being in a state or performing an action, is called the *active form* or *voice*. But if the object in which the action terminates is represented as the subject in a state of suffering the action, the particular form which the verb then assumes is called the *passive form* or *voice*.

Transitive verbs only can have a complete passive form ; *e.g.*—Der *H*und wird von dem *K*naben geſchlagen, the dog is being beaten by the boy ; ein *B*aum wurde von dem *G*ärtner gepflanzt, a tree was being planted by the gardener. The passive form of intransitive verbs can occur only in the third person ; *e.g.*—*e*s wird gelaufen, there is running (taking place), or, people run ; *e*s wird gehofft, it is hoped, or, people hope.

§ 53. When the active subject of a transitive verb is at the same time the suffering object, the verb is said to be in the *reflective form*. For example :—*I*ch waſche mich, I wash myself ; er hat ſich geſchnitten, he has cut himself ; wir hürnen unſ, we vex ourselves. The use of reflective verbs is far more common in German than in English, as transitive verbs are often made to assume an intransitive meaning, by being put in the reflective form ; thus—die *E*rde drehet ſich, the earth moves ; daſ *V*olk verſammelte ſich, the people assembled. A number of verbs are used only in the reflective form.

§ 54. When an action is conceived without a definite subject from which it proceeds, the verb is called an *impersonal*. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person

singular, and the place of the subject is supplied by the neuter personal pronoun *es*, it. For example:—*es regnet*, it rains; *es schneiet*, it snows; *es donnert*, it thunders; *es blizt*, it lightens.

§ 55. The German language has four *Moods*, to point out the particular manner or mode in which a state or action is asserted of the subject:—1. The *Indicative* represents a state or action as a fact; as—*er singt*, he sings; *er hat gesungen*, he has sung; *er wird singen*, he will sing.—2. The *Conjunctive* (or *Subjunctive*) represents a state or action only as possible, especially as an assertion of another person, or as a wish; e.g.—*ich wünsche, daß er singe*, I wish that he may sing; *sie sagt, daß er gesungen habe*, she says that he has sung; *glaubst du, daß er singen werde?* dost thou think that he will sing?—3. The *Conditional* represents a state or action merely as an assumed fact; as—*wenn er sänge*, if he sang; *wenn er gesungen hätte*, if he had sung; *er würde singen*, he would sing.—4. The *Imperative* represents a state or action in the form of a command; as—*singe*, sing.

Note.

Relations of mood—namely, of possibility and necessity—are also expressed by auxiliary verbs, the so-called *auxiliary verbs of mood*.

§ 56. The relations of time of an asserted state or action are indicated by the *tenses* of the verb. A state or action is represented either as present, or as past, or as future; and, moreover, it is represented either as *absolutely* present, past, or future—that is, with regard to the present of the person speaking; or as *relatively* present, past, or future—that is, in reference to some other event. Hence there are six tenses, namely—

1. *Absolute* tenses:—

a. The present—*ich singe*, I sing, I am singing, I do sing.

b. The perfect—*ich habe gesungen*, I have sung, I have been singing.

c. The future—*ich werde singen*, I shall sing, I shall be singing.

2. *Relative* tenses:—

a. The imperfect—*ich sang* (*als er kam*), I sang, I was singing, I did sing (when he came).

b. The pluperfect—*ich hatte gesungen (als er kam)*, I had sung, I had been singing (when he came).

c. The future-perfect—*ich werde gesungen haben (ehe er kommt)*, I shall have sung (before he comes).

The indicative mood has all the six tenses, the conjunctive and conditional have four, the imperative only one. Two tenses in the active voice—namely, the present and imperfect—are formed without the help of auxiliary verbs, and are on that account called *simple* tenses. The other four tenses of the active, and all the tenses of the *passive* voice, are formed by means of auxiliary verbs, and are called *compound* tenses.

§ 57. A state or action may be asserted of one person or thing, or of more than one, and accordingly the verb is either in the *singular*, or in the *plural*; and according as a state or action is asserted of the person or persons speaking, or of the person or persons spoken to, or of the person or persons, or of the thing or things spoken of, the verb is either in the *first*, or *second*, or *third* person singular or plural.

§ 58. Under the name of *Verbals* are comprised the *infinitive* and *participle*. The infinitive expresses a state or action in a substantive form, the participle expresses a state or action in an adjective form; the former, therefore, is a *verbal substantive*, the latter a *verbal adjective*. Each has one form for the present and another for the past, but none for the future; as—*singen*, to sing; *gesungen haben*, to have sung; *singend*, singing; *gesungen*, sung.

§ 59. The infinitive with the preposition *zu*, *to*, before it, is called the *supine*; as—*zu singen*, to sing, or in order to sing; *gesungen zu haben*, to have sung.

§ 60. The German language has two *Conjugations*—namely, the *strong* (or ancient), and the *weak* (or modern). All verbs are conjugated either by the one, or the other. A very small number only have an *irregular*, or, more properly, a *mixed* conjugation—that is, a mode of conjugation consisting of a combination of the strong and weak.

§ 61. The difference between the strong and the weak conjugation consists in the following particulars:—

1. The strong conjugation is distinguished by a change of the radical vowel in the imperfect and past participle; the

weak, by an entire unchangeableness of the root. For example :

	INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<i>Strong.</i> —	singen,	sang,	gesungen,
	to sing.	sang.	sung.
	sprechen,	sprach,	gespröchen,
	to speak.	spoke.	spoken.
<i>Weak.</i> —	loben,	lobte,	gelobt,
	to praise.	praised.	praised.

2. The imperfect tense in the strong conjugation takes no termination in the first and third persons singular ; in the weak it takes *te* or *ete* (English *ed*) ; as—*ich* or *er* sang, I or he sang ; *ich* or *er* sprach, I or he spoke ; but *ich* or *er* lobte, I or he praised ; *ich* or *er* leitete, I or he guided.

3. The past participle in the strong conjugation takes the termination *en* (English *en*) ; in the weak, *t* or *et* (English *ed*) ; as—*gesungen*, sung ; *gespröchen*, spoken ; but *gelobt*, praised ; *geleitet*, guided.

4. The conditional of the present in the strong conjugation is formed from the imperfect by adding *e* and modifying the radical vowel, if it be capable of modification ; in the weak conjugation, it is the very same as the imperfect. For example :—

*Strong.*—(wenn) *ich* sänge, (if) I sang, from *ich* sang, I sang.  
 (wenn) *ich* böte, (if) I offered, from *ich* bot, I offered.  
 (wenn) *ich* schüge, (if) I struck, from *ich* schlug, I struck.  
*Weak.*—(wenn) *ich* lobte, (if) I praised, the same as *ich* lobte, I praised.

**Note.**

The English language presents only one analogy to the formation of the conditional of strong verbs—namely, ‘I were’ (*ich wäre*), formed from the imperfect ‘I was’ (*ich war*).

5. In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative in the strong conjugation, the radical vowel *e* is changed into *i* or *ie*, *a* into *ä*, *o* into *ö*, *au* into *äu*, while there is no change in the weak. For example :—

*Strong.*—*ich* spreche, I speak, *du* sprichst, *er* spricht.  
*ich* trage, I carry, *du* trägst, *er* trägt.  
*ich* stoße, I push, *du* stößest, *er* stößt.  
*ich* laufe, I run, *du* läufst, *er* läuft.

*Weak.*—ich lebe, I live, du lebst, er lebt.  
 ich male, I paint, du malst, er malt.  
 ich lobe, I praise, du lobst, er lobt.  
 ich kaufe, I buy, du kaufst, er kauft.

The change of *e* into *i* or *ie* takes place also in the second person singular of the imperative in all those verbs of the strong conjugation, in which the same change is made in the present indicative. In such cases, the termination *e*, peculiar to the second person singular of the imperative, is dropped ; *e.g.*—*sprich*, speak ; *befiehl*, command.

Note.

In the imperative of *sehen*, to see, the termination *e* is sometimes omitted, sometimes retained : *sieh*, or *siehe*.

§ 62. The following table presents a view of the terminations of the simple tenses and verbals of both conjugations :—

#### PRESENT TENSE.

INDICATIVE,		CONJUNCTIVE,	
In both Conjugations.			
<i>Singular</i> , 1. e,		<i>Singular</i> , 1. e,	
2. eſt, ſt,		2. eſt,	
3. et, t.		3. e.	
<i>Plural</i> , 1. en, n,		<i>Plural</i> , 1. en,	
2. et, t,		2. et,	
3. en, n.		3. en.	
CONDITIONAL.			
Strong Conjugation.		Weak Conjugation.	
<i>Singular</i> , 1. e,		<i>Singular</i> , 1. ete, te,	
2. eſt,		2. eteſt, teſt,	
3. e.		3. ete, te.	
<i>Plural</i> , 1. en,		<i>Plural</i> , 1. eten, ten,	
2. et,		2. etet, tet,	
3. en.		3. eten, ten.	

#### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Strong Conjugation.	Weak Conjugation
<i>Singular</i> , 1. —	<i>Singular</i> , 1. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> ,
2. <i>est</i> , <i>st</i> ,	2. <i>etest</i> , <i>test</i> ,
3. —	3. <i>ete</i> , <i>te</i> .
<i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>en</i> ,	<i>Plural</i> , 1. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> ,
2. <i>et</i> , <i>t</i> ,	2. <i>etet</i> , <i>tet</i> ,
3. <i>en</i> .	3. <i>eten</i> , <i>ten</i> .

IMPERATIVE,

In both Conjugations.

<i>Singular,</i>	—	<i>Plural,</i>	1. en, n,
2. e,			2. et, t,
3. e.			3. en, n.

INFINITIVE,

In both Conjugations.

en, n.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,

In both Conjugations.

enb, nb.

PAST,

Strong.

Weak.

en,

et, t.

Notes.

1. Where there are two terminations given in the above table for the same form, such as *est, ft*; *et, t*, it depends in every instance on euphony, whether the vowel *e* of the termination must be thrown out or retained. For example, in the present *du singst*, thou singest, *er singt*, he sings, without *e*; but *du findest*, thou findest, *er findet*, he finds, with *e*. Or in the imperfect, *ich lobte*, I praised; but *ich leitete*, I guided. Or in the infinitive, *loben*, to praise; but *sammeln*, to gather, *ändern*, to alter. Or in the present participle, *lobend*, praising; but *sammelnd*, gathering, *ändernd*, altering. Or in the past participle, *gelobt*, praised, *gesammelt*, gathered; but *geleitet*, guided. The *e* is always thrown out in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative of those strong verbs in which the radical vowel undergoes a change in the present (§ 61, 5); *e.g.*—*ich spreche*, I speak, *du sprichst*, *er spricht*; *ich schlage*, I strike, *du schlägst*, *er schlägt*.

2. In the third person singular, present indicative, of those strong verbs which change in the present, the termination *t* is contracted with the final consonant of the root, if that be *t* (or *th*); as—*gift* of *gesen*, *schift* of *schelten*, *tritt* of *treten*, *sicht* of *sechten*, *flucht* of *flechten*, *brät* of *braten*, *hält* of *halten*, *räth* of *rathen*.

§ 63. Most verbs of the strong as well as of the weak conjugation, have in the past participle the syllable *ge* prefixed, which is called the *augment*; as—*gesungen*, sung; *gelobt*, praised. Analogous is the English *y* in such obsolete words as—*yclad*, *yclept*, *yknown*, *ythrungen*.

The augment, however, is not used—1. With verbs having an inseparable prefix; *e.g.*—*erfunden*, invented, from *erfinden*, to invent; *verstanden*, understood, from *verstehen*, to understand. 2. With verbs ending in *iren*; as—*studirt*, studied, from *studiren*, to study; *buchstabirt*, spelt, from *buchstabiren*, to spell.

# V. THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE.

## § 64. HABEN, TO HAVE.

### INDICATIVE.

*Sing.* ich habe, I have,  
 du hast, thou hast,  
 er } he }  
 sie } hat, she } has.  
 es } it, }  
*Plur.* wir haben, we have,  
 ihr habt, you have,  
 sie haben, they have.

*Sing.* ich hatte, I had,  
 du hatteſt, thou hadst,  
 er hatte, he had.  
*Plur.* wir hatten, we had,  
 ihr hattet, you had,  
 sie hatten, they had.

*Sing.* ich habe gehabt, I have had,  
 du haſt gehabt, thou hast had,  
 er hat gehabt, he has had.  
*Plur.* wir haben gehabt, we have had,  
 ihr habt gehabt, you have had,  
 sie haben gehabt, they have had.

### CONJUNCTIVE.

#### PRESENT.

ich habe, I may have,  
 du habest, thou mayst have,  
 er } he }  
 sie } habe, she } may have.  
 es } it }  
 wir haben, we may have,  
 ihr habet, you may have,  
 sie haben, they may have.

#### IMPERFECT.

ich hätte, (if) I had,  
 du hättest, thou hadst,  
 er } he }  
 sie } hätte, she } had.  
 es } it }  
 wir hätten, we had,  
 ihr hättet, you had,  
 sie hätten, they had.

### CONDITIONAL.

#### PERFECT.

ich habe } I may } (if) I had  
 du habest } thou mayst } thou hadst  
 er habe } he may } he had  
 wir haben } we may } we had  
 ihr habet } you may } you had  
 sie haben } they may } they had

ich hätte } I might } (if) I had  
 du hättest } thou might } thou hadst  
 er hätte } he might } he had  
 wir hätten } we might } we had  
 ihr hättet } you might } you had  
 sie hätten } they might } they had

had.

PLUPERFECT.

*Sing.* ich hätte gehabt, I had had,  
 du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had,  
 er hätte gehabt, he had had.  
*Plur.* wir hätten gehabt, we had had,  
 ihr hättet gehabt, you had had,  
 sie hätten gehabt, they had had.

*Sing.* ich werde haben, I shall have,  
 du wirst haben, thou wilt have,  
 er wird haben, he will have.

*Plur.* wir werden haben, we shall have,  
 ihr werdet haben, you will have,  
 sie werden haben, they will have.

*Sing.* ich werde gehabt haben,  
 I shall have had.

*Plur.* wir werden gehabt haben,  
 we shall have had.

IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* habe, have (thou),  
 habe er, let him have.

*Plur.* haben wir, let us have,  
 habt, have (you),  
 haben sie, let them have.

PRESENT. habend, having.—PAST. gehabt, had.

**FUTURE.**  
 ich werde I shall  
 du wirst thou wilt  
 er werde he will  
 wir werden we shall  
 ihr werdet you will  
 sie werden they will  
**FUTURE PERFECT.**  
 ich werde gehabt haben,  
 I shall have had.  
 wir werden gehabt haben,  
 we shall have had.  
 (Conjugated like the Future).

**INFINITIVES.**  
 ich würde I should  
 du würdest thou wouldst  
 er würde he would  
 wir würden we should  
 ihr würdet you would  
 sie würden they would  
**PARTICIPLES.**  
 ich würde gehabt haben,  
 I should have had.  
 wir würden gehabt haben,  
 we should have had.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. haben, to have,

PAST. gehabt haben, to have had.

SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu haben, to have,

PAST. gehabt zu haben, to have had.



In the forms *hast*, *hat* of the present indicative, the final consonant of the root *h* is thrown out, as *v* is thrown out in the English *has*t, *has*. In like manner *h* is thrown out in the imperfect *hätte*—as *ve* is thrown out in the English *had*—and is substituted by *t*.

§ 65. The verb *haben*, to have, to possess, is used as an auxiliary in the formation of the perfect and pluperfect of the active voice of all transitive and most intransitive verbs; also, of all reflective and nearly all impersonal verbs.

## EXERCISE I.\*

I have no time.<sup>1</sup> We have no time to spare.<sup>2</sup> Have you<sup>3</sup> paper<sup>4</sup> and ink? Yes,<sup>5</sup> but<sup>6</sup> I have no pen.<sup>7</sup> Have you my book?<sup>8</sup> Who<sup>9</sup> has my penknife?<sup>10</sup> Have you *any* meat?<sup>11</sup> Thou hast no bread.<sup>12</sup> She is (say has) right.<sup>13</sup> No,<sup>14</sup> she is (say has) wrong.<sup>15</sup> The trees<sup>16</sup> have blossoms.<sup>17</sup> I have a knife,<sup>18</sup> but I have no fork.<sup>19</sup> Hast thou a spoon?<sup>20</sup> Had he a house?<sup>21</sup> They had a garden.<sup>22</sup> We had no patience.<sup>23</sup> Have you no patience? I had no money.<sup>24</sup> What<sup>25</sup> have you there?<sup>26</sup>

<sup>1</sup> No time, keine Zeit. Every substantive is written with a capital. <sup>2</sup> To spare, übrig. <sup>3</sup> Use the third person plural for 'you,' wherever it occurs, and write the addressing pronouns *Sie*, you, *Ihnen*, to you, *Ihr*, your, &c., with a capital. <sup>4</sup> Paper and ink, Papier und Tinte. <sup>5</sup> Yes, ja. <sup>6</sup> But, aber. <sup>7</sup> No pen, keine Feder. <sup>8</sup> My book, mein Buch. <sup>9</sup> Who? wer? <sup>10</sup> My penknife, mein Federmesser. <sup>11</sup> Meat, Fleisch. <sup>12</sup> No bread, kein Brod. <sup>13</sup> Right, Recht. <sup>14</sup> No, nein. <sup>15</sup> Wrong, Unrecht. <sup>16</sup> The trees, die Bäume. <sup>17</sup> Blossoms, Blüten. <sup>18</sup> A knife, ein Messer. <sup>19</sup> No fork, keine Gabel. <sup>20</sup> A spoon (acc.), einen Löffel. <sup>21</sup> A house, ein Haus. <sup>22</sup> A garden (acc.), einen Garten. <sup>23</sup> No patience, keine Geduld. <sup>24</sup> No money, kein Geld. <sup>25</sup> What, was. <sup>26</sup> There, da.

\* Before commencing the translation of the exercises, it is necessary that the student should make himself acquainted with the leading rules for the construction of sentences, contained in section III. Words given in *Italics* are not to be translated. This mark [ ] signifies that words, although not required in English, must be expressed in German. The following abbreviations are employed in the notes to the exercises:—

<i>m.</i>	means 'masculine gender.'	<i>gen.</i>	means 'genitive.'
<i>f.</i>	.. 'feminine gender.'	<i>dat.</i>	.. 'dative.'
<i>n.</i>	.. 'neuter gender.'	<i>acc.</i>	.. 'accusative.'

## EXERCISE II.

We have had no time. I shall have no time to spare. I have had your knife,<sup>1</sup> but I have it no longer.<sup>2</sup> Who has had my penknife? I have had the pleasure.<sup>3</sup> Shall we have the pleasure? Has he had money? They have had much trouble.<sup>4</sup> You will have much trouble. I should have had much trouble. He will have the kindness.<sup>5</sup> She has had the kindness. Have<sup>6</sup> the kindness. Have you had no opportunity?<sup>7</sup> We shall have no opportunity. They would have had no opportunity. Thou wilt have a horse.<sup>8</sup> If<sup>9</sup> I had a horse. Have courage.<sup>10</sup> If he had courage. Have patience. If they had had patience. That<sup>11</sup> he may have patience. That she may have the kindness.

<sup>1</sup> Your knife, Ihr Messer. <sup>2</sup> No longer, nicht mehr. <sup>3</sup> The pleasure, das Vergnügen. <sup>4</sup> Much trouble, viele Mühe. <sup>5</sup> The kindness, die Güte. <sup>6</sup> Use the third person plural. <sup>7</sup> No opportunity, keine Gelegenheit. <sup>8</sup> A horse, ein Pferd. <sup>9</sup> If, wenn; begins a dependent clause. (See § 49). <sup>10</sup> Courage, Mut. <sup>11</sup> That, daß; begins a dependent clause. (See § 49).

## § 66. Sein, TO BE.

## INDICATIVE.

*Sing.* ich bin, I am,  
 du bist, thou art,  
 er ist, he is.  
*Plur.* wir sind, we are,  
 ihr seid, you are,  
 sie sind, they are.

*Sing.* ich war, I was,  
 du warst, thou wast,  
 er war, he was.  
*Plur.* wir waren, we were,  
 ihr wart, you were,  
 sie waren, they were.

*Sing.* ich bin gewesen, I have been,  
 du bist gewesen, thou hast been,  
 er ist gewesen, he has been.  
*Plur.* wir sind gewesen, we have been,  
 ihr seid gewesen, you have been,  
 sie sind gewesen, they have been.

## CONJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

ich sei, I may be,  
 du seiest, thou mayst be,  
 er sei, he may be.  
 wir seien, we may be,  
 ihr seiet, you may be,  
 sie seien, they may be.

## IMPERFECT.

ich wäre, (if) I were,  
 du wärest, thou wert,  
 er wäre, he were.  
 wir wären, we were,  
 ihr wäret, you were,  
 sie wären, they were.

## PERFECT.

ich sei  
 du seiest  
 er sei  
 wir seien  
 ihr seiet  
 sie seien

Ich may have  
 gewesen,  
 been.

ich wäre  
 du wärest  
 er wäre  
 wir wären  
 ihr wäret  
 sie wären

Ich had been.  
 (if)

## PLUPERFECT.

*Sing.* ich war gewesen, I had been,  
du warst gewesen, thou hadst been,  
er war gewesen, he had been.

*Plur.* wir waren gewesen, we had been,  
ihr wartet gewesen, you had been,  
sie waren gewesen, they had been.

*Sing.* ich werde sein, I shall be,  
du wirst sein, thou wilt be,  
er wird sein, he will be.

*Plur.* wir werden sein, we shall be,  
ihr werdet sein, you will be,  
sie werden sein, they will be.

*Sing.* ich werde gewesen sein,  
I shall have been.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* sei, be (thou),  
sei er, let him be.

*Plur.* seien wir, let us be,  
seid, be (you),  
seien sie, let them be.

PRESENT. *seientb.* being.—PAST. *gewesen*, been.

## FUTURE.

ich werde	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sein} \\ \text{I shall be.} \end{array} \right\}$	ich würde	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sein} \\ \text{I should be.} \end{array} \right\}$
du werdest		du würdest	
er werde		er würde	
wir werden		wir würden	
ihr werdet		ihr würdet	
sie werden		sie würden	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gewesen sein,  
I shall have been.

(Conjugated like the Future.)

## INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. *sein*, to be.

PAST. *gewesen sein*, to have been.

## SUPINES.

PRESENT. *zu sein*, to be.

PAST. *gewesen zu sein*, to have been.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. *seientb.* being.—PAST. *gewesen*, been.

## Note.

The principal parts of this verb are taken from different stems, like those of the English verb 'to be.' The imperfect *war* (in old High-German *was*), and the past participle *gewesen*, are derived from an old infinitive, *wesen* (in old High-German *wesan*), which is now used only in the sense of a substantive—*das Wesen*, the being; but occurs also in the derivative verb *verwesen*, to corrupt, perish; and in the form of a participle in the compounds *abwesent*, absent, and *anwesent*, present.

§ 67. The verb *sein*, to be, to exist, is used as an auxiliary—

1. For the formation of the perfect and pluperfect tenses of all those intransitive verbs which denote a change of condition; as—*sterben*, to die; *genesen*, to recover from illness; *wachsen*, to grow; *werden*, to become; *erkranken*, to fall ill; *verwelken*, to wither; *einschlafen*, to fall asleep; *erblinden*, to become blind; *aufblühen*, to begin to bloom, &c.

## Note.

When a verb of this kind can be used both in a transitive and intransitive sense, it takes *haben* in the former, and *sein* in the latter, signification. For example:—*heilen*, to cure and to heal; *der Arzt hat den Kranken geheilt*, the physician has cured the patient; but *die Wunde ist geheilt*, the wound has healed. Or, *ausschlagen*, to decline and to bud: *er hat die Einladung ausgeschlagen*, he has declined the invitation; but *der Baum ist ausgeschlagen*, the tree has budded. Or, *schmelzen*, to melt: *die Sonne hat den Schnee geschmolzen*, the sun has melted the snow; but *der Schnee ist geschmolzen*, the snow is melted.

2. In like manner, *sein* is used for the formation of the perfect and pluperfect tenses of all those intransitive verbs which denote motion to or from a place, if the place from which the motion proceeds, or to which it is directed, is either actually expressed or understood. Hence many intransitive verbs expressing motion are always conjugated with *sein*, especially the following:—

<i>fahren</i> , to go (in a conveyance),	<i>kommen</i> , to come,
<i>fallen</i> , to fall,	<i>landen</i> , to land,
<i>fliegen</i> , to fly,	<i>laufen</i> , to run,
<i>fliehen</i> , to flee,	<i>segeln</i> , to sail,
<i>fließen</i> , to flow,	<i>sinken</i> , to sink,
<i>gehen</i> , to go,	<i>steigen</i> , to rise,
<i>gleiten</i> , to glide,	<i>ziehen</i> , to go, to move,

along with those of their compounds, which not only have,

in common with the simple verbs, the meaning of locomotion, but express also by their prefixes, at least in some measure, the direction from or to a place or object; as—*abfahren*, to start; *abfallen*, to fall away; *wegfliegen*, to fly away; *vergehen*, to pass away; *entkommen*, to escape; *ankommen*, to arrive; and many others of a similar signification.

## Note.

Some of the simple intransitive verbs expressing motion are conjugated with *sein*, only when the object of the motion, or the place from which it proceeds, is really specified. For instance:—*Er ist nach London geris't*, he is gone (literally, travelled) to London. *Sie sind in den Park geritten*, they have taken a ride into the park. *Der Knabe ist vom Baume gesprungen*, the boy has leaped from the tree. *Ich bin nach Hause geris't*, I have hastened home. *Er ist über den Fluß geschwommen*, he has swum across the river, &c. With the same verbs, *haben* is used when there is no place mentioned from which the motion proceeds, or to which it is directed, as—*er hat viel geris't*, he has travelled much. *Ich habe diesen Morgen geritten*, I have taken a ride this morning. *Ich habe gesprungen*, I have been leaping. *Ich habe sehr geris't*, I have made great haste. *Er hat lange geschwommen*, he has been swimming a long time.

3. The following intransitive verbs are likewise conjugated with *sein*:—*begegnen*, to meet; *folgen*, to follow; *weichen*, to yield; *bleiben*, to remain; *sein*, to be.

## Note.

The verbs *stehen*, *liegen*, *sitzen*, and a few more, are in the dialect of Southern Germany sometimes used with *sein*. In the High-German language, however, this practice is not generally adopted, although it is occasionally followed by poets; *e. g.*—*Ich bin vor hohen Fürsten nie gestanden*, *Sch.*, I have never stood before high princes. *Und an der Sünder Tisch bist du geseffen*, *Geibel*, and thou hast sat at the table of sinners.

4. The following impersonal verbs also require *sein*:—*geschehen*, to happen; *gelingen*, *glücken*, *gerathen*, to succeed; *mißlingen*, *mißglücken*, *mißrathen*, to succeed ill.

## EXERCISE III.

I am content.<sup>1</sup> Art thou content? She is very<sup>2</sup> vain.<sup>3</sup> Is the book<sup>4</sup> difficult?<sup>5</sup> No, it is easy.<sup>6</sup> There is the money.<sup>7</sup> Are you alone?<sup>8</sup> We were quite<sup>9</sup> alone. God<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Content, zufrieden. <sup>2</sup> Very, sehr. <sup>3</sup> Vain, eitel. <sup>4</sup> The book, das Buch. <sup>5</sup> Difficult, schwer. <sup>6</sup> Easy, leicht. <sup>7</sup> The money, das Geld. <sup>8</sup> Alone, allein. <sup>9</sup> Quite, ganz. <sup>10</sup> God, Gott

is everywhere.<sup>11</sup> Where<sup>12</sup> is the newspaper?<sup>13</sup> The grapes<sup>14</sup> are sour.<sup>15</sup> They are not<sup>16</sup> ripe.<sup>17</sup> The potatoes<sup>18</sup> are hard.<sup>19</sup> The weather<sup>20</sup> is cold.<sup>21</sup> The air<sup>22</sup> was warm.<sup>23</sup> The trees are green.<sup>24</sup> Are you not well?<sup>25</sup> My brother<sup>26</sup> was unwell.<sup>27</sup> My mother<sup>28</sup> had not been well. My sister<sup>29</sup> has been very ill.<sup>30</sup> My father<sup>31</sup> was not at home.<sup>32</sup> When<sup>33</sup> will you be at home? I have been in<sup>34</sup> Germany.<sup>35</sup> Has my brother been here?<sup>36</sup> Charles<sup>37</sup> has been in America.<sup>38</sup> Have you been there? My sisters<sup>39</sup> will soon<sup>40</sup> be here. We shall be quite alone. He has always<sup>41</sup> been my friend.<sup>42</sup> Will you be there? Who has been here? Where have you been? I should not have been there. I had been in London. The weather will be very pleasant.<sup>43</sup> Be quiet.<sup>44</sup> Be modest.<sup>45</sup> That he may be happy.<sup>46</sup> Thou wouldst be happy, if thou wert content. I should have been here, if it had been possible.<sup>47</sup> My brother would have been there, if he had not been unwell.

<sup>11</sup> Everywhere, überall. <sup>12</sup> Where, wo. <sup>13</sup> The newspaper, die Zeitung.  
<sup>14</sup> The grapes, die Weintrauben. <sup>15</sup> Sour, sauer. <sup>16</sup> Not, nicht. <sup>17</sup> Ripe, reif.  
<sup>18</sup> The potatoes, die Kartoffeln. <sup>19</sup> Hard, hart. <sup>20</sup> The weather, das Wetter.  
<sup>21</sup> Cold, kalt. <sup>22</sup> The air, die Luft. <sup>23</sup> Warm, warm. <sup>24</sup> Green, grün.  
<sup>25</sup> Well, wohl. <sup>26</sup> My brother, mein Bruder. <sup>27</sup> Unwell, unwohl.  
<sup>28</sup> My mother, meine Mutter. <sup>29</sup> My sister, meine Schwester. <sup>30</sup> Ill, krank.  
<sup>31</sup> My father, mein Vater. <sup>32</sup> At home, zu Hause. <sup>33</sup> When? wann?  
<sup>34</sup> In, in. <sup>35</sup> Germany, Deutschland. <sup>36</sup> Here, hier. <sup>37</sup> Charles, Karl.  
<sup>38</sup> America, Amerika. <sup>39</sup> My sisters, meine Schwestern. <sup>40</sup> Soon, bald.  
<sup>41</sup> Always, immer. <sup>42</sup> My friend, mein Freund. <sup>43</sup> Pleasant, angenehm.  
<sup>44</sup> Quiet, still. <sup>45</sup> Modest, bescheiden. <sup>46</sup> Happy, glücklich. <sup>47</sup> Possible, möglich.

§ 68. Werden, TO BECOME.

INDICATIVE.

*Sing.* ich werde, I become,  
du wirst, thou becomest,  
er wird, he becomes.

*Plur.* wir werden, we become,  
ihr werdet, you become,  
sie werden, they become.

*Sing.* ich wurde, I became,  
du wurdest, thou becamest,  
er wurde, he became.

*Plur.* wir wurden, we became,  
ihr wurdet, you became,  
sie wurden, they became.

CONJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ich werde, I may become,  
du werdest, thou mayst become,  
er werde, he may become.  
wir werden, we may become,  
ihr werdet, you may become,  
sie werden, they may become.

IMPERFECT.

ich würde, (if) I became,  
du würdest, thou becamest,  
er würde, he became.  
wir würden, we became,  
ihr würdet, you became,  
sie würden, they became.

PERFECT.

ich sei  
du seiest  
er sei  
wir seien  
ihr seiet  
sie seien

*Sing.* ich bin  
du bist  
er ist  
*Plur.* wir sind  
ihr seid  
sie sind

geworden,  
I may have  
become.

ich wäre  
du wärest  
er wäre  
wir wären  
ihr wäret  
sie wären

geworden,  
(if) I had  
become.



INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE. PLUPERFECT.	CONDITIONAL.
<i>Sing.</i> ich war du warst er war <i>Plur.</i> wir waren ihr wart sie waren	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE.</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div>             ich werde              du werdest              er werde              wir werden              ihr werdet              sie werden           </div> <div>             I shall become.              I shall become.              I shall become.              I shall become.              I shall become.              I shall become.           </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>
<i>Sing.</i> ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become.	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>	ich würde geworden sein, I should have become.
<div style="text-align: center;">IMPERATIVE.</div> <i>Sing.</i> werde, become (thou), werde er, let him become. <i>Plur.</i> werden wir, let us become, werdet, become (you), werden sie, let them become.	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I should have become.           </div>
<div style="text-align: center;">IMPERATIVE.</div> <i>Sing.</i> werde, become (thou), werde er, let him become. <i>Plur.</i> werden wir, let us become, werdet, become (you), werden sie, let them become.	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I should have become.           </div>
<div style="text-align: center;">PARTICIPLES.</div> PRESENT. werdend, becoming,—PAST. geworden, become.	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I shall have become.              (Conjugated like the Future).           </div>	<div style="text-align: center;">FUTURE PERFECT.</div> <div>             ich werde geworden sein,              I should have become.           </div>

Werden, being a strong verb, has, according to § 77, in the imperfect *ich wart, du wartst, er wart*, and in the past participle *geworden*. But besides the regular form, *wart*, in the imperfect, it has also the irregular form, *ich wurde, du wurdest, er wurde*, which is more commonly used. The plural of the imperfect is always *wir wurden, ihr wurdet, sie wurden*, and the conditional of the present *ich würde*. The present indicative, in the second and third persons singular, changes the radical vowel *e* into *i*, according to § 61, 5, and contracts the last consonant of the stem with the termination—*wirst, wird*.

§ 69. The verb *werden*, to become, to grow, serves as an auxiliary for the formation of the future tenses of the active, and for all the tenses of the passive voice.

## EXERCISE IV.

The air becomes warm. The water<sup>1</sup> grows<sup>2</sup> cold. I grow tired.<sup>3</sup> It becomes winter.<sup>4</sup> The spendthrift<sup>5</sup> becomes poor.<sup>6</sup> The man<sup>7</sup> became rich.<sup>8</sup> The apples<sup>9</sup> grow ripe. It is growing (say, it grows) dark.<sup>10</sup> It will soon grow dark. It became light.<sup>11</sup> The trees will soon become green. The leaves<sup>12</sup> have become yellow.<sup>13</sup> The grapes have not yet<sup>14</sup> become ripe. He has become a beggar.<sup>15</sup> The boy<sup>16</sup> had grown very tall.<sup>17</sup> The woman<sup>18</sup> has become very old.<sup>19</sup> How<sup>20</sup> old has she become? They have become enemies.<sup>21</sup> We shall become friends.<sup>22</sup> Who has become his successor?<sup>23</sup> Who will become his successor? What will become of me?<sup>24</sup> What would have become of me? Do not become angry (say, become not angry).<sup>25</sup> That they may grow rich. That the room<sup>26</sup> may become warm. If I became rich. If he had not become poor. The fruit<sup>27</sup> would have become ripe, if the weather had been warm.

<sup>1</sup> The water, das Wasser. <sup>2</sup> To grow, werden. <sup>3</sup> Tired, müde. <sup>4</sup> Winter, Winter. <sup>5</sup> The spendthrift, der Verschwender. <sup>6</sup> Poor, arm. <sup>7</sup> The man, der Mann. <sup>8</sup> Rich, reich. <sup>9</sup> The apples, die Äpfel. <sup>10</sup> Dark, dunkel, or finster. <sup>11</sup> Light, hell. <sup>12</sup> The leaves, die Blätter. <sup>13</sup> Yellow, gelb. <sup>14</sup> Not yet, noch nicht. <sup>15</sup> A beggar, ein Bettler. <sup>16</sup> The boy, der Knabe. <sup>17</sup> Tall, groß. <sup>18</sup> The woman, die Frau. <sup>19</sup> Old, alt. <sup>20</sup> How, wie. <sup>21</sup> Enemies, Feinde. <sup>22</sup> Friends, Freunde. <sup>23</sup> His successor, sein Nachfolger. <sup>24</sup> Of me, aus mir. <sup>25</sup> Angry, böse. <sup>26</sup> The room, das Zimmer. <sup>27</sup> The fruit, das Obst.

## VI

## THE STRONG AND WEAK CONJUGATIONS.

## § 70. PARADIGM OF THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.		CONJUNCTIVE.		CONDITIONAL.	
		PRESENT.			
<i>Sing.</i>	ich singe, I sing, or am singing, du sing(e)st,* thou singest, er sing(e)t, he sings.	ich singe, I may sing, du singest, thou mayst sing, er singe, he may sing.	ich fänge, (if) I sang, du fängest, thou sangest, er fänge, he sang.		
<i>Plur.</i>	wir singen, we sing, ihr sing(e)t, you sing, sie singen, they sing.	wir singen, we may sing, ihr singet, you may sing, sie singen, they may sing.	wir fängen, we sang, ihr fänget, you sang, sie fängen, they sang.		
<i>Sing.</i>	ich sang, I sang, or was singing, du sang(e)st, thou sangest, er sang, he sang.				
<i>Plur.</i>	wir sangen, we sang, ihr sang(e)t, you sang, sie sangen, they sang.				
<i>Sing.</i>	ich habe du hast er hat	ich habe du habest er habe	ich hätte du hättest er hätte	<div> <div>ich hätte</div> <div>du hättest</div> <div>er hätte</div> <div>wir hätten</div> <div>ihr hättet</div> <div>sie hätten</div> </div> <div> <div>ich hätte</div> <div>du hättest</div> <div>er hätte</div> <div>wir hätten</div> <div>ihr hättet</div> <div>sie hätten</div> </div>	
<i>Plur.</i>	wir haben ihr habt sie haben	wir haben ihr habet sie haben	<div> <div>ich hätte</div> <div>du hättest</div> <div>er hätte</div> <div>wir hätten</div> <div>ihr hättet</div> <div>sie hätten</div> </div> <div> <div>ich hätte</div> <div>du hättest</div> <div>er hätte</div> <div>wir hätten</div> <div>ihr hättet</div> <div>sie hätten</div> </div>		

<b>PLUPERFECT.</b>			
<i>Sing.</i> ich hätte du hättest er hätte <i>Plur.</i> wir hätten ihr hättet sie hätten	gesungen, I had sung, or singing.		
<b>FUTURE.</b>			
<i>Sing.</i> ich werde du werdest er werde <i>Plur.</i> wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	ich singe, I shall sing.	ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	ich singen, I should sing.
<b>FUTURE PERFECT.</b>			
<i>Sing.</i> ich werde gesungen haben, I shall have sung.		ich würde gesungen haben, I should have sung.	
<b>IMPERATIVE.</b>		<b>INFINITIVES.</b>	
<i>Sing.</i> singe, sing (thou), singe er, let him sing.		<b>PRESENT.</b> singen, to sing.	
<i>Plur.</i> singen wir, let us sing, sing(e)t, sing (you), singen sie, let them sing.		<b>PAST.</b> gesungen haben, to have sung.	
		<b>SUPINES.</b>	
		<b>PRESENT.</b> zu singen, to sing.	
		<b>PAST.</b> gesungen zu haben, to have sung.	
		<b>PARTICIPLES.</b>	
		<b>PRESENT.</b> singend, singing.— <b>PAST.</b> gesungen, sung.	

\* Regarding the omission of the *e*, see § 62, note 1. In the verb *singen*, as well as in the paradigm of the weak conjugation *leben*, the *e* is thrown out where it is put in parenthesis.

Verbs to be conjugated like *singen* :—trinken, to drink ; finden, to find ; binden, to bind ; winden, to wind ; ringen, to wrestle ; springen, to spring.

§ 71. PARADIGM OF A STRONG VERB CONJUGATED WITH *sein*.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich falle, du fällst, er fällt, <i>Plur.</i> wir fallen, ihr fallt, sie fallen,</p>	<p><b>PRESENT.</b> ich falle, du fällst, er falle, wir fallen, ihr fallt, sie fallen,</p>	<p>ich fiele, du fielest, er fiele, wir fielen, ihr fieleet, sie fielen.</p>
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich fiel, du fiellst, er fiel, <i>Plur.</i> wir fielen, ihr fielt, sie fielen.</p>	<p><b>IMPERFECT.</b> ich fiele, du fielest, er fiele, wir fielen, ihr fieleet, sie fielen.</p>	<p>ich fiele, du fielest, er fiele, wir fielen, ihr fieleet, sie fielen.</p>

<i>Sing.</i> ich bin du bist er ist	<i>I have fallen.</i>	<i>ich sei du seiest er sei</i>	<i>I may have gefallen,</i>	<i>ich wäre tu wärest er wäre</i>	<i>(if) I had gefallen, fallen.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> wir sind ihr seid sie sind	<i>I have fallen.</i>	<i>wir seien ihr seiet sie seien</i>	<i>gefallen,</i>	<i>wir wären ihr wäret sie wären</i>	
<i>Sing.</i> ich war du warst er war	<i>I had fallen.</i>				
<i>Plur.</i> wir waren ihr wart sie waren	<i>I had fallen.</i>				
<i>Sing.</i> ich werde fallen, I shall fall.				<i>ich würde fallen, I should fall.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i> ich werde gefallen sein, I shall have fallen.				<i>ich würde gefallen sein, I should have fallen.</i>	
	<i>IMPERATIVE.</i>				<i>INFINITIVES.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> fasse er, let him fall.					<i>PRESENT. fallen, to fall.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> fasset ihr, let us fall, fallt, fall (you), fasset sie, let them fall.					<i>PAST. gefallen sein, to have fallen.</i>
					<i>SUPINES.</i>
					<i>PRESENT. zu fallen, to fall.</i>
					<i>PAST. gefallen zu sein, to have fallen.</i>
					<i>PARTICIPLES.</i>
					<i>PRESENT. fallend, falling.—PAST. gefallen, fallen.</i>

## § 72. PARADIGM OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<i>Sing.</i>	PRESENT.	
ich lobe,	ich lobe,	ich lob(e)te,
du lob(e)st,	du lobest,	du lob(e)test,
er lob(e)t,	er lobe,	er lob(e)te,
<i>Plur.</i>	wir loben,	wir lob(e)ten,
ihr lob(e)t,	ihr lobet,	ihr lob(e)tet,
sie loben,	sie loben,	sie lob(e)ten,
I praise, or am praising.		
I praised, or was praising.		
<i>Sing.</i>	IMPERFECT.	
ich lob(e)te,		
du lob(e)test,		
er lob(e)te,		
<i>Plur.</i>		
wir lob(e)ten,		
ihr lob(e)tet,		
sie lob(e)ten,		
I praised, or was praising.		
PERFECT.		
<i>Sing.</i>		
ich habe gelob(e)t,	ich habe gelob(e)t,	ich hätte gelob(e)t,
I have praised.	I may have praised.	(if) I had praised.
<i>Sing.</i>	PLUPERFECT.	
ich hätte gelob(e)t,		
I had praised.		
FUTURE.		
<i>Sing.</i>		
ich werde loben,	ich werde loben,	ich würde loben,
I shall praise.	I shall praise.	I should praise.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Sing.* ich werde gelob(e)t haben,  
I shall have praised.

ich werde gelob(e)t haben,  
I shall have praised.

## IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* lobe, praise (thou),

lobe er, let him praise.

*Plur.* loben wir, let us praise,

lob(e)t, praise (you),

loben ſie, let them praise.

## INFINITIVES.

PRESENT. loben, to praise.

PAST. gelob(e)t haben, to have praised.

## SUPINES.

PRESENT. zu loben, to praise.

PAST. gelob(e)t zu haben, to have praised.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. lobend, praising.—PAST. gelob(e)t, praised.

## Note.

Verbs ending in *et* or *en* drop the *e* of the inflectional termination in all cases, where it is put between brackets in the paradigm; as—*er sammelt*, he gathers; *ich wanderte*, I wandered. But in the first person singular present, they drop the *e* preceding the *t* or *v*; as—*ich sammle*, I gather; *ich wandle*, I wander.

Verbs to be conjugated like *loben*:—*leſen*, to love; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *malen*, to paint; *leben*, to live; *zählen*, to count; *spielen*, to play.—*gatten*, to guide; *reden*, to talk; *baden*, to bathe; *fiſchen*, to fish; *rechnen*, to reckon; *leugnen*, to deny.—*lächeln*, to smile; *wandeln*, to walk; *ändern*, to alter; *plaudern*, to chatter.



## EXERCISE V.

## Conjugation of Weak Verbs.

I hear<sup>1</sup> music.<sup>2</sup> We have heard the news.<sup>3</sup> Have you heard the news? She wept<sup>4</sup> bitterly.<sup>5</sup> Why<sup>6</sup> hast thou been weeping? (say, Why hast thou wept?) I am painting<sup>7</sup> (say, I paint) a landscape.<sup>8</sup> I shall paint a landscape. My sister has painted a picture.<sup>9</sup> Does she play<sup>10</sup> (say, plays she) the piano?<sup>11</sup> She was playing (say, she played) upon the harp.<sup>12</sup> Do you play (say, play you) any instrument?<sup>13</sup> We hope<sup>14</sup> continually.<sup>15</sup> I have hoped in vain.<sup>16</sup> Have you chosen<sup>17</sup> a pattern?<sup>18</sup> I shall choose another<sup>19</sup> pattern. What do you mean?<sup>20</sup> My father will buy<sup>21</sup> an estate.<sup>22</sup> We shall buy a house.<sup>23</sup> I have bought a watch.<sup>24</sup> They have bought a cargo of wheat.<sup>25</sup> Do they buy flax?<sup>26</sup> I have said<sup>27</sup> it. Say the truth.<sup>28</sup> He asked<sup>29</sup> me.<sup>30</sup> Thou wilt ask him.<sup>31</sup> I should have asked him. Where do you live?<sup>32</sup> Where does Mr.<sup>33</sup> M. reside? Mr M. resides in Dublin. We were living in the country.<sup>34</sup> I am learning<sup>35</sup> the German language.<sup>36</sup> Have you learned the German language? I should have learned the German language, if I had had time. Who has taught<sup>37</sup> you the German language? Lay<sup>38</sup> the work<sup>39</sup> aside.<sup>40</sup> I shall lay the books<sup>41</sup> upon the table.<sup>42</sup> I believe<sup>43</sup> you are dreaming.<sup>44</sup> Do you believe it? Fetch<sup>45</sup> a glass of water.<sup>46</sup> I have

<sup>1</sup> To hear, hören. <sup>2</sup> Music, Musik. <sup>3</sup> The news, die Neuigkeit. <sup>4</sup> To weep, weinen. <sup>5</sup> Bitterly, bitterlich. <sup>6</sup> Why, warum. <sup>7</sup> To paint, malen. <sup>8</sup> A landscape, eine Landschaft. <sup>9</sup> A picture, ein Bild. <sup>10</sup> To play, spielen. <sup>11</sup> The piano, das Pianoforte. <sup>12</sup> Upon the harp, auf der Harfe. <sup>13</sup> Any instrument, ein Instrument. <sup>14</sup> To hope, hoffen. <sup>15</sup> Continually, beständig. <sup>16</sup> In vain, vergebens. <sup>17</sup> To choose, wählen. <sup>18</sup> A pattern, ein Muster. <sup>19</sup> Another, ein anderes. <sup>20</sup> To mean, meinen. <sup>21</sup> To buy, kaufen. <sup>22</sup> An estate, ein Landgut. <sup>23</sup> A house, ein Haus. <sup>24</sup> A watch, eine Uhr. <sup>25</sup> A cargo of wheat, eine Schiffsladung Weizen. <sup>26</sup> Flax, Flachs. <sup>27</sup> To say, sagen. <sup>28</sup> The truth, die Wahrheit. <sup>29</sup> To ask, fragen. <sup>30</sup> Me, mich. <sup>31</sup> Him, ihn. <sup>32</sup> To live, to reside, wohnen. <sup>33</sup> Mr, Herr. <sup>34</sup> In the country, auf dem Lande. <sup>35</sup> To learn, lernen. <sup>36</sup> The German language, die deutsche Sprache. <sup>37</sup> To teach, lehren. <sup>38</sup> To lay, legen. <sup>39</sup> The work, die Arbeit. <sup>40</sup> Aside, bei Seite. <sup>41</sup> The books, die Bücher. <sup>42</sup> Upon the table, auf den Tisch. <sup>43</sup> To believe, glauben. <sup>44</sup> To dream, träumen. <sup>45</sup> To fetch, holen. <sup>46</sup> A glass of water, ein Glas Wasser.

sought<sup>47</sup> you everywhere. If I had warned<sup>48</sup> you. If you learned the German language. That he may count<sup>49</sup> the money.<sup>50</sup> That he may have hoped. That he will hope.<sup>51</sup>

<sup>47</sup> To seek, suchen. <sup>48</sup> To warn, warnen. <sup>49</sup> To count, zählen. <sup>50</sup> The money, das Geld. <sup>51</sup> Conjective of the future.

## EXERCISE VI.

## Conjugation of Weak Verbs continued.

I have bathed.<sup>1</sup> She denies<sup>2</sup> the truth. Did she deny it? She has denied it. I have consoled<sup>3</sup> her.<sup>4</sup> A messenger<sup>5</sup> is waiting.<sup>6</sup> He has waited a long time.<sup>7</sup> She had waited the whole day.<sup>8</sup> Wait a little.<sup>9</sup> I should have waited a few moments.<sup>10</sup> Fear<sup>11</sup> the Lord.<sup>12</sup> I feared his censure.<sup>13</sup> He breathes<sup>14</sup> heavily.<sup>15</sup> Does he reckon<sup>16</sup> upon my assistance?<sup>17</sup> It rains.<sup>18</sup> Does it rain? It has rained the whole day. It thunders.<sup>19</sup> She smiled.<sup>20</sup> I act<sup>21</sup> with caution.<sup>22</sup> I collect<sup>23</sup> coins.<sup>24</sup> I shake<sup>25</sup> the tree.<sup>26</sup> I am changing<sup>27</sup> my way of living.<sup>28</sup> I doubt<sup>29</sup> of it.<sup>30</sup> I have always doubted of it. Do you doubt of it? I would say it, if I doubted of it. My brother studies<sup>31</sup> theology.<sup>32</sup> He has studied<sup>33</sup> very diligently.<sup>34</sup> The troops<sup>35</sup> had marched<sup>36</sup> the whole day. Spell<sup>37</sup> the word.<sup>38</sup> Have you noted<sup>39</sup> it down? The merchant<sup>40</sup> would have failed.<sup>41</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To bathe, baden. <sup>2</sup> To deny, leugnen. <sup>3</sup> To console, trösten. <sup>4</sup> Her, sie. <sup>5</sup> A messenger, ein Bote. <sup>6</sup> To wait, warten. <sup>7</sup> A long time, lange. <sup>8</sup> The whole day, den ganzen Tag (acc.) <sup>9</sup> A little, ein wenig. <sup>10</sup> A few moments, einige Augenblicke. <sup>11</sup> To fear, fürchten. Use the second person singular imperative. <sup>12</sup> The Lord, den Herrn (acc.) <sup>13</sup> His censure, seinen Tadel (acc.) <sup>14</sup> To breathe, athmen. <sup>15</sup> Heavily, schwer. <sup>16</sup> To reckon, rechnen. <sup>17</sup> Upon my assistance, auf meinen Beistand. <sup>18</sup> To rain, regnen. <sup>19</sup> To thunder, donnern. <sup>20</sup> To smile, lächeln. <sup>21</sup> To act, handeln. <sup>22</sup> With caution, vorsichtig. <sup>23</sup> To collect, sammeln. <sup>24</sup> Coins, Münzen. <sup>25</sup> To shake, schütteln. <sup>26</sup> The tree, den Baum (acc.) <sup>27</sup> To change, ändern. <sup>28</sup> My way of living, meine Lebensweise. <sup>29</sup> To doubt, zweifeln. <sup>30</sup> Of it, daran. <sup>31</sup> To study, studiren. <sup>32</sup> Theology, Theologie. <sup>33</sup> See § 63. <sup>34</sup> Diligently, fleißig. <sup>35</sup> The troops, die Truppen. <sup>36</sup> To march, marschiren. <sup>37</sup> To spell, buchstabiren. <sup>38</sup> The word, das Wort. <sup>39</sup> To note down, notiren. <sup>40</sup> The merchant, der Kaufmann. <sup>41</sup> To fail, falliren.

## VII.

## CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.

§ 73. By far the greater number of verbs follow the weak conjugation, as it comprises not only all derivative, but also some radical verbs, whilst all verbs of the strong conjugation, without exception, are radical verbs. Compound verbs—that is, those compounded with prefixes—generally follow the same conjugation as the simple verbs from which they are formed.

§ 74. All verbs of the strong conjugation are divided into three classes, according as they agree in the radical vowel; and each of the three classes has several subdivisions, according as they agree in the change of the radical vowel in the imperfect tense and the past participle.

The verbs of the first class agree in having the radical vowel *i* or *e*. A few only have *ā*, *ō*, *ū*, *o* or *au*. The verbs of the second class agree in having the diphthong *ei*. The verbs of the third class have *a*, a few *au*, *o* or *u*. The following table shews how in each class the radical vowel changes in the various subdivisions. English analogies are subjoined:—

	RADICAL VOWEL IN THE INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
First Class.			
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1.	<i>i</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>u</i> .
2.	<i>i</i> or <i>e</i> ( <i>ā</i> ),	<i>a</i> ,	<i>o</i> .
3.	<i>i</i> ( <i>ie</i> , <i>ū</i> ) or <i>e</i> ( <i>ā</i> , <i>ō</i> , <i>au</i> ),	<i>o</i> ,	<i>o</i> .
4.	<i>i</i> or <i>e</i> ,	<i>a</i> ,	<i>e</i> .
Second Class.			
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1.	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>i</i> (short),	<i>i</i> (short).
2.	<i>ei</i> ,	<i>ie</i> (long),	<i>ie</i> (long).
Third Class.			
<i>Subdiv.</i> 1.	<i>a</i> ( <i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>ei</i> ),	<i>i</i> or <i>ie</i> ,	<i>a</i> ( <i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>ei</i> ).
2.	<i>a</i> ,	<i>u</i> ,	<i>a</i> .

## ENGLISH ANALOGIES.

I. 1. to sing,	sang,	sung.
2. to bear,	bare,	born.
3. to speak,	spoke,	spoken.
4. to give,	gave,	given.
II. to hide,	hid,	hidden.
III. 1. to fall,	fell,	fallen.
2. to draw,	drew,	drawn.

## FIRST CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

## § 75. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i.—Imperfect a. Past Participle u.

binden, to bind,	band,	gebunden.
dringen, to press,	drang,	gedrungen.
finden, to find,	fand,	gefunden.
gelingen, to succeed,	gelang,	gelungen.
klingen, to sound,	klang,	geklungen.
ringen, to wring,	rang,	gerungen.
schlingen, to swallow,	schlang,	geschlungen.
schwinden, to vanish,	schwand,	geschwunden.
schwingen, to swing,	schwang,	geschwungen.
singen, to sing,	sang,	gesungen.
sinken, to sink,	sank,	gesunken.
springen, to spring,	sprang,	gesprungen.
stinken, to stink,	stank,	gestunken.
trinken, to drink,	trank,	getrunken.
winden, to wind,	wand,	gewunden.
zwingen, to force,	zwang,	gezwungen.

§ 76. Dingen, to hire, has in the imperfect *dung* or *dingte*; in the past participle *gedungen*. Schinden, to flay, has *schund*, *geschunden*.

## EXERCISE VII.

I drink wine.<sup>1</sup> Do you drink wine? He drinks beer.<sup>2</sup> I shall drink a cup of tea or coffee.<sup>3</sup> She had drunk a glass<sup>4</sup> of wine. He binds books.<sup>5</sup> They were winding a

<sup>1</sup> Wine, Wein. <sup>2</sup> Beer, Bier. <sup>3</sup> A cup of tea or coffee, eine Tasse Thee oder Kaffee. <sup>4</sup> A glass, ein Glas. <sup>5</sup> Books, Bücher.

wreath.<sup>6</sup> Who has found the purse?<sup>7</sup> Where did you find (say, have you found) my keys?<sup>8</sup> When shall I find you at home? You will find us<sup>9</sup> here. The boy sprang over the wall.<sup>10</sup> I shall leap for joy.<sup>11</sup> Mrs<sup>12</sup> S. sings beautifully.<sup>13</sup> Miss<sup>14</sup> B. sang an air.<sup>15</sup> Pray<sup>16</sup> sing a German song.<sup>17</sup> The birds<sup>18</sup> were singing. I should sing, if I had a good voice.<sup>19</sup> The bell<sup>20</sup> has sounded. It sounds very badly.<sup>21</sup> The sun<sup>22</sup> is sinking. Who would have forced you? If I forced you. That he will<sup>23</sup> not force me. If we sang an air. That he may find me ready.<sup>24</sup> That he will find me here. He succeeds (say, It succeeds to him).<sup>25</sup> I have succeeded (say, It is<sup>26</sup> to me<sup>27</sup> succeeded). She will succeed (say, It will to her<sup>28</sup> succeed).

<sup>6</sup> A wreath, einen Kranz (acc.) <sup>7</sup> The purse, die Börse. <sup>8</sup> My keys, meine Schlüssel. <sup>9</sup> Us, uns. <sup>10</sup> Over the wall, über die Mauer. <sup>11</sup> For joy, vor Freude. <sup>12</sup> Mrs, Frau. <sup>13</sup> Beautifully, schön. <sup>14</sup> Miss, Fräulein. <sup>15</sup> An air, eine Arie. <sup>16</sup> Pray, bitte (an abbreviation for ich bitte). <sup>17</sup> A German song, ein deutsches Lied. <sup>18</sup> The birds, die Vögel. <sup>19</sup> A good voice, eine gute Stimme. <sup>20</sup> The bell, die Glocke. <sup>21</sup> Badly, schlecht. <sup>22</sup> The sun, die Sonne. <sup>23</sup> Use the conjunctive of the future, and arrange thus:—'That he me not force will.' <sup>24</sup> Ready, bereit. <sup>25</sup> To him, ihm. <sup>26</sup> See § 67, 4. <sup>27</sup> To me, mir. <sup>28</sup> To her, ihr.

## § 77. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i or e (ä).—Imperfect a.—Past Participle a.

befehlen, to command,	befahl,	befohlen.
beginnen, to begin,	begann,	begonnen.
bergen, to hide,	berg,	geborgen.
bersten, to burst,	barst or borst,	geborsten.
brechen, to break,	brach,	gebrochen.
empfehlen, to recommend,	empfohl,	empfohlen.
erschrecken, to be frightened,	erschraf,	erschrocken.
gebären, to bring forth,	gebar,	geboren.
gelten, to be worth,	galt,	gegolten.
gewinnen, to win,	gewann,	gewonnen.
helfen, to help,	half,	geholfen.
kommen, to come,	kam,	gekommen.
nehmen, to take,	nahm,	genommen.
rinnen, to flow,	rann,	geronnen.
schelten, to chide,	schalt,	gescholten.

schwimmen, to swim,	schwamm,	geschwommen.
sinnen, to meditate,	sann,	gesonnen.
spinnen, to spin,	spann,	gesponnen.
sprechen, to speak,	sprach,	gesprochen.
stechen, to sting,	stach,	gestochen.
stehlen, to steal,	stahl,	gestohlen.
sterben, to die,	starb,	gestorben.
treffen, to hit,	traf,	getroffen.
verderben, to spoil,	verdarb,	verdorben.
werben, to sue,	warb,	geworben.
werden, to become,	ward or wurde,	geworden.
werfen, to throw,	warf,	geworfen.

## Note.

The simple verb *fehlen*, to fail, to be wanting, takes the weak conjugation; also *erschrecken*, when used in the transitive meaning, to frighten.

§ 78. All verbs of this subdivision which have *e* for their radical vowel, change the *e* into *i* in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, and in the second person singular of the imperative. A long *e* is changed into a long *i* (that is, *ie*), a short *e* into a short *i*; as—*ich befehle*, *du befehlst*, *er befehlt*, imperative *befiehl*; *ich spreche*, *du sprichst*, *er spricht*, imperative *sprich*. In *nehmen*, however, the long *e* is changed into a short *i*:—*ich nehme*, *du nimmst*, *er nimmt*, imperative *nimm*. *Gebären* has *gebierst*, *gebirt*, imperative *gebier*. *Werden* has *wirst*, *wird* by contraction, but in the imperative *werde*. In the second and third persons present of *kommen*, the forms *kommst*, *kommt*, are more generally used than *fömmst*, *fömmt*.

§ 79. The following verbs of the above list have in the conditional of the present the modified vowel *ü*:—*helfen*, conditional *hülfe*; *sterben*, *stürbe*; *verderben*, *verdürbe*; *werben*, *würbe*; *werden*, *würde*; *werfen* has both *wärfe* and *würfe*.

The following verbs have in the conditional of the present the modified vowel *ö*:—*beginnen*, *begönne*; *befehlen*, *besöhle*; *empfehlen*, *empföhle*. The following have either *ä* or *ö*:—*gelten*, *gewinnen*, *schwimmen*, *spinnen*, *stehlen*. In all the other verbs of this subdivision, the conditional is formed in the regular way; as—*nehmen*, *nähme*, from the imperfect *nahm*.

## EXERCISE VIII.

I command it. Who commands here? The music<sup>1</sup> has begun. At what o'clock<sup>2</sup> does the lecture<sup>3</sup> begin? (say, begins the lecture?) The lecture begins at seven o'clock.<sup>4</sup> The barrel<sup>5</sup> has (say, is) burst. The bow<sup>6</sup> breaks. He has broken his word.<sup>7</sup> I recommend myself<sup>8</sup> to you.<sup>9</sup> My father recommends him. Which tailor<sup>10</sup> do you recommend? I am not easily<sup>11</sup> frightened. We were frightened. Who has won the game?<sup>12</sup> If I won<sup>13</sup> the game. He helped me.<sup>14</sup> God has helped me in my distress.<sup>15</sup> He takes everything.<sup>16</sup> Take the pen.<sup>17</sup> He has taken leave<sup>18</sup> of his friends.<sup>19</sup> I shall take leave to-morrow.<sup>20</sup> My brother came (say, is come<sup>21</sup>) yesterday<sup>22</sup> from<sup>23</sup> Berlin. Will he come to-day?<sup>24</sup> We came too soon.<sup>25</sup> You have (say, are) not come too late.<sup>26</sup> They would have (say, be) come too late. The girl<sup>27</sup> was spinning wool.<sup>28</sup> Do you speak German?<sup>29</sup> I speak German. Does she speak English?<sup>30</sup> She speaks three languages.<sup>31</sup> I have spoken with him.<sup>32</sup> If I had spoken with him. If he were to speak<sup>33</sup> with me.<sup>34</sup> That he may speak with me. A wasp<sup>35</sup> has stung me.<sup>36</sup> The woman<sup>37</sup> has been stealing. Who steals is a thief.<sup>38</sup> She died yesterday. If she were to die.<sup>39</sup> Is she dead? You have hit it. He throws the ball<sup>40</sup> into the air.<sup>41</sup> I have thrown the book into the fire.<sup>42</sup> If I recommended<sup>43</sup> you.

<sup>1</sup> The music, die Musik. <sup>2</sup> At what o'clock, um welche Zeit. <sup>3</sup> The lecture, die Vorlesung. <sup>4</sup> At seven o'clock, um sieben Uhr. <sup>5</sup> The barrel, das Faß. <sup>6</sup> The bow, der Bogen. <sup>7</sup> His word, sein Wort. <sup>8</sup> Myself, mich. <sup>9</sup> To you, Ihnen. <sup>10</sup> Which tailor, welchen Schneider (acc.) <sup>11</sup> Easily, leicht. <sup>12</sup> The game, das Spiel. <sup>13</sup> See § 79. <sup>14</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>15</sup> In my distress, in meiner Noth. <sup>16</sup> Everything, Alles. <sup>17</sup> The pen, die Feder. <sup>18</sup> Leave, Abschied. <sup>19</sup> Of his friends, von seinen Freunden; comes before 'leave.' <sup>20</sup> To-morrow, morgen; comes before 'leave.' <sup>21</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>22</sup> Yesterday, gestern. <sup>23</sup> From, von. <sup>24</sup> To-day, heute. <sup>25</sup> Too soon, zu früh. <sup>26</sup> Too late, zu spät. <sup>27</sup> The girl, das Mädchen. <sup>28</sup> Wool, Wolle. <sup>29</sup> German, Deutsch. <sup>30</sup> English, Englisch. <sup>31</sup> Three languages, drei Sprachen. <sup>32</sup> With him, mit ihm. <sup>33</sup> Use the present conditional. <sup>34</sup> With me, mit mir. <sup>35</sup> A wasp, eine Wespe. <sup>36</sup> Me, mich. <sup>37</sup> The woman, die Frau. <sup>38</sup> A thief, ein Dieb. <sup>39</sup> Present conditional. (See § 79). <sup>40</sup> The ball, den Ball (acc.) <sup>41</sup> Into the air, in die Luft. <sup>42</sup> Into the fire, in das Feuer. <sup>43</sup> See § 79.

## § 80. THIRD SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i (ie, ü) or e (ä, ë, au).—Imperfect u.—Past Participle o

bewegen, to induce,	bewog,	bewogen.
biegen, to bend,	bog,	gebogen.
bieten, to bid, offer,	bot,	geboten.
dreſchen, to thrash,	droſch or draſch,	gedreſchen.
erſieſen, erſüren, to choose,	erfor,	erſoren.
erſchallen, to resound,	erſcholl,	erſchollen.
ſechten, to fight,	ſocht,	geſochten.
ſlechten, to twine,	ſlocht,	geſlochten.
ſiegen, to fly,	ſlog,	geſlogen.
ſiechen, to flee,	ſloh,	geſlohen.
ſieſen, to flow,	ſoß,	geſoſſen.
ſrieren, to freeze,	ſror,	geſroren.
gähren, to ferment,	gohr,	gegohren.
genieſen, to enjoy,	genoß,	genoffen.
gieſen, to pour,	goß,	gegoffen.
glimmen, to glimmer,	glomm,	geglommen.
heben, to lift,	hob or hub,	gehoben.
ſtimmen, to climb,	ſlomm,	geſlommen.
ſrieden, to creep,	ſroch,	geſrochen.
erlöſchen, } to become	erloſch,	erloſchen.
verlöſchen, { extinguished,	verloſch,	verloſchen.
lügen, to tell a lie,	log,	gelogen.
melken, to milk,	molt,	gemolken.
pſlegen, to practise,	pſlog,	gepſlogen.
quellen, to spring forth,	quoll,	gequollen.
riechen, to smell,	roch,	gerochen.
ſaufen, to drink (ſaid of beaſts),	ſoff,	geſoffen.
ſaugen, to ſuck,	ſog,	geſogen.
ſcheren, to ſhear,	ſchor,	geſchoren.
ſchieben, to ſhove,	ſchob,	geſchoben.
ſchieſen, to ſhoot,	ſchoß,	geſchoſſen.
ſchließen, to ſhut,	ſchloß,	geſchloſſen.
ſchmelzen, to melt,	ſchmolz,	geſchmolzen.
ſchnauben, to ſnort,	ſchnob,	geſchnoben.
ſchrauben, to ſcrew,	ſchrob,	geſchroben.
ſchwären, to feſter,	ſchwor,	geſchworen.



schwellen, to swell,	schwoll,	geschwollen.
schwören, to swear,	schwor or schwur,	geschworen.
sieden, to boil (intransitive),	sott,	gesotten.
sprießen, to sprout,	sproß,	gesprossen.
stieben, to be scattered,	stob,	gestoben.
triefen, to drip,	troff,	getroffen.
(be)trügen, to deceive,	(be)trog,	(be)trogen.
verdrießen, to vex (impersonal),	verdroß,	verdroffen.
verlieren, to lose,	verlor,	verloren.
verschallen, to cease sounding,	verscholl,	verschollen.
weben, to weave,	wob,	gewoben.
wiegen, to weigh (intransitive),	} wog,	gewogen.
wägen, to weigh (transitive),		
ziehen, to pull,	zog,	gezogen.

## Note.

The verbs beklommen, to straiten, and rächen, to revenge, form only their past participle by the strong conjugation—beklommen, gerochen. Of the verb vermirren, there still exists the past participle verwirren, meaning 'intricate,' 'confused;' and of verhehlen, to conceal, the past participle verhehlen occurs in the word unverhehlen, 'unreserved.' Bewegen in the signification 'to move' (physically), pflegen, in the sense of 'to nurse,' and 'to be accustomed,' and wiegen in the meaning 'to rock,' are conjugated by the weak form. Quellen, schmelzen, schwellen, sieden, are likewise weak, when used in a transitive sense; the last of these four sometimes takes the weak conjugation, even when used in an intransitive meaning. The simple verb löschen, and the compound auslöschen, to extinguish (in a transitive meaning), have likewise the weak form of conjugation. Weben is now commonly conjugated weak; the strong forms wob, gewoben, being used in poetry only.

§ 81. The radical e is changed into i in the second and third persons singular present indicative, and in the second person singular imperative; as—ich seche, du sichst, er sicht, imperative sicht. The following verbs are excepted:—bewegen, heben, messen, pflegen, scheeren. In erlöschē, the ö is changed into i:—du erlöschest, er erlischt, imperative erlischt. In saufen, the diphthong au is modified in the second and third persons singular present indicative:—du säuffst, er säuft; whilst it remains unchanged in saugen, schnauben, and schrauben.

The conditional of the present is formed in the usual way; as—höge, from the imperfect bog, &c. Heben has höbe and hübe; schwören has schwöre and schwüre.

## Note.

Verbs with *ie* long for the radical, have (besides their regular forms in the second and third persons singular present indicative, and in the second person singular imperative) unusual and antiquated forms with the diphthong *eu*, which occur occasionally in poetry; for instance—*beutst*, *beut*, of *bieten*; *fluegst*, *fluegt*, imperative *flueg*, of *fliegen*; *flueßest*, *flueßt*, imperative *flueß*, of *fließen*; *zeuchst*, *zeucht*, imperative *zeuch*, of *ziehen*.

§ 82. In all verbs of the above subdivision, the root of which ends in *ß* or *ch*, *ie* long is changed in the imperfect and past participle into *o* short; as—*fließen*, *floss*, *geflossen*; *riechen*, *roch*, *gerochen*. Also in *steden*, *triefen*, and *saufen*, the long vowel is changed into a short one, and the following consonant is doubled in consequence; in *steden*, moreover, the *b* is hardened:—*sott*, *gesotten*. In *ziehen*, the *h* is changed into *g*:—*zog*, *gezogen*; but the vowel remains long.

## EXERCISE IX.

I have offered a large sum.<sup>1</sup> The troops<sup>2</sup> have fought bravely.<sup>3</sup> The man is thrashing corn.<sup>4</sup> The Danube<sup>5</sup> flows very fast.<sup>6</sup> The water flows no longer,<sup>7</sup> for<sup>8</sup> it is frozen. The enemy<sup>9</sup> fled. The bird<sup>10</sup> flies. The bird flew upon the tree.<sup>11</sup> The bird is flown away.<sup>12</sup> He enjoys his life.<sup>13</sup> The spark<sup>14</sup> was glimmering. I have poured water into the glass.<sup>15</sup> She has told a lie. The engine<sup>16</sup> smells of oil.<sup>17</sup> The flowers<sup>18</sup> smell beautifully. The wax<sup>19</sup> is melting. The shepherds<sup>20</sup> have shorn the sheep.<sup>21</sup> The river<sup>22</sup> is swelling. The river is swollen. How many<sup>23</sup> hares<sup>24</sup> have you shot? Would they have sworn? They will swear falsely.<sup>25</sup> Have you weighed the loaf?<sup>26</sup> It weighs four pounds.<sup>27</sup> How much<sup>28</sup> does this fish<sup>29</sup> weigh? I shall soon lose all

<sup>1</sup> A large sum, eine große Summe. <sup>2</sup> The troops, die Truppen. <sup>3</sup> Bravely, tapfer. <sup>4</sup> Corn, Korn. <sup>5</sup> The Danube, die Donau. <sup>6</sup> Fast, schnell. <sup>7</sup> No longer, nicht mehr. <sup>8</sup> For, denn. <sup>9</sup> The enemy, der Feind. <sup>10</sup> The bird, der Vogel. <sup>11</sup> Upon the tree, auf den Baum. <sup>12</sup> Away, weg. <sup>13</sup> His life, sein Leben. <sup>14</sup> The spark, der Funke. <sup>15</sup> Into the glass, in das Glas. <sup>16</sup> The engine, die Maschine. <sup>17</sup> Of oil, nach Öl. <sup>18</sup> The flowers, die Blumen. <sup>19</sup> The wax, das Wachs. <sup>20</sup> The shepherds, die Schäfer. <sup>21</sup> The sheep, die Schafe. <sup>22</sup> The river, der Fluß. <sup>23</sup> How many, wie viele. <sup>24</sup> Hares, Hasen. <sup>25</sup> Falsely, falsch. <sup>26</sup> The loaf, das Brod. <sup>27</sup> Four pounds, vier Pfund. <sup>28</sup> How much, wie viel. <sup>29</sup> This fish, dieser Fisch.

patience.<sup>30</sup> What have you lost? I have lost a bank-note.<sup>31</sup> Pray pull the bell. The family<sup>32</sup> has (say, is) removed<sup>33</sup> to the country.<sup>34</sup> We shall soon remove into [the] town<sup>35</sup> again.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>30</sup> All patience, alle Geduld. <sup>31</sup> A bank-note, eine Banknote. <sup>32</sup> The family, die Familie. <sup>33</sup> To remove, ziehen. (See § 67, 2). <sup>34</sup> To the country, auf das Land. <sup>35</sup> Into town, in die Stadt. <sup>36</sup> Again, wieder; follows after 'soon.'

### § 83. FOURTH SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel i or e.—Imperfect a (long).—Past Participle e.

bitten, to beg,	bat,	gebeten.
essen, to eat,	aß,	geessen.
fressen, to eat (said of beasts),	fraß,	gefressen.
geben, to give,	gab,	gegeben.
genesen, to recover from illness,	genaß,	genesen.
geschehen, to happen (impersonal),	geschah,	geschehen.
lesen, to read,	las,	gelesen.
liegen, to lie,	lag,	gelegen.
messen, to measure,	maß,	gemessen.
sehen, to see,	sah,	gesehen.
sitzen, to sit,	satz,	gesehen.
treten, to tread,	trat,	getreten.
vergessen, to forget,	vergaß,	vergesen.

The verb *sein*, to be (originally *wesen*), imperfect *war*, past participle *gewesen*, belongs also to this division of strong verbs. (See § 66, note).

§ 84. *Genesen* is the only verb in this subdivision which does not change *e* into *i* in the present and imperative. In *treten*, *e* long is changed into *i* short, and the following consonant is doubled:—*trittst*, *tritt*. The vowel *a* in the imperfect being long, *bitten* loses one *t* (*bat*), and double *f* is changed into *ß*, in *aß*, *fraß*, *maß*, *vergaß*. *Sitzen* has *satz*, instead of *faß*, because a single *z* is never used at the end of a syllable after a simple vowel. The vowel in the past participle is long or short, according as the vowel of the infinitive is long or short, with the exception only of *bitten*, which has *gebeten* with *e* long. In *geessen* (instead of *geessen*), *g* is inserted, for the sake of euphony.

## EXERCISE X.

I beg [for] pardon.<sup>1</sup> My aunt<sup>2</sup> has asked<sup>3</sup> me to dinner.<sup>4</sup> Does she give a party?<sup>5</sup> My father has given me<sup>6</sup> permission.<sup>7</sup> Pray give me a piece *of* bread.<sup>8</sup> I shall eat a piece of bread and butter.<sup>9</sup> He eats very little.<sup>10</sup> He has eaten too much.<sup>11</sup> We shall sup<sup>12</sup> at nine o'clock.<sup>13</sup> The sheep eat grass.<sup>14</sup> God sees all.<sup>15</sup> Have you seen the panorama?<sup>16</sup> Dost thou see the mountains?<sup>17</sup> When<sup>18</sup> shall I see you again? I should have asked you, if I had seen you. Will Mr N. recover again? What has (say, is<sup>19</sup>) happened? It happens very often.<sup>20</sup> It happened lately.<sup>21</sup> It lies in good hands.<sup>22</sup> Where do the letters<sup>23</sup> lie? I lay on the sofa.<sup>24</sup> He is measuring the cloth.<sup>25</sup> What are you reading there? I am reading a German book.<sup>26</sup> Have you read Uhland's poems?<sup>27</sup> Read Schiller's plays.<sup>28</sup> She reads the Bible.<sup>29</sup> That she may read the Bible. I should read Schiller's poems, if I had a copy.<sup>30</sup> I shall give you<sup>31</sup> one.<sup>32</sup> I shall read only<sup>33</sup> useful books.<sup>34</sup> They sat at table.<sup>35</sup> A horse<sup>36</sup> has kicked<sup>37</sup> him. Do not forget it (say, Forget it not). I have forgotten your name.<sup>38</sup> He forgets his friends.<sup>39</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For pardon, um Verzeihung. <sup>2</sup> My aunt, meine Tante. <sup>3</sup> To ask, bitten. <sup>4</sup> To dinner, zum Mittagessen. <sup>5</sup> A party, eine Gesellschaft. <sup>6</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>7</sup> Permission, Erlaubniß. <sup>8</sup> A piece of bread, ein Stück Brod. <sup>9</sup> A piece of bread and butter, ein Butterbrod. <sup>10</sup> Little, wenig. <sup>11</sup> Too much, zu viel. <sup>12</sup> To sup, zu Abend essen. <sup>13</sup> At nine o'clock, um neun Uhr. <sup>14</sup> Grass, Gras. <sup>15</sup> All, Alles. <sup>16</sup> The panorama, das Panorama. <sup>17</sup> The mountains, die Berge. <sup>18</sup> When? wann? <sup>19</sup> See § 67, 4. <sup>20</sup> Often, oft. <sup>21</sup> Lately, neulich. <sup>22</sup> In good hands, in guten Händen. <sup>23</sup> The letters, die Briefe. <sup>24</sup> On the sofa, auf dem Sopha. <sup>25</sup> The cloth, das Tuch. <sup>26</sup> A German book, ein deutsches Buch. <sup>27</sup> Poems, Gedichte. <sup>28</sup> Plays, Schauspiele. <sup>29</sup> The Bible, die Bibel. <sup>30</sup> A copy, ein Exemplar. <sup>31</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>32</sup> One, eins. <sup>33</sup> Only, nur. <sup>34</sup> Useful books, nützliche Bücher. <sup>35</sup> At table, bei Tische. <sup>36</sup> A horse, ein Pferd. <sup>37</sup> To kick, treten. <sup>38</sup> Your name, Ihren Namen (acc.) <sup>39</sup> His friends, seine Freunde.

## SECOND CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

## § 85. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel *ei*.—Imperfect and Past Participle *i* (short).

( <i>sich</i> ) <i>besleißen</i> , to apply one's self,	<i>besließ</i> ,	<i>beslissen</i> .
<i>beißen</i> , to bite,	<i>biß</i> ,	<i>gebissen</i> .
<i>erbleichen</i> , to turn pale,	<i>erblich</i> ,	<i>erblichen</i> .
<i>gleichen</i> , to resemble,	<i>glich</i> ,	<i>geglichen</i> .
<i>gleiten</i> , to glide,	<i>glitt</i> ,	<i>geglichen</i> .
<i>greifen</i> , to seize,	<i>griff</i> ,	<i>gegriffen</i> .
<i>feifen</i> , to chide,	<i>fiff</i> ,	<i>gefiffen</i> .
<i>kneifen</i> , to pinch,	<i>kniff</i> ,	<i>gekniffen</i> .
<i>leiden</i> , to suffer,	<i>litt</i> ,	<i>gelitten</i> .
<i>pfeifen</i> , to whistle,	<i>pfiff</i> ,	<i>gepfiffen</i> .
<i>reißen</i> , to tear,	<i>riß</i> ,	<i>gerissen</i> .
<i>reiten</i> , to ride,	<i>ritt</i> ,	<i>geritten</i> .
<i>schleichen</i> , to sneak,	<i>schlich</i> ,	<i>geschlichen</i> .
<i>schleifen</i> , to grind,	<i>schliff</i> ,	<i>geschliffen</i> .
<i>schleißen</i> , to slit,	<i>schliß</i> ,	<i>geschliffen</i> .
<i>schmeißen</i> , to sling,	<i>schmiß</i> ,	<i>geschmissen</i> .
<i>schneiden</i> , to cut,	<i>schnitt</i> ,	<i>geschnitten</i> .
<i>schreiten</i> , to stride,	<i>schratt</i> ,	<i>geschritten</i> .
<i>spleißen</i> , to split,	<i>spieß</i> ,	<i>gespliffen</i> .
<i>streich</i> , to stroke,	<i>strich</i> ,	<i>gestrichen</i> .
<i>streiten</i> , to contend,	<i>stritt</i> ,	<i>gestritten</i> .
<i>weichen</i> , to yield,	<i>wich</i> ,	<i>gewichen</i> .

## Note.

The simple verb *bleichen*, to bleach, follows the weak conjugation; sometimes also the compound verb *erbleichen*, to turn pale; likewise *schleifen*, in the meaning 'to drag, to raze (a fortress),' *weichen*, in the meaning 'to soak,' and the compound verb *verleiten*, to render disagreeable, to spoil. The compound verb *begleiten*, to accompany, takes the weak conjugation, it being a contraction for *begleiten*, and therefore not derivable from *gleiten*, to glide, but from *leiten*, to lead.

§ 86. The vowel being short in the imperfect and past participle, the final consonant of the root is doubled, except where it is double already. In two verbs—namely, *leiden* and *schneiden*—the *d* is hardened. The conditional of the

present of all verbs of this class is formed simply by adding *e* to the imperfect ; as—*ich griffe, ich litte* ; and in the second subdivision, *ich bliebe, ich schriebe*.

## EXERCISE XI.

We shall apply ourselves.<sup>1</sup> She turned pale. The house resembles a palace.<sup>2</sup> Does the dog<sup>3</sup> bite ? The dog has bitten me. I seized<sup>4</sup> the first opportunity.<sup>5</sup> My mother has suffered from rheumatism.<sup>6</sup> Does she still<sup>7</sup> suffer ? I suffer from toothache.<sup>8</sup> I should have come,<sup>9</sup> if I had not suffered from headache.<sup>10</sup> They suffered shipwreck.<sup>11</sup> We ride every day.<sup>12</sup> The gentleman<sup>13</sup> rode a gray horse.<sup>14</sup> I should take a ride,<sup>15</sup> if I had a horse. He tore<sup>16</sup> the letter<sup>17</sup> to pieces. Grind this penknife.<sup>18</sup> I shall grind it directly.<sup>19</sup> The tailor<sup>20</sup> cuts the cloth. Have you cut yourself ?<sup>21</sup> Have you mended (say, cut) the pen ?<sup>22</sup> They contended for the preference.<sup>23</sup> They would have contended in vain. The regiment<sup>24</sup> has fought<sup>25</sup> bravely.<sup>26</sup> Nobody<sup>27</sup> yielded.

<sup>1</sup> Ourselves, uns. <sup>2</sup> A palace, einem Palast (dat.) <sup>3</sup> The dog, der Hund.  
<sup>4</sup> To seize, ergreifen. <sup>5</sup> The first opportunity, die erste Gelegenheit. <sup>6</sup> From rheumatism, an Rheumatismus. <sup>7</sup> Still, noch. <sup>8</sup> From toothache, an Zahmweh. <sup>9</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>10</sup> From headache, an Kopfsch. <sup>11</sup> Shipwreck, Schiffbruch. <sup>12</sup> Every day, täglich. <sup>13</sup> The gentleman, der Herr. <sup>14</sup> A gray horse, einen Schimmel (acc.) <sup>15</sup> To take a ride, spazieren reiten. <sup>16</sup> To tear to pieces, zerreißen. <sup>17</sup> The letter, den Brief (acc.) <sup>18</sup> This penknife, dieses Federmesser. <sup>19</sup> Directly, sogleich. <sup>20</sup> The tailor, der Schneider.  
<sup>21</sup> Yourself, sich. <sup>22</sup> The pen, die Feder. <sup>23</sup> For the preference, um den Vorzug. <sup>24</sup> The regiment, das Regiment. <sup>25</sup> To fight, streiten. <sup>26</sup> Bravely, tapfer. <sup>27</sup> Nobody, Keiner.

## § 87. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel *ei*.—Imperfect and Past Participle *ie* (long).

bleiben, to remain,	blieb,	geblieben.
gedeihen, to prosper,	gedieh,	gediehen.
leihen, to lend,	lieh,	geliehen.
meiden, to avoid,	mied,	gemiieden.
preisen, to praise,	pries,	gepriesen.
reiben, to rub,	rieb,	gerieben.
scheiden, to part,	schied,	geschieden.

scheinen, to shine,	schien,	geschienen.
schreiben, to write,	schrieb,	geschrieben.
schreien, to scream,	schrie,	geschrieen.
schweigen, to be silent,	schwieg,	geschwiegen.
speien, to spit,	spie,	gespieen.
steigen, to mount,	stieg,	gestiegen.
treiben, to drive,	trieb,	getrieben.
weisen, to shew,	wies,	gewiesen.
zeihen, to accuse,	zieh,	geziesen.

## EXERCISE XII.

We remained till the evening.<sup>1</sup> I shall remain at home. Pray lend me<sup>2</sup> a German book. He has lent me his umbrella.<sup>3</sup> I shall lend you<sup>4</sup> a hundred dollars.<sup>5</sup> That he may lend me a pencil.<sup>6</sup> I have avoided his society.<sup>7</sup> If I avoided his society. She praised him. They parted. The summer<sup>8</sup> is departing.<sup>9</sup> The man was rubbing his hands.<sup>10</sup> Does the moon<sup>11</sup> shine? The sun was shining. The stars<sup>12</sup> shine brightly.<sup>13</sup> It seemed<sup>14</sup> to me very simple.<sup>15</sup> What are you writing there? I am writing a letter<sup>16</sup> to my father.<sup>17</sup> That he may write soon. Write fast.<sup>18</sup> She writes very distinctly.<sup>19</sup> I wrote yesterday to a friend<sup>20</sup> in Dresden. I should have written last night,<sup>21</sup> if I had not been tired.<sup>22</sup> The boy screamed. Who screams? Be silent. Why<sup>23</sup> are you silent? The balloon<sup>24</sup> rose<sup>25</sup> very high.<sup>26</sup> We ascended<sup>27</sup> the mountain.<sup>28</sup> The price<sup>29</sup> has (say, is) risen.<sup>30</sup> The water drives a mill.<sup>31</sup> [The] avarice<sup>32</sup> has driven him to it.<sup>33</sup> Shew me<sup>34</sup> the road.<sup>35</sup> He has shewn me his paintings.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Till the evening, bis zum Abend. <sup>2</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>3</sup> His umbrella, seinen Regenschirm (acc.) <sup>4</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>5</sup> A hundred dollars, hundert Thaler. <sup>6</sup> A pencil, einen Bleistift (acc.) <sup>7</sup> His society, seine Gesellschaft. <sup>8</sup> The summer, der Sommer. <sup>9</sup> To depart, scheiden. <sup>10</sup> His hands, sich die Hände. <sup>11</sup> The moon, der Mond. <sup>12</sup> The stars, die Sterne. <sup>13</sup> Brightly, hell. <sup>14</sup> To seem, scheinen. <sup>15</sup> Simple, einfach. <sup>16</sup> A letter, einen Brief (acc.) <sup>17</sup> To my father, an meinen Vater. <sup>18</sup> Fast, schnell. <sup>19</sup> Distinctly, deutlich. <sup>20</sup> To a friend, an einen Freund. <sup>21</sup> Last night, gestern Abend. <sup>22</sup> Tired, müde. <sup>23</sup> Why? warum? <sup>24</sup> The balloon, der Luftballon. <sup>25</sup> To rise, steigen. <sup>26</sup> High, hoch. <sup>27</sup> To ascend, bestiegen. <sup>28</sup> The mountain, den Berg (acc.) <sup>29</sup> The price, der Preis. <sup>30</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>31</sup> A mill, eine Mühle. <sup>32</sup> Avarice, der Geiz. <sup>33</sup> To it, dazu. <sup>34</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>35</sup> The road, den Weg (acc.) <sup>36</sup> His paintings, seine Gemälde.

## THIRD CLASS OF STRONG VERBS.

## § 88. FIRST SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel a (au, o, u, ei).—Imperfect i or ie.—Past Participle a (au, o, u, ei).

blasen, to blow,	blicß,	geblasen.
braten, to roast,	briet,	gebraten.
fallen, to fall,	fiel,	gefallen.
fangen, to catch,	fing,	gefangen.
gehen, to go,	ging,	gegangen.
halten, to hold,	hielt,	gehalten.
hängen, to hang,	hing,	gehungen.
hauen, to hew,	hieb,	gehauen.
heißen, to bid, or to be called,	hieß,	geheißen.
lassen, to let,	ließ,	gelassen.
laufen, to run,	lief,	gelaufen.
rathen, to advise,	rieth,	gerathen.
rufen, to call,	rief,	gerufen.
schlafen, to sleep,	schlieff,	geschlafen.
stoßen, to push,	stieß,	gestoßen.

## Notes.

1. In *fasten*, to fold; *salzen*, to salt; *spalten*, to split; *schreien*, to shred, only the past participle follows the strong conjugation:—*gefasten*, *gefasten*, *gespalten*, *geschreien*; and even in the past participle these verbs now often take the weak conjugation, especially when the participle is not used in the sense of an adjective; for instance—*er hat das Papier gefaltet*, he has folded the paper; *er hat das Holz gespalten*, he has split the wood; but *mit gefalteten Händen*, with folded hands; *gespaltenes Holz*, split wood.

2. The verb *gehen* was in old German *gangan*, imperfect *gienc*, *gienc*, past participle *gangan*; hence our forms *ging*, *gegangen*; whilst for the original infinitive and present *gangen*, *gange*, in new High-German *gehen*, *gehe* are substituted. The latter forms have their origin in the middle High-German *gân* or *gên*.

§ 89. In all verbs of this division, the radical vowel is modified in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative, according to § 61, 5, with the exception of *hauen* and *rufen*. *Heißen* and *gehen* also retain their vowels unchanged in the present tense. The conditional of the present is formed in the usual way, as—*bliese* of *blasen*, *finge* of *fangen*.



## EXERCISE XIII.

I blow the horn.<sup>1</sup> He plays (say, blows) the trumpet.<sup>2</sup> The cook<sup>3</sup> has roasted a piece of beef.<sup>4</sup> She was roasting a goose.<sup>5</sup> You will fall, if you run so fast. Do not fall. A child<sup>6</sup> has (say, is<sup>7</sup>) fallen into the river.<sup>8</sup> The fashion<sup>9</sup> does not please<sup>10</sup> me (say, pleases to me not). His behaviour<sup>11</sup> did not please us (say, pleased to us<sup>12</sup> not). John<sup>13</sup> has caught some trout.<sup>14</sup> Where are you going [to]?<sup>15</sup> I am going to the post-office.<sup>16</sup> Go to the left.<sup>17</sup> If I went to the right.<sup>18</sup> Will you go to the country?<sup>19</sup> My brother is gone into [the] town.<sup>20</sup> The watch<sup>21</sup> does not go. The prices of grain<sup>22</sup> have (say, are<sup>23</sup>) gone up.<sup>24</sup> Do you go home?<sup>25</sup> She went home. They walked<sup>26</sup> very slowly.<sup>27</sup> He holds the rope.<sup>28</sup> He held the rope too tight.<sup>29</sup> That he may hold the rope. A groom<sup>30</sup> is holding the horse.<sup>31</sup> If he kept<sup>32</sup> his promise.<sup>33</sup> If he had kept his promise. The picture<sup>34</sup> hangs on the wall.<sup>35</sup> He has hewn the wood<sup>36</sup> in pieces.<sup>37</sup> What (say, how) is this street<sup>38</sup> called? I have left<sup>39</sup> my work<sup>40</sup> at home.<sup>41</sup> We shall leave no stone unturned (say, nothing<sup>42</sup> untried<sup>43</sup>). Let him come in.<sup>44</sup> Why are you running? The candle<sup>45</sup> gutters.<sup>46</sup> The child<sup>47</sup> ran and fell. What has thy friend<sup>48</sup> advised thee?<sup>49</sup> Who has guessed<sup>50</sup> the riddle?<sup>51</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The horn, das Horn. <sup>2</sup> The trumpet, die Trompete. <sup>3</sup> The cook, die Köchin. <sup>4</sup> Beef, Rindfleisch. <sup>5</sup> A goose, eine Gans. <sup>6</sup> A child, ein Kind. <sup>7</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>8</sup> Into the river, in den Fluss. <sup>9</sup> The fashion, die Mode. <sup>10</sup> To please, gefallen. <sup>11</sup> His behaviour, sein Betragen. <sup>12</sup> To us, uns. <sup>13</sup> John, Johann. <sup>14</sup> Some trout, einige Forellen. <sup>15</sup> Where . . . to, wo . . . hin. <sup>16</sup> To the post-office, nach dem Postamt. <sup>17</sup> To the left, links, or linker Hand. <sup>18</sup> To the right, rechts, or rechter Hand. <sup>19</sup> To the country, auf das Land. <sup>20</sup> Into the town, in die Stadt. <sup>21</sup> The watch, die Uhr. <sup>22</sup> The prices of grain, die Kornpreise. <sup>23</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>24</sup> Up, in die Höhe. <sup>25</sup> Home, nach Hause. <sup>26</sup> To walk, gehen. <sup>27</sup> Slowly, langsam. <sup>28</sup> The rope, das Seil. <sup>29</sup> Too tight, zu fest. <sup>30</sup> A groom, ein Reitknecht. <sup>31</sup> The horse, das Pferd. <sup>32</sup> To keep, halten. <sup>33</sup> His promise, sein Versprechen. <sup>34</sup> The picture, das Bild. <sup>35</sup> On the wall, an der Wand. <sup>36</sup> The wood, das Holz. <sup>37</sup> In pieces, in Stücke. <sup>38</sup> This street, diese Straße. <sup>39</sup> To leave, lassen. <sup>40</sup> My work, meine Arbeit. <sup>41</sup> At home, zu Hause. <sup>42</sup> Nothing, nichts. <sup>43</sup> Untried, unversucht. <sup>44</sup> To come in, hereinkommen. <sup>45</sup> The candle, das Licht. <sup>46</sup> To gutter, laufen. <sup>47</sup> The child, das Kind. <sup>48</sup> Thy friend, dein Freund. <sup>49</sup> Thee, dir (dat.) <sup>50</sup> To guess, raten. <sup>51</sup> The riddle, das Räthsel.

I have called him, but he has not answered.<sup>52</sup> He sleeps too long.<sup>53</sup> I have slept all night.<sup>54</sup> Good-night;<sup>55</sup> sleep well. Do not push me (say, Push me not).

<sup>52</sup> To answer, antworten. <sup>53</sup> Too long, zu lange. <sup>54</sup> All night, die ganze Nacht. <sup>55</sup> Good-night, gute Nacht.

## § 90. SECOND SUBDIVISION.

Radical Vowel a.—Imperfect u.—Past Participle a.

bäcken, to bake,	bak,	gebacken.
fahren, to drive, or go in a conveyance,	fubr,	gefahren.
graben, to dig,	grab,	gegraben.
laden, to load,	lad,	geladen.
schaffen, to create,	schuf,	geschaffen.
schlagen, to strike,	schlug,	geschlagen.
stehen, to stand,	stand or stund,	gestanden.
tragen, to carry,	trug,	getragen.
wachsen, to grow,	wuchß,	gewachsen.
waschen, to wash,	wusch,	gewaschen.

### Notes.

1. Mahlen, to grind (flour), forms only the past participle gemahlen by the strong conjugation; and fragen, to ask (a question), only the imperfect frug, for which the weak form fragte is now more commonly used. Schaffen follows the strong conjugation only when it signifies 'to create;' in every other signification it is weak.

2. Stehen is in Gothic *standan*, and in old High-German *stantan*, imperfect *stuont*, past participle *stantan*, whence the forms stunt, gestanden, in new High-German. The modern infinitive stehen and the present stehen have their origin in the middle High-German forms *stân* or *stên*.

§ 91. The vowel a is modified in the second and third persons singular present indicative, in all verbs of this subdivision, except laden and schaffen. Stehen also remains unchanged in the present. In the formation of the conditional of the present, the general rule is observed, as—grübe of graben, trüge of tragen, &c. Stehen has both stände and stunde, on account of its double form in the imperfect, stand and stund, the latter of which, however, is obsolete.

## EXERCISE XIV.

The baker<sup>1</sup> bakes bread.<sup>2</sup> The coachman<sup>3</sup> does not drive fast<sup>4</sup> enough.<sup>5</sup> Drive a little<sup>6</sup> faster.<sup>7</sup> We drove into [the] town. We shall drive into the country.<sup>8</sup> The man is digging a grave.<sup>9</sup> The huntsman<sup>10</sup> loaded his gun.<sup>11</sup> God created the world.<sup>12</sup> The heart<sup>13</sup> beats.<sup>14</sup> The waves<sup>15</sup> strike against the ship.<sup>16</sup> The hail<sup>17</sup> beat against the windows.<sup>18</sup> Why are you beating the dog?<sup>19</sup> The nightingale<sup>20</sup> sings<sup>21</sup> charmingly.<sup>22</sup> It strikes three.<sup>23</sup> Has it already<sup>24</sup> struck seven.<sup>25</sup> What stands there? The castle<sup>26</sup> stands upon a hill.<sup>27</sup> Why do you stand idle?<sup>28</sup> We stood and waited. Does the clock<sup>29</sup> stand still?<sup>30</sup> What art thou carrying there? I shall carry some letters<sup>31</sup> to the post.<sup>32</sup> Have you carried the letters to the post? The girl<sup>33</sup> carried a basket.<sup>34</sup> The plant<sup>35</sup> grows very slowly. If the plant grew quicker.<sup>36</sup> The girl is grown very fast. Has the woman washed the clothes?<sup>37</sup> She is washing shirts.<sup>38</sup> That she may wash the clothes. If she had washed the clothes.

<sup>1</sup> The baker, der Bäcker. <sup>2</sup> Bread, Brod. <sup>3</sup> The coachman, der Kutscher. <sup>4</sup> Fast, schnell. <sup>5</sup> Enough, genug. <sup>6</sup> A little, ein wenig. <sup>7</sup> Faster, schneller. <sup>8</sup> Into the country, auf das Land. <sup>9</sup> A grave, ein Grab. <sup>10</sup> The huntsman, der Jäger. <sup>11</sup> His gun, seine Büchse. <sup>12</sup> The world, die Welt. <sup>13</sup> The heart, das Herz. <sup>14</sup> To beat, schlagen. <sup>15</sup> The waves, die Wellen. <sup>16</sup> Against the ship, an das Schiff. <sup>17</sup> The hail, der Hagel. <sup>18</sup> Against the windows, gegen die Fenster. <sup>19</sup> The dog, den Hund (acc.) <sup>20</sup> The nightingale, die Nachtigall. <sup>21</sup> To sing, schlagen. <sup>22</sup> Charmingly, reizend. <sup>23</sup> Three, drei. <sup>24</sup> Already, schon. <sup>25</sup> Seven, sieben. <sup>26</sup> The castle, die Burg. <sup>27</sup> Upon a hill, auf einem Berge. <sup>28</sup> Idle, müßig. <sup>29</sup> The clock, die Uhr. <sup>30</sup> Still, still. <sup>31</sup> Some letters, einige Briefe. <sup>32</sup> To the post, auf die Post. <sup>33</sup> The girl, das Mädchen. <sup>34</sup> A basket, einen Korb (acc.) <sup>35</sup> The plant, die Pflanze. <sup>36</sup> Quicker, schneller. <sup>37</sup> The clothes, die Kleider. <sup>38</sup> Shirts, Hemden.

§ 92. Verbs like *berathschlagen*, to deliberate; *veranlassen*, to occasion; *heirathen* (or *heiraten*), to marry; *herbergen*, to harbour; *umringen*, to surround; *bewillkommen*, to welcome; *bemitleiden*, to pity; *beauftragen*, to commission, follow the weak conjugation, because they are not compounds of *schlagen*, *lassen*, *rathen*, &c., but derivatives of *Rathschlag*, *Anlaß*, *Heirath* (or *Heirat*), *Herberge*, *Ring*, *Willkommen*, *Mitleid*, *Auftrag*. Also *willfahren*, to comply, takes the weak forms.

## VIII.

### IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.

§ 93. The irregularity of the following verbs consists in this, that the formation of the principal parts—namely, the imperfect and past participle—is effected by a combination of the strong and weak conjugations. The radical vowel undergoes a change, as in the strong conjugation, while at the same time the terminations peculiar to the weak conjugation are affixed. In *bringen*, to bring, and *denken*, to think, moreover, the final consonants of the root *ng* and *nt* are changed into *ch*.

INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
brennen, to burn,	brannte,	gebrannt,	brennte.
bringen, to bring,	brachte,	gebracht,	brächte.
denken, to think,	dachte,	gedacht,	dächte.
fennen, to know,	fannte,	gefannt,	fennte.
nennen, to name,	nannte,	genannt,	nennte.
rennen, to run,	rannte,	gerannt,	rennte.
senden, to send,	{ sandte or sendete,	{ gesandt or ge= sendet,	{ sendete.
wenden, to turn,	{ wandte or wendete,	{ gewandt or ge= wendet,	{ wendete.

§ 94. *Thun*, to do (contracted for *thuen*), has the imperfect *that*, the past participle *gethan*, the present conditional *thäte*.

*Wissen*, to know, is in the singular of the present indicative conjugated like the imperfect of a strong verb :—*ich weiß*, *du weißt* (a contraction for *weißeſt*), *er weiß*; plural, *wir wissen*, *ihr wiſſet*, *ſie wiſſen*. Present conjunctive, *ich wiſſe*; present conditional, *ich wüßte*; imperfect, *ich wußte*; past participle *gewußt*.

#### Note.

The difference between *wiſſen* and *fennen* is upon the whole the same as between the Latin *ſcio* and *novi*, or the French *savoir* and *connaître*.

### EXERCISE XV.

The wood does not burn, for<sup>1</sup> it is damp.<sup>2</sup> The whole street<sup>3</sup> was burning. What do you bring? A boy<sup>4</sup> has

<sup>1</sup> For, *denn*.    <sup>2</sup> Damp, *feucht*.    <sup>3</sup> The whole street, *die ganze Straße*.

<sup>4</sup> A boy, *ein Knabe*.

brought a parcel.<sup>5</sup> The merchant<sup>6</sup> has sent a parcel. The bookseller<sup>7</sup> will send some books.<sup>8</sup> I have not thought of it.<sup>9</sup> He thinks more<sup>10</sup> than<sup>11</sup> he speaks. He calls<sup>12</sup> me his friend.<sup>13</sup> They called him an impostor.<sup>14</sup> She ran. I have addressed<sup>15</sup> myself<sup>16</sup> to him<sup>17</sup>. Do you know [Mr] Professor L.?<sup>18</sup> I know him very well, but I see him seldom.<sup>19</sup> She knew me immediately<sup>20</sup> again. I should speak to him,<sup>21</sup> if I knew him. All the world<sup>22</sup> knows it. I do not know it (say, I know it not). We know it. I have known it long ago.<sup>23</sup> Do you know where Mr M. resides? I would say it, if I knew it. What are you doing there? He has done wrong.<sup>24</sup> I do what I am bid.<sup>25</sup> We shall do what you desire.<sup>26</sup>

A parcel, ein Paket. <sup>6</sup> The merchant, der Kaufmann. <sup>7</sup> The bookseller, der Buchhändler. <sup>8</sup> Some books, einige Bücher. <sup>9</sup> Of it, daran. <sup>10</sup> More, mehr. <sup>11</sup> Than, als. <sup>12</sup> To call, nennen. <sup>13</sup> His friend, seinen Freund (acc.) <sup>14</sup> An impostor, einen Betrüger (acc.) <sup>15</sup> To address, wenden. <sup>16</sup> Myself, mich. <sup>17</sup> To him, an ihn. <sup>18</sup> Professor L., Herrn Professor L. <sup>19</sup> Seldom, selten. <sup>20</sup> Immediately, sogleich. <sup>21</sup> To him, mit ihm. <sup>22</sup> All the world, die ganze Welt. <sup>23</sup> Long ago, schon längst. <sup>24</sup> Wrong, Unrecht. <sup>25</sup> What I am bid, was mir geheißen wird. <sup>26</sup> To desire, wünschen.

§ 95. The auxiliary verbs of mood, dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, have a peculiar conjugation in the singular of the present indicative. Their imperfect and past participle are formed according to the weak conjugation; but in the case of dürfen, können, mögen, and müssen, change their modified vowels into the corresponding primary vowels, as—durfte, geburft; konnte, gekonnt, &c. In the present conditional, the modified vowel is resumed, as—dürfte, könnte, &c. Sollen alone never changes its vowel.

All the auxiliary verbs of mood have a complete conjugation through all tenses and moods, excepting the imperative mood, which is formed of wollen only. The corresponding English verbs, 'dare, can, may, must, shall, will,' being defective in conjugation, other phrases must frequently be employed, in order to express what in German is simply expressed by auxiliary verbs, as—ich habe gemußt, I have been obliged; wir werden nicht können, we shall not be able.



INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
ich werde geburft haben, I shall have been permitted.	ich werde geburft haben, I shall have been permitted.	ich würde geburft haben, I should have been permitted.

Note.

Bedürfen, to want, is conjugated like the simple verb dürfen.

§ 97. INFINITIVE, FÖNNEN, (CAN) OR TO BE ABLE.—PAST PARTICIPLE, GEFOHNT, BEEN ABLE.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<i>Sing.</i> ich kann, du kannst, er kann, <i>Plur.</i> wir können, ihr könnt, sie können,	<i>PRESENT.</i> ich könne, du könntest, er könne, wir können, ihr könntet, sie können,	<i>PRESENT.</i> ich könnte, du könntest, er könnte, wir könnten, ihr könntet, sie könnten, <i>(if) I could, or</i> <i>were able.</i>
ich konnte, I could.	<i>IMPERFECT.</i>	
ich habe gefohnt, I have been able.	<i>PERFECT.</i> ich habe gefohnt, I may have been able.	ich hätte gefohnt, (if) I had been able.

§ 98. INFINITIVE, MÖGEN, (MAY) OR TO LIKE.—PAST PARTICIPLE, GEMÖCHT, LIKED.  
INDICATIVE. CONJUNCTIVE. CONDITIONAL.

<i>Sing.</i> ich mag, du magst, er mag, <i>Plur.</i> wir mögen, ihr mögt, sie mögen,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ich möge,} \\ \text{du mögest,} \\ \text{er möge,} \\ \text{wir mögen,} \\ \text{ihr möget,} \\ \text{sie mögen,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{I may, or may} \\ \text{like.} \\ \text{I may, or may} \\ \text{like.} \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ich möchte,} \\ \text{du möchtest,} \\ \text{er möchte,} \\ \text{wir möchten,} \\ \text{ihr möchtet,} \\ \text{sie möchten,} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{I might, or} \\ \text{(if) I liked.} \end{array}$
ich möchte, I might, or I liked.		
ich habe gemocht, I have liked.	<i>PERFECT.</i> ich habe gemocht, I may have liked.	ich hätte gemocht, (if) I had liked.

Note.

Vermögen, to be able, to have power, is conjugated like mögen.

§ 99. INFINITIVE, MÜSSEN, (MUST) OR TO BE OBLIGED.—PAST PARTICIPLE, GEMÜSST, BEEN OBLIGED.  
INDICATIVE. CONJUNCTIVE. CONDITIONAL.

<i>Sing.</i> ich muß, du mußt, er muß, <i>Plur.</i> wir müssen, ihr müßt, sie müssen	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ich müsse,} \\ \text{du müsst,} \\ \text{er müsse,} \\ \text{wir müssen,} \\ \text{ihr müßt,} \\ \text{sie müssen} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{I must, or am} \\ \text{obliged.} \end{array}$	ich müßte, (if) I must, or (if) I were obliged.
	ich müßte, I must, or may be obliged.	



INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE. IMPERFECT.	CONDITIONAL.
ich mußte, I must, or was obliged.		
ich habe genußt, I have been obliged.	ich habe genußt, I may have been obliged.	ich hätte genußt, (if) I had been obliged.

§ 100. INFINITIVE, **ſollen**, (SHALL) OR TO BE OBLIGED.—PAST PARTICIPLE, **geſollt**,  
BEEN OBLIGED.

INDICATIVE	CONJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.	CONDITIONAL.
<i>Sing.</i> ich ſoll, du ſollſt, er ſoll, <i>Plur.</i> wir ſollen, ihr ſollt, ſie ſollen,  ich ſollte, I should, or I was to . . . .	ich ſolle, I shall.           I shall, or I am to (e.g. wait).	ich ſollte, (if) I should

§ 101. INFINITIVE, *wollen*, TO WILL, OR TO BE WILLING.—PAST PARTICIPLE, *gewollt*,

BEEN WILLING.

INDICATIVE.		CONJUNCTIVE.		CONDITIONAL.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>ich</i> will,	<i>ich</i> wolle, I will, or may be willing.	PRESENT.	<i>ich</i> wolle, (if) I would, or were willing.	
	<i>du</i> willst,				
	<i>er</i> will,				
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>mir</i> wollen,		IMPERFECT.		
	<i>ihr</i> wollt,				
	<i>ſie</i> wollen,				
	<i>ich</i> wollte, I would, or was willing.				

§ 102. A peculiarity in the grammatical use of these auxiliary verbs of mood is the changing of the past participle into the infinitive in the past compound tenses, when it is immediately preceded by an infinitive:—*er hat ſein Amt niederlegen müſſen* (instead of *gemußt*), he has been obliged to resign his office. *Sich habe ſchreiben wollen* (instead of *gewollt*), I have been willing to write. *Er wird nicht haben kommen können* (instead of *gekonnt*), he will not have been able to come.

The same rule is observed with the auxiliary verb of mood *laſſen*, to let, to suffer, to order, to cause; and with some other verbs, when connected with an infinitive, as—*heißen*, to bid; *helfen*, to help; *ſehen*, to see; *hören*, to hear; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn. For example:—*ich habe den Schneider kommen laſſen*, I have ordered the tailor to come. *Sich habe ihn ſagen hören*, I have heard him say. *Wir haben ſie vorbeigeſehen ſehen*, we have seen them pass.

## EXERCISE XVI.

I am not permitted to go out.<sup>1</sup> Am I permitted to read this book?<sup>2</sup> Art thou permitted to go home? I should remain longer,<sup>3</sup> if I were permitted. She has not been permitted to sing. [The] man<sup>4</sup> can speak. Beasts<sup>5</sup> cannot speak. The bird can fly. Can you see? No, I cannot see. Will you be able to come? We shall not be able to remain. I have not been able to undertake<sup>6</sup> the journey.<sup>7</sup> I should do it, if I were able. I could not understand<sup>8</sup> him. He may come. Thou mayst go home. I do not like to hinder<sup>9</sup> it. I did not like to ask him. I must go on a journey.<sup>10</sup> We must obey<sup>11</sup> the authorities.<sup>12</sup> We must pardon<sup>13</sup> our enemies.<sup>14</sup> You must make haste.<sup>15</sup> You must have patience. I was obliged to wait an hour.<sup>16</sup> One<sup>17</sup> must always speak<sup>18</sup> the truth. The fruit<sup>19</sup> must become ripe before<sup>20</sup> it can be eaten.<sup>21</sup> All men<sup>22</sup> must die. Have you been obliged to stop?<sup>23</sup> You will be obliged to obey. The boys<sup>24</sup> are to learn German. The bookseller is to send the books. Am I to send the parcel? Thou shalt not steal. What was I to do? Nothing shall compel<sup>25</sup> me. I will embrace<sup>26</sup> the earliest opportunity.<sup>27</sup> I will lose no time. Will you accept<sup>28</sup> a glass of wine? I have been willing, but I have not been able. I have let the bird<sup>29</sup> fly. The general<sup>30</sup> has ordered the troops<sup>31</sup> to advance.<sup>32</sup> They have allowed the thief<sup>33</sup> to escape.<sup>34</sup> I have heard him speak. Have you seen her dance?<sup>35</sup> He has taught me to read. I have bid him go away.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To go out, ausgehen. Auxiliary verbs of mood take the infinitive, not the supine. <sup>2</sup> This book, dieses Buch. <sup>3</sup> Longer, länger. <sup>4</sup> Man, der Mensch. <sup>5</sup> Beasts, Thiere. <sup>6</sup> To undertake, unternehmen. <sup>7</sup> The journey, die Reise. The object ('the journey') comes before 'not.' <sup>8</sup> To understand, verstehen. <sup>9</sup> To hinder, hindern. <sup>10</sup> To go on a journey, verreisen. <sup>11</sup> To obey, gehorchen. <sup>12</sup> The authorities, der Obrigkeit (dat.) <sup>13</sup> To pardon, vergeihen. <sup>14</sup> Our enemies, unsern Feinden (dat.) <sup>15</sup> To make haste, eilen. <sup>16</sup> An hour, eine Stunde. <sup>17</sup> One, man. <sup>18</sup> To speak, reden. <sup>19</sup> The fruit, das Obst. <sup>20</sup> Before, ehe; the clause is dependent. <sup>21</sup> Be eaten, gegessen werden. <sup>22</sup> All men, alle Menschen. <sup>23</sup> To stop, aufhören. <sup>24</sup> The boys, die Knaben. <sup>25</sup> To compel, zwingen. <sup>26</sup> To embrace, ergreifen. <sup>27</sup> The earliest opportunity, die erste Gelegenheit. <sup>28</sup> To accept, annehmen. <sup>29</sup> The bird, den Vogel (acc.) <sup>30</sup> The general, der General. <sup>31</sup> The troops, die Truppen. <sup>32</sup> To advance, vorrücken. <sup>33</sup> The thief, den Dieb (acc.) <sup>34</sup> To escape, entspringen. <sup>35</sup> To dance, tanzen. <sup>36</sup> To go away, weggehen.

IX.

CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

§ 103. The passive voice is formed by the auxiliary *werden*, along with the past participle of the verb. In the past compound tenses, the participle *geworden* loses the augment *ge*, as in *ich bin gelobt worden* (for *geworden*), I have been praised.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<b>PRESENT.</b>	<b>PRESENT.</b>	
<i>ich werde gelobt,</i> I am (being) praised.	<i>ich werde gelobt,</i> I may be praised.	<i>ich würde gelobt,</i> (if) I were (being) praised.
<b>IMPERFECT.</b>	<b>IMPERFECT.</b>	
<i>ich wurde (or ward) gelobt,</i> I was (being) praised.		
<b>PERFECT.</b>	<b>PERFECT.</b>	
<i>ich bin gelobt worden,</i> I have been praised.	<i>ich sei gelobt worden,</i> I may have been praised.	<i>ich wäre gelobt worden,</i> (if) I had been praised.
<b>PLUPERFECT.</b>	<b>PLUPERFECT.</b>	
<i>ich war gelobt worden,</i> I had been praised.		
<b>FUTURE.</b>	<b>FUTURE.</b>	
<i>ich werde gelobt werden,</i> I shall be praised.	<i>ich werde gelobt werden,</i> I shall be praised.	<i>ich würde gelobt werden,</i> I should be praised.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<p>ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised.</p>	<p>ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised.</p>	<p>ich würde gelobt worden sein, I should have been praised.</p>
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	<p>werde gelobt, be (thou) praised.</p>	
	IMPERATIVE.	
	INFINITIVES.	
	PRESENT. gelobt werden, to be praised.	
	PAST. gelobt worden sein, to have been praised.	
	SUPINES.	
	PRESENT. gelobt zu werden, to be praised.	
	PAST. gelobt worden zu sein, to have been praised.	

Conjugate the passive voice of any of the following verbs :—*lieben*, to love ; *fragen*, to question ; *führen*, to guide ; *hören*, to hear ; *finden*, to find ; *bitten*, to ask ; *schelten*, to scold ; *sehen*, to see ; *stoßen*, to push ; *rufen*, to call.

§ 104. In the past compound tenses of the passive, the past participle *wurden* is often omitted, especially when the *reality* of an event is to be expressed, rather than its relation of *time*; e.g.—*der Kaiser ist ermordet*, the emperor is assassinated. *Der Kaiser ist verrathen*, the emperor is betrayed. *Wir kamen vor dem Lusthause an, wo das Abendessen servirt war*, we arrived in front of the villa, where the supper was served. It should be observed, however, that there is a distinct difference between the use of the present and perfect tense, and also between the imperfect and pluperfect tense. ‘I am praised,’ may be translated either by *ich werde gelobt*, if said in the sense of ‘I am being praised;’ or it may be translated by *ich bin gelobt*, if said in the sense of ‘I have been praised.’ In like manner, ‘the town was destroyed,’ is either *die Stadt wurde zerstört*, that is, the town was being destroyed, or in the act of being destroyed; or *die Stadt war zerstört*, that is, the town was (or had been) destroyed, or was in a ruined state. Examples:—*Die Burgglocke wird geläutet, Sch.*, the castle-bell is being rung, or is tolling. *Der Aufsatß wird diesen Augenblick gelesen, Sch.*, the treatise is being read at this moment. *Wir sind umringt von Spähern, Sch.*, we are surrounded with spies. *Die Musik kam aus einem Dorfe, wo eben Jahrmarkt gehalten wurde, Sch.*, the (sound of) music proceeded from a village, where a fair was being held. *Sein Wunsch ward ihm gewährt, Kr.*, his wish was (being) granted to him. *Die Wände waren mit Phedorens und ihrer Tochter Zeichnungen geziert*, the walls were decorated with the drawings of Phedora and her daughter.

## EXERCISE XVII.

The room<sup>1</sup> is being painted.<sup>2</sup> The walls<sup>3</sup> are being cleaned.<sup>4</sup> The ceiling<sup>5</sup> has been whitewashed.<sup>6</sup> The books have not been used.<sup>7</sup> The palace<sup>8</sup> was [being] built<sup>9</sup> many years ago.<sup>10</sup> The drum<sup>11</sup> is being beat.<sup>12</sup> The doors<sup>13</sup> have

<sup>1</sup> The room, das Zimmer. <sup>2</sup> To paint, malen. <sup>3</sup> The walls, die Wände.  
<sup>4</sup> To clean, reinigen. <sup>5</sup> The ceiling, die Decke. <sup>6</sup> To whitewash, weissen.  
<sup>7</sup> To use, gebrauchen. <sup>8</sup> The palace, der Palast. <sup>9</sup> To build, bauen.  
<sup>10</sup> Many years ago, vor vielen Jahren. <sup>11</sup> The drum, die Trommel. <sup>12</sup> To beat, rühren. <sup>13</sup> The doors, die Thüren.

not yet<sup>14</sup> been opened.<sup>15</sup> When will the museum<sup>16</sup> be opened? It will be opened at nine o'clock. The regiment<sup>17</sup> will be sent to India.<sup>18</sup> The errors<sup>19</sup> had not been counted.<sup>20</sup> I should have given an answer,<sup>21</sup> if I had been asked. That he may be asked. I should not be able to answer, if I were [being] asked. The newspaper<sup>22</sup> was being read. Has the newspaper been read? The shops<sup>23</sup> are usually<sup>24</sup> [being] shut at nine o'clock. A hymn<sup>25</sup> was being sung. A large sum<sup>26</sup> had been stolen. A ship<sup>27</sup> was [being] seen in the distance.<sup>28</sup> The world has been created by God,<sup>29</sup> and is [being] ruled over<sup>30</sup> by him.<sup>31</sup> He would not have been named.<sup>32</sup> Has the parcel been brought? Have you been invited<sup>33</sup> to the party?<sup>34</sup> If the town were [being] taken. If the town had been taken. How many hares<sup>35</sup> have been shot to-day? No trace<sup>36</sup> is found. The walls were decorated<sup>37</sup> with paintings.<sup>38</sup> By whom<sup>39</sup> is the book written which<sup>40</sup> you are reading? I am forgotten by my friends.<sup>41</sup> By whom is the prize<sup>42</sup> won? The supper<sup>43</sup> was served<sup>44</sup> when we arrived.<sup>45</sup> All<sup>46</sup> shops were shut.

<sup>14</sup> Not yet, noch nicht. <sup>15</sup> To open, öffnen. <sup>16</sup> The museum, das Museum.  
<sup>17</sup> The regiment, das Regiment. <sup>18</sup> To India, nach Indien. <sup>19</sup> The errors, die Fehler.  
<sup>20</sup> To count, zählen. <sup>21</sup> An answer, eine Antwort. <sup>22</sup> The newspaper, die Zeitung.  
<sup>23</sup> The shops, die Läden. <sup>24</sup> Usually, gewöhnlich. <sup>25</sup> A hymn, eine Hymne.  
<sup>26</sup> A large sum, eine große Summe. <sup>27</sup> A ship, ein Schiff. <sup>28</sup> In the distance, in der Ferne. <sup>29</sup> By God, von Gott. <sup>30</sup> To rule over, regieren. (See § 63). <sup>31</sup> By him, von ihm. <sup>32</sup> To name, nennen.  
<sup>33</sup> To invite, bitten. <sup>34</sup> To the party, zu der Gesellschaft. <sup>35</sup> How many hares, wie viele Hasen.  
<sup>36</sup> No trace, keine Spur. <sup>37</sup> To decorate, zieren. <sup>38</sup> With paintings, mit Gemälden.  
<sup>39</sup> By whom, von wem. <sup>40</sup> Which, welches. <sup>41</sup> By my friends, von meinen Freunden. <sup>42</sup> The prize, der Preis.  
<sup>43</sup> The supper, das Abendessen. <sup>44</sup> To serve, serviren. (See § 63). <sup>45</sup> When we arrived, als wir ankamen. <sup>46</sup> All, alle.

X.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

§ 105. CONJUGATION OF *ſich ſchämen*, TO BE ASHAMED.

INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
<p><i>Sing.</i> ich ſchäme mich, du ſchämſt dich, er ſchämt ſich, <i>Plur.</i> wir ſchämen uns, ihr ſchämt euch, ſie ſchämen ſich,</p>	<p><i>PRESENT.</i> ich ſchäme mich, du ſchämſt dich, er ſchäme ſich, wir ſchämen uns, ihr ſchämnet euch, ſie ſchämen ſich,</p>	<p>ich ſchäme mich, du ſchämteſt dich, er ſchänte ſich, wir ſchänten uns, ihr ſchäntet euch, ſie ſchänten ſich,</p>
<p>ich ſchämte mich, I was aſhamed.</p>	<p>IMPERFECT.</p>	<p>(if) I were aſhamed.</p>
<p>ich habe mich geſchämt, I have been aſhamed.</p>	<p><i>PERFECT.</i> ich habe mich geſchämt, I may have been aſhamed.</p>	<p>ich hätte mich geſchämt, (if) I had been aſhamed.</p>
<p>ich hatte mich geſchämt, I had been aſhamed.</p>	<p>PLUPERFECT.</p>	



INDICATIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.	CONDITIONAL.
	<b>FUTURE.</b>	
ich werde mich schämen, I shall be ashamed.	ich werde mich schämen, I shall be ashamed.	ich würde mich schämen, I should be ashamed.
	<b>FUTURE PERFECT.</b>	
ich werde mich geschämt haben, I shall have been ashamed.	ich werde mich geschämt haben, I shall have been ashamed.	ich würde mich geschämt haben, I should have been ashamed.
	<b>IMPERATIVE.</b>	<b>INFINITIVES.</b>
<i>Sing.</i> schäme dich, be (thou) ashamed. schäme er sich, let him be ashamed.	<b>PRESENT.</b> sich schämen, to be ashamed. <b>PAST.</b> sich geschämt haben, to have been ashamed.	
<i>Plur.</i> schämen wir uns, let us be ashamed. schämtet euch, be (you) ashamed. schämen sie sich, let them be ashamed.	<b>PRESENT.</b> sich zu schämen, to be ashamed. <b>PAST.</b> sich geschämt zu haben, to have been ashamed.	<b>SUPINES.</b>

For practice:—sich waschen, to wash one's self; sich schmücken, to adorn one's self; sich freuen, to rejoice; sich grämen, to grieve; sich sehnen, to long; sich wehren, to defend one's self; sich retten, to save one's self; sich wenden, to turn one's self.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

I am washing myself. I have washed myself. Are you not ashamed? I should be ashamed. He is ashamed of his conduct.<sup>1</sup> The earth<sup>2</sup> adorns<sup>3</sup> itself with flowers. We long<sup>4</sup> for freedom.<sup>5</sup> I shall rejoice<sup>6</sup> to see<sup>7</sup> you again. He saved<sup>8</sup> himself out of the danger.<sup>9</sup> Have they saved themselves? Has she saved herself? [The] man accustoms<sup>10</sup> himself to everything.<sup>11</sup> I shall accustom myself to it.<sup>12</sup> Thou wilt accustom thyself to work.<sup>13</sup> You trouble<sup>14</sup> yourself too much.<sup>15</sup> Pray do not trouble yourself. I recommend<sup>16</sup> myself to you.<sup>17</sup> My brother recommends himself to you. We shall accommodate<sup>18</sup> ourselves to your wishes.<sup>19</sup> He would have revenged<sup>20</sup> himself on his enemy.<sup>21</sup> We refreshed<sup>22</sup> ourselves with meat and drink.<sup>23</sup> I shall refresh myself with a glass of wine.<sup>24</sup> I have addressed<sup>25</sup> myself to him.<sup>26</sup> Address yourself to Mr B.<sup>27</sup> The Rhine<sup>28</sup> winds<sup>29</sup> itself through rocky banks.<sup>30</sup> We shall be contented<sup>31</sup> with the half.<sup>32</sup> The town must soon surrender.<sup>33</sup> I can have patience<sup>34</sup> no longer.<sup>35</sup> You are<sup>36</sup> much<sup>37</sup> mistaken. How do you do? (say, How do you find<sup>38</sup> yourself?) I am (say, I find myself) very well. How is (say, How finds himself) your father?<sup>39</sup> Depend<sup>40</sup> upon it.<sup>41</sup> You may<sup>42</sup> depend upon it.

Of his conduct, seines Betragens. <sup>2</sup> The earth, die Erde. <sup>3</sup> To adorn, schmücken. <sup>4</sup> To long, sich sehnen. <sup>5</sup> For freedom, nach Freiheit. <sup>6</sup> To rejoice, sich freuen. <sup>7</sup> Use the supine, and arrange 'you again to see.' <sup>8</sup> To save, retten. <sup>9</sup> Out of the danger, aus der Gefahr. <sup>10</sup> To accustom, gewöhnen. <sup>11</sup> To everything, an Alles. <sup>12</sup> To it, daran. <sup>13</sup> To work, an's Arbeiten. <sup>14</sup> To trouble, bemühen. <sup>15</sup> Too much, zu sehr. <sup>16</sup> To recommend, empfehlen. <sup>17</sup> To you, Ihnen. <sup>18</sup> To accommodate one's self, sich richten. <sup>19</sup> To your wishes, nach Ihren Wünschen. <sup>20</sup> To revenge, rächen. <sup>21</sup> On his enemy, an seinem Feinde. <sup>22</sup> To refresh, erfrischen. <sup>23</sup> Meat and drink, Speise und Trank. <sup>24</sup> With a glass of wine, mit einem Glase Wein. <sup>25</sup> To address one's self, sich wenden. <sup>26</sup> To him, an ihn. <sup>27</sup> To Mr B., an Herrn B. <sup>28</sup> The Rhine, der Rhein. <sup>29</sup> To wind, winden. <sup>30</sup> Through rocky banks, durch felsige Ufer. <sup>31</sup> To be contented, sich begnügen. <sup>32</sup> With the half, mit der Hälfte. <sup>33</sup> To surrender, sich ergeben. <sup>34</sup> To have patience, sich gebulden. <sup>35</sup> No longer, nicht länger. <sup>36</sup> To be mistaken, sich irren. <sup>37</sup> Much, sehr. <sup>38</sup> To find one's self, sich befinden. <sup>39</sup> Your father, Ihr Herr Vater. <sup>40</sup> To depend, sich verlassen. <sup>41</sup> Upon it, darauf. <sup>42</sup> May, können.

# XI.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 106. A verb compounded with a prefix is called a *compound verb*. The prefix of a verb is either *separable* or *inseparable*, and hence a verb is in the former case a *separable compound verb*; in the latter, an *inseparable compound verb*.

An inseparable compound verb does not take the augment *ge* in the past participle (§ 63); in all other respects it is conjugated like a simple verb. The accent is laid on the root of the verb.

A separable compound verb requires its prefix to be separated, under the following circumstances:—1. The prefix is removed to the end of the clause, when the clause is a principal one, and when, at the same time, the verb stands in a simple tense—that is, in the present or imperfect tense of the active voice, or in the imperative mood. For example:—*ich höre auf*, I cease; *ich hörte auf*, I ceased; *höre auf*, cease. In dependent clauses, on the contrary, the prefix keeps its place before the verb, the verb taking the last place in the sentence; as—*wenn ich aufhöre*, if I cease; *als ich aufhörte*, when I ceased. 2. In the past participle, the augment *ge* is inserted between the prefix and the simple verb; as—*aufgehört*, ceased. 3. In the supine, the preposition *zu* is inserted between the prefix and the simple verb; as—*aufzuhören*, to cease. A separable prefix always has the principal accent.

§ 107. The syllables *be*, *er*, *emp*, *ent*, *ver*, *zer*, *ge*, *miß*, and the preposition *wider*, against, are used as inseparable prefixes. For example:—*Er hat die Wahrheit seiner Aussage geschworen*, he has sworn to the truth of his evidence. *Ich habe meinen Zweck erreicht*, I have attained my object. *Gott erfüllt, was er verspricht*, God performs what he promises.

### Notes.

1. The prefix *ant*, in point of derivation the same as *ent* or *emp*, is likewise inseparable, but takes the principal accent. The only verb compounded with the prefix (in this old form) is *antworten*, to answer. The past participle has the augment *geantwortet*.

2. Some verbs compounded with *miß* take the augment in the past participle, but before the prefix; as—*gemißbraucht*, abused; *gemißbilligt*,

disapproved; *gemiß'handelt*, ill-used. In a few verbs the augment is put after the prefix; as—*miß'geachtet*, despised; *miß'geartet*, degenerated. In all such instances the principal accent falls on the prefix, not on the root.

## EXERCISE XIX.

I have visited<sup>1</sup> some friends in Ireland.<sup>2</sup> The flowers are fading.<sup>3</sup> The rain<sup>4</sup> has refreshed the flowers. Water<sup>5</sup> the plants.<sup>6</sup> Have you understood<sup>7</sup> me? I do not<sup>8</sup> understand you. Have you received<sup>9</sup> my letter?<sup>10</sup> The gentleman would have sold<sup>11</sup> his estate.<sup>12</sup> Miss L. has been educated<sup>13</sup> in Paris. Where does this river<sup>14</sup> rise?<sup>15</sup> What has the doctor<sup>16</sup> prescribed?<sup>17</sup> The sea<sup>18</sup> swallows up<sup>19</sup> many treasures.<sup>20</sup> Jonah<sup>21</sup> was [being] swallowed by a great fish.<sup>22</sup> The town was [being] besieged.<sup>23</sup> Who discovered<sup>24</sup> America?<sup>25</sup> Who invented<sup>26</sup> [the] gunpowder?<sup>27</sup> We are betrayed.<sup>28</sup> When will you leave<sup>29</sup> England? We shall leave London in August.<sup>30</sup> Has he left England? [The] time<sup>31</sup> passes away<sup>32</sup> quickly.<sup>33</sup> The horses<sup>34</sup> must be shod.<sup>35</sup> He has not yet answered. The prince<sup>36</sup> has abused<sup>37</sup> his power.<sup>38</sup> The plan<sup>39</sup> has been disapproved.<sup>40</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To visit, *besuchen*. <sup>2</sup> Ireland, *Irland*. <sup>3</sup> To fade, *verwelken*. <sup>4</sup> The rain, *der Regen*. <sup>5</sup> To water, *begießen*. <sup>6</sup> The plants, *die Pflanzen*. <sup>7</sup> To understand, *verstehen*. <sup>8</sup> Arrange 'I understand you not.' <sup>9</sup> To receive, *empfangen*. <sup>10</sup> My letter, *meinen Brief* (acc.) <sup>11</sup> To sell, *verkaufen*. <sup>12</sup> His estate, *sein Landgut*. <sup>13</sup> To educate, *erziehen*. <sup>14</sup> This river, *dieser Fluß*. <sup>15</sup> To rise, *entspringen*. <sup>16</sup> The doctor, *der Arzt*. <sup>17</sup> To prescribe, *verschreiben*. <sup>18</sup> The sea, *das Meer*. <sup>19</sup> To swallow up, *verschlingen*. <sup>20</sup> Many treasures, *viele Schätze*. <sup>21</sup> Jonah, *Jonas*. <sup>22</sup> By a great fish, *von einem großen Fische*. <sup>23</sup> To besiege, *belagern*. <sup>24</sup> To discover, *entdecken*. <sup>25</sup> America, *Amerika*. <sup>26</sup> To invent, *erfinden*. <sup>27</sup> The gunpowder, *das Schießpulver*. <sup>28</sup> To betray, *verrathen*. <sup>29</sup> To leave, *verlassen*. <sup>30</sup> In August, *im August*. <sup>31</sup> The time, *die Zeit*. <sup>32</sup> To pass away, *vergehen*. <sup>33</sup> Quickly, *schnell*. <sup>34</sup> The horses, *die Pferde*. <sup>35</sup> To shoe, *beschlagen*. <sup>36</sup> The prince, *der Fürst*. <sup>37</sup> To abuse, *mißbrauchen*. <sup>38</sup> His power, *seine Macht*. <sup>39</sup> The plan, *der Plan*. <sup>40</sup> To disapprove, *mißbilligen*.

§ 108. Prepositions and adverbs, when used as prefixes, are separable; as—*ab*, off; *an*, on; *auf*, up; *aus*, out; *bei*, by; *da* or *dar*, there; *ein*, in; *fort*, away; *her*, hither; *hin*, thither; *mit*, with; *nach*, after; *nieder*, down; *ob*, over; *vor*, before; *weg*, away; *zu*, to; *zurück*, back; *zusammen*, together, and others. For example:—*Er reißt heute ab*, he sets out to-day.

Ich fing meine Arbeit an, I commenced my work. Hören Sie auf, leave off. Ihre Wechsel sind angekommen, your bills have arrived. Wenn Sie ausgehen, if you go out. Als er fortging, when he went away.

## EXERCISE XX.

Do you go out?<sup>1</sup> We rise<sup>2</sup> very early.<sup>3</sup> At what time<sup>4</sup> do you rise? He is falling asleep.<sup>5</sup> He opens<sup>6</sup> the book. The days<sup>7</sup> are growing longer,<sup>8</sup> and the nights<sup>9</sup> are growing shorter.<sup>10</sup> The fisherman<sup>11</sup> casts<sup>12</sup> his net.<sup>13</sup> She arrived<sup>14</sup> last night.<sup>15</sup> The train<sup>16</sup> starts<sup>17</sup> at six o'clock.<sup>18</sup> I shall inquire<sup>19</sup> at what time the train starts. Has (say, Is) the mail<sup>20</sup> arrived?<sup>21</sup> At what time will the mail arrive? Pray continue.<sup>22</sup> The sun sets.<sup>23</sup> It becomes dark when<sup>24</sup> the sun sets. The sun was just<sup>25</sup> rising<sup>26</sup> as<sup>27</sup> we set out.<sup>28</sup> The moon<sup>29</sup> has (say, is) risen. At what time does the sun rise? Put on<sup>30</sup> your bonnet.<sup>31</sup> Take off<sup>32</sup> your cloak.<sup>33</sup> The trees bud<sup>34</sup> in spring,<sup>35</sup> and lose<sup>36</sup> their leaves in autumn.<sup>37</sup> I have copied<sup>38</sup> several<sup>39</sup> letters. What has happened<sup>40</sup> here? The cloth<sup>41</sup> has (say, is) shrunk.<sup>42</sup> Will you call for<sup>43</sup> me? I shall go with<sup>44</sup> you, if you will call for me. Desist<sup>45</sup> from thy undertaking.<sup>46</sup> This colour<sup>47</sup> looks<sup>48</sup> very

<sup>1</sup> To go out, ausgehen. <sup>2</sup> To rise, aufstehen. <sup>3</sup> Early, früh. <sup>4</sup> At what time, um welche Zeit. <sup>5</sup> To fall asleep, einschlafen. <sup>6</sup> To open (a book), aufschlagen. <sup>7</sup> The days, die Tage. <sup>8</sup> To grow longer, zunehmen. <sup>9</sup> The nights, die Nächte. <sup>10</sup> To grow shorter, abnehmen. <sup>11</sup> The fisherman, der Fischer. <sup>12</sup> To cast, auswerfen. <sup>13</sup> His net, sein Netz. <sup>14</sup> To arrive, ankommen. <sup>15</sup> Last night, gestern Abend. <sup>16</sup> The train, der Bahnzug. <sup>17</sup> To start, abgehen. <sup>18</sup> At six o'clock, um sechs Uhr. <sup>19</sup> To inquire, sich erkundigen. <sup>20</sup> The mail, die Briefpost, or die Post. <sup>21</sup> See § 67, 2. <sup>22</sup> To continue, fortfahren. <sup>23</sup> To set, untergehen. <sup>24</sup> When, wenn. <sup>25</sup> Just, eben. <sup>26</sup> To rise, aufgehen. <sup>27</sup> As, als. <sup>28</sup> To set out, abreisen. <sup>29</sup> The moon, der Mond. Regarding the conjugation of the verb, see § 67, 2. <sup>30</sup> To put on, aufsetzen. <sup>31</sup> Your bonnet, Ihren Hut (acc.) <sup>32</sup> To take off, ablegen. <sup>33</sup> Your cloak, Ihren Mantel (acc.) <sup>34</sup> To bud, ausschlagen. <sup>35</sup> In spring, im Frühling. <sup>36</sup> To lose the leaves, sich entblättern. <sup>37</sup> In autumn, im Herbst. <sup>38</sup> To copy, abschreiben. <sup>39</sup> Several, mehrere. <sup>40</sup> To happen, sich zutragen. <sup>41</sup> The cloth, das Zeug. <sup>42</sup> To shrink, einlaufen. See § 67, 2. <sup>43</sup> To call for, abholen. <sup>44</sup> To go with, mitgehen. <sup>45</sup> To desist, abstehen. Use the second person singular of the imperative. <sup>46</sup> From thy undertaking, von deinem Unternehmen. <sup>47</sup> This colour, diese Farbe. <sup>48</sup> To look, aussehen.

beautiful.<sup>49</sup> Begin.<sup>50</sup> When did you begin the study<sup>51</sup> of the German language? Have you already begun? I shall begin to-morrow. When does the play<sup>52</sup> begin? Can you tell<sup>53</sup> me<sup>54</sup> at what time the play begins? Stand up.<sup>55</sup> The door opens.<sup>56</sup> Shut<sup>57</sup> the window.<sup>58</sup> Have you shut the window?

<sup>49</sup> Beautiful, schön. <sup>50</sup> To begin, anfangen. <sup>51</sup> The study of the German language, das Studium der deutschen Sprache. <sup>52</sup> The play, das Schauspiel. <sup>53</sup> To tell, sagen. <sup>54</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>55</sup> To stand up, aufstehen. <sup>56</sup> To open (intrans.), aufgehen. <sup>57</sup> To shut, zumachen. <sup>58</sup> The window, das Fenster.

§ 109. The prepositions durch, through; über, over; unter, under; um, round; hinter, behind, are used both as separable and inseparable prefixes, according as either the prefix or the root of the verb has the principal accent. If the same verb can be used in both ways, the variation in usage is accompanied by a marked difference in the signification. To the majority of verbs of this kind the rule may be applied, that the prefix is separable when the verb is used in its primitive sense, but inseparable when the verb is used in a figurative sense. Examples:—

durch'ziehen, to pull through.	durchzie'hen, to roam through.
durch'laufen, to run through.	durchlau'fen, to peruse hastily.
durch'schneiden, to cut through.	durchschi'nden, to intersect, plough through ( <i>e.g.</i> the waves).
ü'berstehen, to project.	überste'hen, to overcome.
ü'bergehen, to go over.	überge'hen, to pass over in silence.
ü'bersegen, to leap over, to ferry over.	überse'gen, to translate.
ü'berlegen, to lay over.	überle'gen, to consider.
un'terhalten, to hold under.	unterhal'ten, to entertain.
un'terdrücken, to press under.	unterdrück'en,*to oppress.
um'gehen, to go round, to make a roundabout way.	umge'hen, to evade.
hin'tergehen, to go behind, to a back-room.	hinterge'hen, to deceive.

Most verbs compounded with the above prefixes, however,

are only used either in the one way or in the other. The adverb *wieder*, again, occurs as an inseparable prefix only in *wiederho'len*, to repeat; in all other instances it is separable; as in—*wie'derkommen*, to come again; *wie'derbringen*, to bring back, &c.; and likewise in *wie'derholen*, meaning 'to fetch back.'

## EXERCISE XXI.

I pull the rope<sup>1</sup> through. We roamed through the surrounding country.<sup>2</sup> The carpenter<sup>3</sup> saws through<sup>4</sup> the wood. The ship ploughs through the waves.<sup>5</sup> The roof<sup>6</sup> projects. I have gone through<sup>7</sup> many trials.<sup>8</sup> They went over to the enemy.<sup>9</sup> We passed it over in silence. Ferry me over. Translate the passage.<sup>10</sup> We have translated a page.<sup>11</sup> She held the glass under. She entertained the company.<sup>12</sup> They evaded the law.<sup>13</sup> He has deceived me. Bring it back. Repeat the sentence.<sup>14</sup> We shall come again.

<sup>1</sup> The rope, das Seil. <sup>2</sup> The surrounding country, die Umgegend. <sup>3</sup> The carpenter, der Zimmermann. <sup>4</sup> To saw through, durchsägen. <sup>5</sup> The waves, die Wellen. <sup>6</sup> The roof, das Dach. <sup>7</sup> To go through, überstehen. <sup>8</sup> Many trials, viele Prüfungen. <sup>9</sup> To the enemy, zum Feinde. <sup>10</sup> The passage, die Stelle. <sup>11</sup> A page, eine Seite. <sup>12</sup> The company, die Gesellschaft. <sup>13</sup> The law, das Gesetz. <sup>14</sup> The sentence, den Satz (acc.)

§ 110. Compound prefixes (as—*herein*, *hinaus*, *vorbei*, *vorher*, *vorüber*, *dabei*, *davon*, &c.) are used like simple separable prefixes, if each of the two components by itself is separable. The principal accent is put on the second component of the prefix. For example:—*ich sage vorher*, I foretell; *er ist davon'gelaufen*, he has run away.

But if a separable, and therefore accented, prefix is followed by an inseparable and unaccented one, only the first can be separated. The past participle of such verbs takes no augment. For example:—*an'erkennen*, to acknowledge; *ich erkenne an*, I acknowledge; *ich habe anerkannt*, I have acknowledged; *anzuerkennen*, to acknowledge. *Ein'gestehen*, to confess; *er gestand ein*, he confessed; *er hat eingestanden*, he has confessed.

## Note.

There is a third class of verbs which have two prefixes, but in which the unaccented prefix precedes the accented one. In such instances, both

are inseparable, because, strictly speaking, the second syllable is no verbal prefix at all, but forms part of the compound substantive or adjective from which verbs of this kind are derived. For example:—*verab'reten*, to make an agreement, is derived from *Ab'rete*, agreement; *verab'schieden*, to dismiss, from *Ab'schied*, dismissal; *veran'stalten*, to arrange, prepare, from *An'stalt*, preparation; *veran'schlagen*, to estimate, from *An'schlag*, estimate; *veraus'gaben*, to expend, from *Ausgabe*, expense; *beauf'tragen*, to commission, from *Auftrag*, commission; *bemit'reiben*, to pity, from *Mitleid*, pity; *bean'spruchen*, to claim, from *Anspruch*, claim; *beun'ruhigen*, to disquiet, from *unruhig*, unquiet. All verbs of this last-mentioned class follow the weak conjugation, because they are derivatives. (See §§ 73 and 92).

§ 111. Of those compound verbs whose determinative component is a substantive or adjective, some are inseparable, others separable. In both cases they have the accent on the first or determinative component, not on the root.

1. The following, among others, are inseparable, but have this peculiarity, that in the past participle they take the augment before the prefix:—*weis'sagen*, to prophesy; *lust'wandeln*, to walk for pleasure; *rech'tfertigen*, to justify; *will'fahren*, to comply; *lieb'sosen*, to caress.

**Note.**

Verbs derived from compound substantives, and therefore not being compound verbs in the strict sense of the word, must be distinguished from the above; e. g.—*früh'stücken*, to breakfast; *rath'schlagen*, to deliberate; *argwöh'nen*, to suspect; *hand'haben*, to handle; *wette'feiern*, to emulate; *wall'fahrten*, to go on a pilgrimage, &c., derived from *Früh'stück*, *Rath'schlag*, *Argwöhn*, *Hand'habe*, *Wette'feier*, *Wall'fahrt*.

2. The following verbs (compounded with adjectives) are separable:—*groß'thun*, *groß'sprechen*, *groß'prahlen*, to boast; *loß'sprechen*, to acquit; *sich loß'sagen*, to renounce; *wohl'wollen*, to wish well; *wohl'thun*, to do good; *hoch'achten*, *werth'schätzen*, to esteem highly; *gut'sagen*, to stand security; *frei'lassen*, to set free; *genug'thun*, to satisfy; *wahr'nehmen*, to observe; *fest'halten*, to hold fast, &c. In all these, the two components—namely, the adjective and verb—do not strictly coalesce into one notion, and therefore admit of being separated.

**Note.**

Verbs compounded with the adjective *voll*, full, are inseparable, the root taking the principal accent. The past participle dispenses with the augment. For example:—*voll'bringen*, to accomplish (past participle *vollbracht*); *voll'enben*, to finish (past participle *vollendet*); *voll'führen*, to achieve; *voll'stellen*, to put into effect; *voll'ziehen*, to execute. These



really compound verbs must, however, not be confounded with such expressions as *voll füllen*, to make full, or fill to the brim; *sich voll trinken*, to drink one's fill, &c., in which *voll* entirely preserves the character and meaning of an adjective, and does not form part of the verb.

## EXERCISE XXII.

He came in.<sup>1</sup> Have I not foretold<sup>2</sup> it? The thief<sup>3</sup> has run away.<sup>4</sup> Go out.<sup>5</sup> He has missed<sup>6</sup> the mark. He hazards<sup>7</sup> his life.<sup>8</sup> I acknowledge<sup>9</sup> your kindness.<sup>10</sup> He has admitted<sup>11</sup> his error.<sup>12</sup> The conditions<sup>13</sup> have been agreed upon.<sup>14</sup> We have expended<sup>15</sup> a large sum.<sup>16</sup> Many soldiers<sup>17</sup> will be dismissed.<sup>18</sup> We shall arrange<sup>19</sup> a meeting.<sup>20</sup> They walked<sup>21</sup> in the grove.<sup>22</sup> We have complied<sup>23</sup> with his request.<sup>24</sup> She caressed<sup>25</sup> her mother.<sup>26</sup> The culprit<sup>27</sup> has been acquitted.<sup>28</sup> I stand security<sup>29</sup> for him.<sup>30</sup> He will soon be set free.<sup>31</sup> She is [being] held in high esteem<sup>32</sup> by all.<sup>33</sup> Have you already breakfasted?<sup>34</sup> We breakfast at nine o'clock. I have handled<sup>35</sup> the bow.<sup>36</sup> The painter<sup>37</sup> has finished<sup>38</sup> the picture.<sup>39</sup> The sentence<sup>40</sup> will immediately<sup>41</sup> be put<sup>42</sup> in execution.

<sup>1</sup> To come in, hereinkommen. <sup>2</sup> To foretell, vorher sagen. <sup>3</sup> The thief, der Dieb. <sup>4</sup> To run away, davonlaufen. (See § 67, 2). <sup>5</sup> To go out, hinausgehen. <sup>6</sup> To miss the mark, vorbeischießen. <sup>7</sup> To hazard, daransetzen. <sup>8</sup> His life, sein Leben. <sup>9</sup> To acknowledge, anerkennen. <sup>10</sup> Your kindness, Ihre Güte. <sup>11</sup> To admit, eingestehen. <sup>12</sup> His error, seinen Irrthum (acc.) <sup>13</sup> The conditions, die Bedingungen. <sup>14</sup> To agree upon, verabreden. <sup>15</sup> To expend, verausgaben. <sup>16</sup> A large sum, eine große Summe. <sup>17</sup> Many soldiers, viele Soldaten. <sup>18</sup> To dismiss, verabschieden. <sup>19</sup> To arrange, veranstalten. <sup>20</sup> A meeting, eine Zusammenkunft. <sup>21</sup> To walk (for pleasure), lustwandeln. <sup>22</sup> In the grove, in dem Hain. <sup>23</sup> To comply with, willfahren. <sup>24</sup> His request, seiner Bitte (dat.) <sup>25</sup> To caress, liebesein. <sup>26</sup> Her mother, ihre Mutter. <sup>27</sup> The culprit, der Verbrecher. <sup>28</sup> To acquit, freisprechen. <sup>29</sup> To stand security, gutsagen. <sup>30</sup> For him, für ihn. <sup>31</sup> To set free, freilassen. <sup>32</sup> To hold in high esteem, hochachten. <sup>33</sup> By all, von Allen. <sup>34</sup> To breakfast, frühstücken. <sup>35</sup> To handle, hanthaben. <sup>36</sup> The bow, den Bogen (acc.) <sup>37</sup> The painter, der Maler. <sup>38</sup> To finish, vollenden. <sup>39</sup> The picture, das Bild. <sup>40</sup> The sentence, das Urtheil. <sup>41</sup> Immediately, sogleich. <sup>42</sup> To put in execution, vollstrecken.

§ 112. The German language abounds with phrases which come under the category of compound verbs, inasmuch as, although compound in form, yet in signification they express

the simple notion of a verb. They are, therefore, used like separable compound verbs. For example:—*Dank sagen*, to thank, or return thanks; *Haus halten*, to keep house; *Statt finden*, to take place; *Preis geben*, to abandon, expose; *Stand halten*, to keep one's ground; *zu Stande bringen*, to accomplish; *zu Stande kommen*, to be brought about, arrive at completion; *zu Hülfe kommen*, to come to one's aid; *zu Grunde richten*, to ruin; *zu Grunde gehen*, to be ruined; *Theil nehmen*, to take part; *Troß bieten*, to defy; *Hohn sprechen*, to mock; *Arede stehen*, to answer; *zur Rede stellen* or *setzen*, to call to account; *das Wort reden*, to defend; *zu Theil werden*, to fall to one's lot; *im Stiche lassen*, to leave behind, or in the lurch; *in Anspruch nehmen*, to lay claim to; *fürlieb* (or *vorlieb*) *nehmen*, to be content, to put up with; *inne werden*, to perceive; *zum Vorschein kommen*, to appear; *zu Leide thun*, to harm; *Acht geben*, to pay attention; *in Acht nehmen*, to take care. Such expressions may be compared with the Latin *verba facere*, to make words—that is, to speak; *opem ferre*, to bring help—that is, to help; and others.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

I have returned thanks to him.<sup>1</sup> The meeting<sup>2</sup> has not taken place. He has abandoned himself to [the] seduction.<sup>3</sup> We shall not abandon our principles.<sup>4</sup> Will he accomplish the work?<sup>5</sup> Will the alliance<sup>6</sup> be brought about? Untoward circumstances<sup>7</sup> have ruined his business.<sup>8</sup> Will you take part in the game?<sup>9</sup> I defy all obstacles.<sup>10</sup> I shall answer you.<sup>11</sup> He called me to account. His friends<sup>12</sup> have left him in the lurch. I must lay claim to your forbearance.<sup>13</sup> You must put up with little.<sup>14</sup> It has (say, is) appeared again. Pay attention. I have not paid *any* attention to it.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To him, ihm. <sup>2</sup> The meeting, die Versammlung. <sup>3</sup> To seduction, der Verführung. <sup>4</sup> Our principles, unsre Grundsätze. <sup>5</sup> The work, das Werk. <sup>6</sup> The alliance, das Bündniß. <sup>7</sup> Untoward circumstances, widerwärtige Verhältnisse. <sup>8</sup> His business, sein Geschäft. <sup>9</sup> In the game, an dem Spiele. <sup>10</sup> All obstacles, allen Hindernissen (dat.) <sup>11</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>12</sup> His friends, seine Freunde. <sup>13</sup> To your forbearance, Ihre Nachsicht (acc.) <sup>14</sup> With little, mit Wenigem. <sup>15</sup> To it, darauf.

## XII.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ITS KINDS.

§ 113. The substantive is a word which expresses the idea of an existence—that is, of a person or thing. Substantives are divided into *concrete* and *abstract*. A concrete substantive is the name of an object which can be perceived by the senses, or which really exists; as—Mann, man; Frau, woman; Stadt, town; Fluß, river; Vogel, bird; Sonne, sun; Wasser, water. An abstract substantive is the name of a thing which is only conceived by the mind as having an independent existence; as—Sprung, leap; Fall, fall; Freude, joy; Schlaf, sleep; Schönheit, beauty; Thorheit, folly.

§ 114. The concrete substantives are divided into *common names*, *proper names*, *collective names*, and *names of materials*.

1. A common name is a name common to all the individuals of the same class of persons or things; as—Mann, man; Engel, angel; Hund, dog; Stadt, town; Fluß, river; Baum, tree; Vogel, bird.

2. A proper name is a name which is proper or peculiar to the individual person or thing bearing it, and therefore distinguishes one individual from all other individuals of the same kind; as—Luther, Karl, Europa, England, London, Hemse.

3. Names of materials are names of things which do not admit of any distinction of individuals or of number, but only of quantity; as—Wasser, water; Wein, wine; Sand, sand; Zucker, sugar; Mehl, meal; Staub, dust.

4. A collective name expresses a plurality of individual persons or things of the same kind represented as a whole; as—Volk, people; Heer, army; Vieh, cattle; Priesterschaft, priesthood; Gebirge, range of mountains; Gewölk, collection of clouds.

§ 115. Abstract substantives are divided into—

1. Names of actions; as—Sprung, leap; Blick, look; Ruf, call; Schlag, stroke; Fall, fall; Geheul, howling; Gerassel, rattling.

2. Names of conditions ; as—Friede, peace ; Freude, joy ; Furcht, fear ; Schlaf, sleep ; Ruhe, rest ; Seligkeit, bliss.

3. Names of qualities ; as—Schönheit, beauty ; Alter, age ; Jugend, youth ; Größe, greatness ; Weisheit, wisdom ; Thorheit, folly.

§ 116. When adjectives and infinitives are used in the sense of substantives, they are termed *adjective substantives*, and *verbal substantives* respectively, to distinguish them from *substantives proper*. For example :—die Weisen, the sages ; die Gelehrten, the learned ; das Schöne, the beautiful ; das Singen, the singing ; das Reisen, the travelling.

### XIII.

#### THE ARTICLE, AND ITS CONNECTION WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 117. The article serves to single out an object from among other objects of the same class. An object thus singled out can be of a more or less definite kind, and hence we distinguish between a *definite article*—der, die, das, the—and an *indefinite article*—ein, eine, ein, a, an. For example :—der König von England, the King of England ; die Könige von Preußen und von Sachsen, the Kings of Prussia and of Saxony ; es war einmal ein König, there was once a king. The definite article has different forms for the three genders, the masculine (der), the feminine (die), and the neuter (das), by which it points out the gender of its substantive. The forms of the indefinite article are less perfect. Both articles being declinable, they agree with the substantive not only in gender, but also in case and number. The plural of the definite article is the same for all the three genders ; the indefinite can, from its nature, have a singular only.

#### Note.

Formerly, the German language had no article. Der, die, das, is originally a demonstrative pronoun, meaning 'that.' It was used, however, in the capacity of an article at a very early period ; for, it appears

as such in the old High-German language, although its use there is less indispensable, and of a more limited nature, than in the modern language. The use of the numeral *ein*, *one*, as an indefinite article, was not introduced till the ninth century. In old High-German, it had the force of an indefinite pronoun, meaning 'some one,' the Latin *quidam*, *aliquis*.

### § 118. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.	ENGLISH.
<i>Nom.</i>	der,	die,	daß,	die,	the.
<i>Gen.</i>	deß,	der,	deß,	der,	of the.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem,	der,	dem,	den,	to the.
<i>Acc.</i>	den,	die,	daß,	die,	the.

### DECLENSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR.			
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ENGLISH.
<i>Nom.</i>	ein,	eine,	ein,	a.
<i>Gen.</i>	eines,	einer,	eines,	of a.
<i>Dat.</i>	einem,	einer,	einem,	to a.
<i>Acc.</i>	einen,	eine,	ein,	a.

The definite article is often contracted with prepositions, as—

<i>a.</i>	am	for an	dem.	<i>c.</i>	an's	for an	daß.
	beim...		bei dem.		auf's	...	auf daß.
	im	...	in dem.		durch's	...	durch daß.
	vom	...	von dem.		für's	...	für daß.
	zum	...	zu dem.		in's	...	in daß.
<i>b.</i>	zur	...	zu der.		um's	...	um daß.

#### Note.

Other contractions, such as *unterm*, *überm*, *hintern*, *unter's*, *über's*, *hinter's*, *nider's*, &c., are generally avoided by good authors, although they occur pretty often in common conversation. But forms like *aufm* for *auf dem*, *außm* for *auß dem*, *durchn* for *durch den*, are very inelegant, because offensive to the ear.

§ 119. *Common Names* generally have one of the two articles, except in the following cases:—

1. There is no article required in the plural of common names, when the singular has the indefinite article; as—*ein*

*Kind*, a child, plural *Kinder*, children ; *ein Buch*, a book, plural *Bücher*, books.

2. The article is dispensed with in a great number of phrases, in which a common name is joined to a preposition, to express various adverbial relations ; as—*bei Tische*, at table ; *bei Hofe*, at court ; *nach Hofe*, to court ; *zu Bett*, to bed ; *zu Tische*, to dinner or supper, literally, to table ; *zu Markte*, to market ; *zu Fuß*, on foot ; *zu Pferde*, on horseback ; *zu Wagen*, in a coach ; *zu Hause*, at home ; *nach Hause*, home, &c.

3. A common name, when used as a title before a proper name, or as a title or heading of a book, takes no article ; as—*Herr Müller*, Mr Müller ; *Doctor Luther*, Doctor Luther ; *Deutsche Grammatik*, German grammar ; *Vorrede*, preface.

§ 120. The definite article is employed in German, contrary to the usage of the English language, to represent the *whole* genus of a thing expressed by a common name. For example :—*der Mensch ist mit Vernunft begabt*, man is endowed with reason. *Der Fisch schwimmt und der Vogel fliegt*, (all) fishes swim, and (all) birds fly. *Die Eichen sind schöne Bäume*, oaks are fine trees.

§ 121. *Proper Names* are generally used without any article, except in the following cases :—

1. Names of rivers, seas, lakes, mountains, and forests take the definite article ; as—*die Elbe*, the Elbe ; *die Nordsee*, the German Ocean ; *der Bodensee*, the lake of Constance ; *der Brocken*, the Brocken ; *der Harz*, the Harz mountains ; *der Böhmerwald*, the Bohemian forest.

2. The names of those countries and towns which are of the masculine or feminine gender, take the definite article ; as—*die Schweiz*, Switzerland ; *die Türkei*, Turkey ; *der Rheingau*, the circle of the Rhine (in Nassau) ; *der Haag*, the Hague. Also the names of those countries which are used only in the plural ; as—*die Niederlande*, the Netherlands.

3. The names of months take the definite article ; *e.g.*—*der April ist veränderlich*, April is changeable.

4. When a proper name is qualified by an adjective, it takes the definite article ; as—*der große Nelson*, great Nelson ; *das majestätische Venedig*, majestic Venice.

5. A proper name takes an article, either the definite or indefinite, according as the connection may require, when it is used in the sense of a common name, or when several individuals have the same name in common; as—*ein Luther*, a (man like) Luther; *die Raphael* unsrer Zeit, the Raphaels of our time; *ein Bourbon*, a Bourbon; *die Bourbonen*, the Bourbons.

6. With names of persons, the definite article is sometimes used in its primitive meaning—namely, that of a demonstrative pronoun; *e.g.*—*Da ist der Tell*, *Sch.*, there is that (well-known man) Tell.

7. Sometimes the definite article is employed with proper names merely for the purpose of indicating the case, especially when the proper name cannot be inflected; as—*der Tod* des Sokrates, the death of Socrates. *Augustus* adoptirte *den* Tiberius, Augustus adopted Tiberius. *Den* Hector hat Aeneas überlebt, Aeneas survived Hector.

8. The names *das Ellysium*, elysium; *das Paradies*, paradise; *der Tartarus*, Tartarus; *die Hölle*, hell; *der Himmel*, heaven; *die Vorsehung*, providence, are always used with an article, except in the phrase *gen Himmel*, towards heaven.

§ 122. *Names of materials* do not usually require an article. There are only two exceptions:—

1. When the name of a material assumes the nature of a common name, one species being distinguished from other species of a like material; as—*ein Salz*, a (species of) salt; *die Salze*, the salts or kinds of salt; *ein Wein*, a (kind of) wine; *die französischen Weine*, the French wines; *die Milch ist sauer*, the milk (that is, this particular milk) is sour.

2. When the entire genus of a material is to be expressed, the definite article is generally used; *e.g.*—*das Wasser ist farblos*, water is colourless. *Das Quecksilber ist ein flüssiges Metall*, quicksilver is a liquid metal. *Der Wein erfreut des Menschen Herz*, *G.*, wine gladdens the heart of man.

§ 123. *Collective Substantives* are, according to circumstances, used with or without an article:—*das Volk*, the people; *ein Volk*, a people; *die Völker Europas*, the nations of Europe. *Er hält Vieh*, he keeps cattle. *Das Vieh hat sich verlaufen*, the cattle are straying.

§ 124. *Abstract Substantives* do not require an article, except when they signify actions. For example:—Der Mensch muß Ruhm und Ladel ertragen lernen, *G.*, man must learn to bear both praise and censure. Glück macht Muth, *G.*, success gives courage. Der Gang nach dem Eisenhammer, *Sch.*, the walk to the forge. Ein Schrei ertönte, a cry was heard. But even names of conditions and qualities frequently take an article, not only when the abstract notion is individualised, as in der Friede der Seele, the peace of the soul; die Liebe Gottes, the love of God; but often also when the abstract idea is used in a general sense, as in daß Leben ist kurz, life is short; die Zeit vergeht, time passes away; die Liebe macht den Bettler reich, *Tieck*, love makes a beggar rich; der Alpenjäger liebt die Gefahr, *Jacobs*, the hunter of the Alps loves danger. In the latter case, the definite article serves at the same time to shew the case of the substantive; e.g.—Höre die Stimme gutes Rathes und der Vernunft, *G.*, hear the voice of good counsel and of reason. Es fällt bei uns keine Thräne, als die Thräne der Freude und Dankbarkeit, *Kr.*, there is no tear shed among us, except the tear of joy and gratitude.

§ 125. When two or more substantives of the same gender and number are joined together, the article, if required at all, is put before the first substantive only. For example:—die Gnade, Weisheit, und Liebe Gottes, the mercy, wisdom, and love of God. Die Freunde und Nachbarn dieses Mannes, the friends and neighbours of this man. But when substantives thus connected are not of the same gender and number, the article is put before each; as—er bewies die Kraft und den Muth eines Löwen, he shewed the strength and courage of a lion. Die Mutter und die Schwestern sind ausgegangen, the mother and the sisters are gone out. Ihr Vater erinnerte sie an die Würde und Erhabenheit der Tugend, ihre Mutter an die Stütze und den Trost, den sie gewährt, her father reminded her of the dignity and sublimity of virtue, her mother of the support and consolation it affords. In like manner, the omission of the article is not admissible, if the substantives placed side by side have an antithetical force, even though they be of the same gender and number. For instance, in der Fürst, der Bürger, der Bauer, the prince, the citizen, the peasant, &c., the article must be put before



each noun; and so also in *der Vater und der Sohn*, the father and the son.

Note.

These remarks hold good with regard to pronouns and adjectives also; e. g.—*Ich bin durchdrungen von seiner Gnade und Liebe*, I am filled with a sense of his mercy and love. *Die unaussprechliche Gnade und Liebe des Herrn*, the ineffable mercy and love of the Lord. *Er hat die Freude und Hoffnung seines Vaters und seiner Mutter vernichtet*, he has destroyed the joy and hope of his father and mother. *Seine große Kraft und sein großer Muth*, his great strength and courage.

§ 126. When a substantive in the genitive stands immediately before another substantive, by which it is governed, the article is omitted before the latter; as—*Gottes Weisheit*, the wisdom of God. *Meines Vaters Haus*, my father's house. *Der Tugend Pfad ist anfangs steil*, the path of virtue is steep at first. *Des Königs Ehre ist mir heilig*, *Sch.*, the king's honour is sacred to me.

§ 127. The definite article is employed, instead of the indefinite, in such expressions as—*drei Thaler die Elle*, three dollars *a* yard; *zweimal die Woche*, twice *a* week; *zehn Meilen den Tag*, ten miles *a* day.

§ 128. There is no article used in the following and some similar phrases:—in *Muth*, in *a* passion; in *Eile*, in *a* hurry; *mit schwacher Stimme*, in *a* faint voice; *ich habe Kopfschmerz*, I have *a* headache; *ich habe Lust*, I have *a* mind or desire. Neither is the practice of putting the indefinite article before 'few, hundred, thousand,' adopted in German; as—*wenige Meilen*, *a* few miles; *hundert Schritte*, *a* hundred steps; *tausend Jahre*, *a* thousand years.

---

## XIV.

### THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 129. The German language has *three genders*—the masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the appellations of persons and of those animals in which the language distinguishes the natural sex, the grammatical gender corresponds

with the natural sex ; as—*der Mann*, the man ; *die Frau*, the woman ; *der Wolf*, the wolf ; *die Wölfin*, the she-wolf.

## Notes.

1. *Das Weib*, the woman, wife, and *das Mensch*, the wench, are exceptions. Also compounds like *das Frauenzimmer*, the woman ; *die Mannsperson*, the male person ; and such derivatives as—*das Mädchen*, the girl ; *das Fräulein*, the young lady ; *das Knäbchen*, the little boy, &c., in all of which the last component (*Zimmer*, *Person*) or the derivative suffix (*chen*, *lein*) determines the gender.

2. Some *generic* names of living beings—that is, names denoting the kind, without having regard to the sex—are of the neuter gender ; for instance—*das Kind*, the child ; *das Reh*, the roe ; *das Pferd* or *das Ross*, the horse ; *das Füllen*, the foal ; *das Lamm*, the lamb ; *das Kalb*, the calf ; *das Rind*, the neat (bovine animal) ; *das Schaf*, the sheep ; *das Schwein*, the pig ; *das Ferkel*, the young pig ; *das Huhn*, the fowl. A few names of animals, peculiar to foreign countries and bearing un-German names, are likewise neuter ; as—*das Kameel*, the camel ; *das Dromedar*, the dromedary ; *das Krokodil*, the crocodile ; *das Lama*, the llama ; *das Zebra*, the zebra ; *das Känguru*, the kangaroo ; *das Gnu*, the gnu, &c. But the generic names of most other animals are masculine or feminine ; as—*der Adler*, the eagle ; *der Fisch*, the fish ; *der Frosch*, the frog ; *die Schwalbe*, the swallow ; *die Fliege*, the fly ; *die Nachtigall*, the nightingale. Generic terms denoting the human species are masculine ; as—*der Mensch*, man, the human being (the Latin *homo*) ; *der Zwilling*, the twin ; *der Säugling*, the suckling ; *der Liebling*, the favourite ; *der Findling*, the foundling, &c. ; excepting *die Person*, the person ; *die Waise*, the orphan, and *das Kind*, the child.

§ 130. All names of things should be of the neuter gender ; but by a kind of personification the German language assigns the masculine or feminine gender even to many names of things. The gender of such substantives may be ascertained partly from their meaning, partly and principally from their form.

§ 131. The *meaning determines the gender* of names of things in the following cases :—

1. The names of seasons, months, and days are masculine, except *das Jahr*, the year.

2. The names of stones and mountains are masculine.

3. Most proper names of rivers are feminine ; except *der Rhein*, *der Main*, *der Neckar*, *der Lech*, *der Inn*, &c. ; and many rivers belonging to foreign countries, as—*der Po*, *der Nil*, *der Ganges*, *der Mississippi*, &c.

## Note.

Some names of foreign rivers, originally masculine, are in German used as feminine, in accordance with the prevailing analogy of the language ; e.g.—*die Rhone*, *die Elber*, *die Themse*.

4. Proper names of countries and towns are neuter, excepting those of countries ending in *ei*, *au*, and *z*, which are feminine, and *die Mark*, *die Krim*, *die Levante*, *die Ukraine*, *der Peloponnes*, *der Haag*; and also those compounded with *Gau*, district, which are masculine from the gender of the last component.

5. The names of metals are neuter, except—*der Tombak*, pinchbeck; *der Stahl*, steel; *der Zink*, zinc; *der Kobalt*, cobalt; *der Wismuth*, bismuth; *die Platina*, platina.

6. All words which have not been substantives originally, but which are used as such, to express abstract ideas or names of things, are of the neuter gender; as—*das Wenn* und *das Aber*, the if and but; *das A* und *Ω*, the alpha and omega; *das Schöne*, the beautiful; *das Erhabene*, the sublime; and all infinitives used in the sense of substantives; as—*das Reisen*, the travelling; *das Lesen*, the reading; *das Leben*, the life.

§ 132. The *form determines the gender* in the following cases:—

1. Monosyllabic substantives are masculine.

This rule, according to rule 6, extends also to those compound substantives of which a masculine monosyllable forms the last component, and therefore embraces a very large number of words. But, at the same time, it is subject to a great many exceptions, which are contained in the two subjoined lists. For the sake of completeness, these lists contain also such substantives as fall under the rules and exceptions given in §§ 129 and 131.

#### α. FEMININE MONOSYLLABLES.

All substantives marked thus † have two genders, but with a different signification for each. In every such instance, see § 133.

*die Acht*, proscription.  
 " *Angst*, anguish.  
 " *Art*, manner.  
 " *Art*, axe.  
 " *Bahn*, path.  
 " *Bank*, bench.

*die Bai*, bay.  
 " *Braut*, bride.  
 " *Brunst*, conflagration.  
 " *Brust*, breast.  
 " *Brut*, brood.  
 " *Bucht*, bay.

die Burg, castle.	die Macht, might.
" Fahrt, expedition.	" Magd, maid-servant.
" Faust, fist.	+ " Mark, boundary.
" Flucht, flight.	+ " Marsch, marsh, fen.
" Flur, field.	+ Mast, mast, fattening.
" Flut, flood.	Maus, mouse.
" Form, form.	Mauth, excise.
" Fracht, freight.	Milch, milk.
" Frau, woman.	Milz, milt.
" Frist, time.	Nacht, night.
" Frucht, fruit.	Nah, seam.
" Furcht, fear.	Noth, need.
" Furt, ford.	Null, zero.
" Gans, goose.	Nuß, nut.
" Geiß, goat.	Pein, torment.
" Gicht, gout.	Pflicht, duty.
" Gier, eagerness.	Post, post.
" Gluth, glow.	Pracht, splendour.
" Gruft, grave.	Qual, torment.
" Gunst, favour.	Rast, rest.
+ " Haft, custody.	Ruhr, dysentery.
" Hand, hand.	Saat, seed.
" Hast, haste.	Sau, sow.
" Haut, skin.	Scham, shame.
" Hulb, grace.	Schar, host, troop.
+ " Hut, guard.	Schau, show.
" Jagd, chase.	Scheu, dread. <sup>3</sup>
" Kluft, cleft.	Schicht, layer, stratum.
" Kost, food.	Schlacht, battle.
" Kraft, strength.	Schlucht, ravine.
" Kuh, cow.	Schlust, defile.
" Kunst, art.	Schmach, disgrace.
" Kur (obsolete), election. <sup>1</sup>	Schnur, cord.
" Last, load.	Schrift, writing.
" Laus, louse.	Schuld, guilt; debt.
" List, cunning.	Schur, shearing.
" Luft, air.	+ Schwell, swelling.
" Lust, pleasure. <sup>2</sup>	+ See, sea.

<sup>1</sup> Also die Willfür, arbitrariness.

<sup>2</sup> Verlust, loss (derived from verlieren, to lose), is masculine.

<sup>3</sup> Abscheu, abhorrence, is masculine.

die Sicht, sight. <sup>1</sup>	die Wahl, choice.
" Spreu, chaff.	" Wand, wall. <sup>2</sup>
" Spur, trace.	† " Wehr, defence.
" Stadt, town.	" Welt, world.
" Statt, stead, place.	" Wucht, heavy weight,
" Stirn, brow.	bulk.
" Streu, litter.	" Wulst, pad.
" Sucht, longing, passion.	" Würst, sausage. <sup>3</sup>
" That, deed.	" Wuth, rage.
" Thür, door.	" Zahl, number.
" Tracht, load, costume.	" Zeit, time.
" Trift, pasturage.	" Zier, ornament.
" Uhr, watch.	" Zucht, discipline.
" Wacht, guard.	" Zunft, guild.

<sup>1</sup> The simple substantive *Sicht* is only used in phrases like *auf Sicht*, (payable) at sight; *nach Sicht*, after sight. But it occurs in many compound substantives, as—*Absicht*, purpose; *Aussicht*, prospect; *Einsicht*, insight; *Rücksicht*, regard, &c., which are all of the feminine gender.

<sup>2</sup> *Vernunft*, pretence, and *Aufwand*, expense, are masculine.

<sup>3</sup> *Hanswurst*, jack-pudding, is masculine from its signification.

#### Notes.

1. There are to be added to this list a small number of substantives compounded with such feminine monosyllables as are no longer used as simple nouns. A few of the subjoined compounds, however, have assumed the feminine gender solely from their analogous mode of derivation, the simple noun never having been in use at all:—*die Ankunft*, arrival; *die Zukunft*, future, and others compounded with *kunft*; *die Andacht*, devotion (but *der Verdacht*, suspicion; *der Bedacht*, consideration); *die Rückkehr* and *die Wiederkehr*, return (but *der Verkehr*, intercourse); *die Gegenwart*, presence; *die Nothdurft*, exigency, necessities; *die Anstalt*, preparation, establishment; *die Nachricht*, intelligence (but *der Bericht*, report); *die Einfalt*, simplicity; *die Sorgfalt*, carefulness; *die Arbeit*, labour; *die Vernunft*, reason; *die Verzicht*, renunciation.

2. The seemingly abnormal gender of many monosyllabic feminine substantives is to be accounted for by their derivation. A considerable number of words contained in the above list are formed from stems by means of a change of vowel, and have at the same time assumed, in place of the old High-German *a* or *i*, the termination *e*, or the hard or soft lingual consonant with or without *e* (*t*, *te*, *b*, *be*). Substantives of this description, with very few exceptions, are of the feminine gender. This is the reason why most words ending in *t* or *b* in the preceding list are feminine; as, among others—*Bucht* from *biegen*; *Fahrt* and *Furt* from *fahren*; *Flucht* from *fliegen*; *Gluth* from *glühen*; *Gruft* from *graben*; *Jagd* from *jagen*; *Macht* from *mögen*, *Nacht* from *nähen*; *Wacht* from

pflegen; Saat from säen; Schlacht from schlagen; Schrift from schreiben; Schuld from the old High-German *scolan*—that is, sollen, shall, to be obliged; Thut from thun; Trift from treiben; Wucht from wiegen; Zucht from ziehen; Zunft from the old High-German *ziman*—that is, to come together, &c. Those stems which have, after a liquid, adopted it instead of t, are of the same nature and follow the same gender, as—Brunst from brennen; Gunst from gönnen; Kunst from können; Schwulst from schwellen, &c. The same law of derivation accounts for the gender of some substantives with the augment ge, as—Gebärde, Geburt, Geschichte, and others. A few among the feminine monosyllables had in old High-German the termination *a*, which, though not supplied by *e* in new High-German, assigns them to the feminine gender, as—Qual, Scham, Zahl, Schär. Wein; in old High-German, *quaka*, *scama*, *zala*, *scara*, *pina*.

## b. NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES.

das Raß, carrion.	das Fach, compartment.
" Amt, office.	" Faß, cask.
" Bad, bath.	" Feld, field.
+ " Band, ribbon.	" Fell, skin.
" Beet, flower-bed.	" Fest, festival.
" Beil, hatchet.	" Fett, grease, fat.
" Bein, leg.	" Fleisch, flesh.
" Bett, bed.	" Floß, raft.
" Bier, beer.	" Garn, yarn.
" Bild, picture.	" Geld, money.
" Blatt, leaf.	" Gift, poison. <sup>1</sup>
" Blech, tin-plate.	" Glas, glass.
" Blei, lead.	" Gleis, track of a wheel.
" Blut, blood.	" Glied, limb.
" Boot, boat.	" Glück, luck.
" Brett, board.	" Gold, gold.
" Brod, bread.	" Grab, grave.
" Buch, book.	" Gras, grass.
+ " Bund, bundle.	" Gut, property, estate.
" Dach, roof.	" Haar, hair.
" Ding, thing.	+ " Harz, resin.
" Dorf, village.	" Haupt, head.
" Ei, egg.	" Haus, house.
" Eis, ice.	" Heer, army.
" Erz, ore.	" Heft, handle, hilt

<sup>1</sup> Die Wittgift, dowry, is a compound of the obsolete word *bie Gift*, gift, present.

das Heil, prosperity.	das Mehl, flour.
" Hemd, shirt.	† " Mensch, wench.
" Herz, heart.	" Merk, mark, sign.
" Heu, hay.	" Moor, moor, fen.
" Hirn, brain.	" Moos, moss.
" Holz, wood.	" Mus, pap, jam.
" Horn, horn.	" Nest, nest.
" Huhn, fowl.	" Netz, net.
" Jahr, year.	" Obst, fruit.
" Joch, yoke.	" Ohr, ear.
" Kalb, calf.	" Öl, oil.
" Kind, child.	" Paar, pair.
" Kinn, chin.	" Pech, pitch.
" Kleid, garment.	" Pfand, pledge.
" Knie, knee.	" Pferd, horse.
" Korn, corn.	" Pfund, pound.
" Kraut, herb.	" Pult, desk.
" Kreuz, cross.	" Rad, wheel.
" Lamm, lamb.	" Recht, right, law.
" Land, land.	" Reh, roe.
" Laub, foliage.	" Reich, empire. <sup>2</sup>
" Leid, suffering.	† " Reis, twig.
" Licht, light.	" Ries, ream.
" Lied, song.	" Riff, riff, ridge.
" Lob, praise.	" Rind, neat, heifer.
" Loch, hole.	" Rohr, reed.
† " Lohn, wages.	" Ross, horse.
" Loos, lot.	" Salz, salt.
" Loth, plumb-line.	" Schaf, sheep.
" Maal, mole, mark.	" Scheit, log of wood.
" Mahl, meal, repast.	" Schiff, ship.
" Mal, time. <sup>1</sup>	† " Schild, sign-board.
" Malz, malt.	" Schilf, rush.
† " Marf, marrow.	" Schloß, lock; castle.
" Maas, measure.	" Schmalz, grease, lard.
" Maul, mouth (of beasts).	" Schock, number of
" Meer, sea.	sixty. <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As in das erste Mal, the first time; das zweite Mal, the second time.

<sup>2</sup> Reich, extent, sphere, compass, is masculine.

<sup>3</sup> Das Schock is used of things sold by number, as—ein Schock Birnen, sixty pears.

das Schrot, due weight ;	das Volk, nation.
small shot.	" Wachs, wax.
" Schwein, pig.	" Wammis, vest, jacket.
" Schwert, sword.	" Weh, wo.
" Seil, rope.	† " Wehr, wear.
" Sieb, sieve.	" Weib, woman.
" Spiel, play.	" Werg, tow.
† " Stift, a foundation.	" Werk, work.
" Stroh, straw.	" Wild, game.
" Stück, piece.	" Wohl, wellbeing.
" Tau, cable.	" Wort, word. <sup>1</sup>
" Thal, valley.	" Wrack, wreck.
† " Theil, share, portion.	" Zelt, tent.
" Thier, animal.	" Zeug, stuff.
† " Thor, gate.	" Ziel, limit.
" Tuch, cloth.	" Zinn, tin.
" Vieh, cattle.	

<sup>1</sup> Antwort, answer, is feminine.

Note.

The following compounds are also neuter, the simple nouns of which they are formed not being used:—das Antlitz, face; das Begehrt, desire; das Besteck, case (of instruments); das Dreieck, triangle; das Viereck, square; and others compounded with Eck, corner; das Kleinod, jewel; das Verbot, prohibition (analogous with das Gebot, commandment); das Verteck, deck; das Verließ, dungeon. Das Elend, misery, is a contraction for the old High-German *eli-lenti* (in middle High-German *ellende*), which means 'another land, foreign land, exile.'

2. Substantives ending in el, em, en, er, ing, ling, ig, sam, are masculine.

The terminations el, en, er, ing, however, are subject to the following exceptions.

Note.

The subjoined lists of exceptions are considerably swelled by a great number of substantives taken from the Latin and Greek languages. Although slightly altered in form, they have nevertheless in most instances retained their original gender, as—die Fabel, from the Latin *fabula*; die Insel, from *insula*; die Regel, from *regula*; die Parabel, from the Greek *παράβολή* (*parabole*); die Ceder, from the Latin *cedrus*; das Orakel, from *oraculum*; das Kloster, from *claustrum*; das Siegel, from *sigillum*, &c. There are also included in the following lists such substantives as fall under the general rules in §§ 129 and 131, but they are repeated here for the sake of completeness.



## a. FEMININE EXCEPTIONS:—

IN el—

die Achsel, shoulder.	die Mistel, mistletoe.
" Ampel, lamp.	" Muschel, shell.
" Amsel, black-bird.	" Nadel, needle.
" Angel, hook.	" Nessel, nettle.
" Aurikel, auricula.	" Nudel, vermicelli.
" Bibel, Bible.	" Orgel, organ.
† " Bußel, boss.	" Pappel, poplar.
" Cymbel, cymbal.	" Parabel, parable.
" Dattel, date.	" Primel, primrose.
" Deichsel, carriage-pole.	" Ranunkel, ranunculus.
" Distel, thistle.	" Raspel, rasp.
" Droffel, thrush.	" Rassel, rattle.
" Eichel, acorn.	" Regel, rule.
" Fabel, fable.	" Runzel, wrinkle.
" Fackel, torch.	" Schachtel, band-box.
" Fessel, fetter.	" Schaufel, shovel.
" Fibel, spelling-book.	" Schaufel, swing.
" Formel, formula.	" Schindel, shingle.
" Gabel, fork.	" Schüssel, dish.
† " Geißel, scourge.	" Semmel, roll of bread.
" Gondel, gondola.	" Sichel, sickle.
" Gurgel, throat.	" Spindel, spindle.
" Hechel, heckle.	" Staffel, step of a ladder.
" Hummel, humble-bee.	" Stoppel, stubble.
" Insel, island.	" Striegel, curry-comb.
" Kanzel, pulpit.	" Tafel, long table.
" Kartoffel, potato.	" Tordel, tassel.
" Koppel, leash; brace of dogs.	" Trommel, drum.
" Kugel, ball.	" Trüffel, truffle.
" Kuppel, cupola.	" Wachtel, quail.
" Kurbel, handle, crank.	" Waffel, wafer (a kind of cake).
† " Mandel, almond.	" Windel, swaddling-cloth.
† " Mangel, mangle.	" Wurzel, root.
" Mißpel, medlar.	" Zwiebel, onion.

IN *er*—

die Ader, vein.	die Leier, lyre.
" Aſter, aster.	† " Leiter, ladder.
" Aüſter, oyster.	" Marter, torture.
" Blatter, blister.	" Mauer, wall.
" Butter, butter.	" Mutter, mother.
" Ceder, cedar.	" Natter, adder.
" Dauer, duration.	" Nummer, number.
" Elſter, magpie.	" Oper, opera.
" Faſer, fibre.	" Otter, otter.
" Feder, feather, pen.	" Rüſter, elm.
" Feier, celebration.	" Scheuer, barn.
" Foſter, rack.	" Schleuder, sling.
" Halfter, halter.	" Schulter, shoulder.
" Kammer, chamber.	† " Steuer, tax.
" Keſter, wine-press.	" Tochter, daughter.
† " Kiefer, pine.	" Trauer, mourning.
" Klammer, cramp-iron.	" Veſper, even-tide, vespers.
" Klapper, rattle.	" Wimper, eyelash.
" Lauer, lurking-place.	" Ziffer, cipher.
" Leber, liver.	" Zither, guitar.

## Notes.

1. In some of these feminine substantives *er* is, strictly speaking, not a suffix, but forms part of the stem, as in *Feier*, *Mauer*, *Scheuer*, *Dauer*, *kauer*, *Steuer*, *Trauer*; in old High-German *vira*, *mura*, *sciura*, &c. This old termination *a*, although in these instances not supplied by *e*, accounts for their having the feminine gender.

2. The names of rivers ending in *er* or *el* are also feminine, according to the general rule in § 131, 3; *e.g.*—die *Ober*, die *Weſer*, die *Alder*, die *Noſel*, die *Wiſſel*.

## b. NEUTER EXCEPTIONS:—

IN *el*—

daß Bündel, bundle.	daß Oraſel, oracle.
" Dunkel, darkness.	" Rudel, herd, flock.
" Exempel, example.	Scharmügel, skirmish.
" Kapitel, chapter.	Segel, sail.
† " Mandel, number of fifteen. <sup>1</sup>	Siegel, seal.
" Mittel, means.	Uebel, evil.
	Wiſſel, weasel.

<sup>1</sup> The word *Mandel* is used of things sold by number.

## IN en—

das Almosen, alms.	das Laken, sheet (bed-
" Becken, basin.	clothes).
" Eisen, iron.	" Lehen, sief.
" Füllen, colt.	" Wappen, coat-of-arms.
" Kissen, cushion.	" Zeichen, token.

And all infinitives when used as substantives.

## IN er—

das Abenteuer, adventure.	† das Messer, knife.
" Alter, age.	" Nieder, bodice.
† " Bauer, bird-cage.	" Muster, pattern.
" Eiter, pus.	" Opfer, sacrifice.
" Euter, udder.	" Pflaster, plaster.
" Fenster, window.	" Polster, cushion.
" Fuder, load.	" Pulver, powder.
" Feuer, fire.	" Register, register.
" Fieber, fever.	" Ruder, oar.
" Futter, fodder.	" Schauer, shower.
" Gatter, grate, railing.	" Scepter, or Scepter,
" Gitter, trellis.	sceptre.
" Kloster, cloister.	" Silber, silver.
" Kupfer, copper.	† " Steuer, helm.
" Lachter, fathom.	" Theater, theatre.
" Lager, couch.	" Ufer, shore.
" Laster, vice.	" Wasser, water.
" Leder, leather.	" Wetter, weather.
" Luder, carrion.	" Wunder, wonder.
" Malter, a grain measure.	" Zimmer, apartment.

## Note.

Münster, minster, occurs both as *masculine*—from its present German form—and as *neuter*—from its derivation from the Latin *monasterium*.

## EXCEPTION IN ing:—

das Messing, brass.

3. Substantives ending in e, ung, heit, feit, schaft, end, in, et, are feminine.

## a. MASCULINE EXCEPTIONS IN e:—

der Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet.	der Schade, injury.
" Friede, peace.	" Wille, will.
" Funke, spark.	" Affe, monkey.
" Gedanke, thought.	" Drache, dragon.
" Glaube, faith.	" Falke, falcon.
" Haufe, heap.	" Hase, hare.
" Name, name.	" Löwe, lion.
" Same, seed.	" Rabe, raven.
	" Käse, cheese.

And names of male persons ; as—der Bote, the messenger ;  
der Knabe, the boy, &c.

## b. NEUTER EXCEPTIONS IN e:—

das Auge, eye.      das Ende, end.      † das Erbe, inheritance.

## EXCEPTIONS IN ung, schaft, end:—

der Hornung, February.	der Abend, evening.
das Petschaft, seal.	das Dugend, dozen.

## Note.

The terminations ut and at occur only in a very small number of originally German words which take the feminine gender ; namely—die Armut, poverty ; die Heimat, home ; die Heirat(h), marriage. Der Zierat, ornament, is an exception. Foreign words in ut and at do not come under this rule.

4. Substantives ending in chen, lein, sal, sel, niß, thum, are neuter.

## EXCEPTIONS IN niß:—

die Bedrängniß, distress.	die Fäulniß, putrefaction.
" Befugniß, authority.	" Finsterniß, darkness.
" Besümmerniß, sorrow.	" Kenntniß, knowledge.
" Besorgniß, apprehension.	" Trockniß, drought.
" Betrübniß, affliction.	" Verdammniß, damnation.
" Bemandniß, conjuncture.	" Verderbniß, corruption (is also used as neuter).
" Empfängniß, conception.	" Versäumniß, neglect, omission.
† " Erkenntniß, cognition.	" Wildniß, wilderness.
" Erlaubniß, permission.	
" Ersparniß, savings.	

IN *ſal*:—

die (or <i>daß</i> ) <i>Drangſal</i> ,	die <i>Mühsal</i> , great trouble.
oppression, calamity.	" <i>Trübsal</i> , tribulation.

IN *ſel*:—

der *Stöpsel*, stopper, cork.

IN *thum*:—

der <i>Irrthum</i> , error.	der (or <i>daß</i> ) <i>Wachsthum</i> ,
" <i>Reichtum</i> , riches.	growth.

5. Substantives which have the augment *ge* are neuter, with the following exceptions:—

*a.* MASCULINE—

der <i>Gebrauch</i> , usage.	der <i>Geruch</i> , smell.
" <i>Gedanke</i> , thought.	" <i>Gesang</i> , singing.
" <i>Gefallen</i> , favour.	" <i>Geschmack</i> , taste.
+ " <i>Gehalt</i> , value, contents.	" <i>Gestank</i> , stink.
" <i>Genuß</i> , enjoyment.	" <i>Gewinn</i> , gain.

*b.* FEMININE—

die <i>Gebärde</i> , mien.	die <i>Genüge</i> , sufficiency.
" <i>Gebühr</i> , propriety.	" <i>Geschichte</i> , history.
" <i>Geburt</i> , birth.	" <i>Geschwulst</i> , swelling.
" <i>Geduld</i> , patience.	" <i>Gestalt</i> , shape.
" <i>Gefahr</i> , danger.	" <i>Gewähr</i> , security, guarantee.
" <i>Gemeinde</i> , community, parish.	" <i>Gewalt</i> , power.

The names of persons are also excepted, their gender being determined by their meaning; and likewise substantives ending in *ung*, *heit*, *feit*, *ſchaft*, *ſam*, which take the gender assigned to them by their termination.

6. Compound substantives follow the gender of their last component. *Stand*, for example, being of the masculine gender, *Verſtand*, *Aufſtand*, *Zuſtand*, *Gegenſtand*, *Umſtand*, &c., are also masculine. Similarly, *Buch* being neuter, *Handbuch*, *Taſchenbuch*, *Leſebuch*, are likewise neuter.

A few substantives compounded with *Muth* are excepted, namely :—

die Anmuth, grace.	die Sanftmuth, meekness.
" Demuth, humility.	" Schwmuth, melancholy.
" Großmuth, generosity.	" Wehmuth, sorrowful-
" Langmuth, long-suffering.	ness.

Also der *Mittwoch*, Wednesday, according to the analogy of the other days of the week.

7. Foreign substantives usually retain their original gender; as—der *Kerker*, prison, from *carcer*; die *Natur*, nature, from *natura*; das *Kloster*, cloister, from *claustrum*. Hence all substantives ending in *ie*, *ion*, *tät*, *ig*, *enz*, *ur*, are feminine.

Some of those, however, which are assimilated in their form to substantives originally German, have assumed a gender analogous with their form, not with their origin. The following are worthy of special notice :—

#### a. MASCULINE—

- der *Altar*, altar, from the Latin *altare*, n.
- " or das *Katheber*, lecturing-desk, Latin *cathedra*, f.
- " *Körper*, body, Latin *corpus*, n.
- " *Marſch*, march, French *la marche*, f.
- " *Palast*, palace, Latin *palatium*, n.
- " *Pfeffer*, pepper, Latin *piper*, n.
- " *Punkt*, point, Latin *punctum*, n.
- " *Purpur*, purple, Latin *purpura*, f.
- " *Ruin*, ruin, Latin *ruina*, f.
- " *Salat*, salad, French *la salade*, f.
- " *Tempel*, temple, Latin *templum*, n.
- " *Tribut*, tribute, Latin *tributum*, n.

#### b. FEMININE—

- die *Bibel*, Bible, Greek *βιβλίον* (*biblion*), n.
- " *Gymbel*, cymbal, Latin *cymbalum*, n.
- " *Etage*, story of a house, French *l'étage*, m.
- " *Kanone*, cannon, French *le canon*, m.
- " *Lilie*, lily, Latin *lilium*, n.

- die Melone, melon, French *le melon*, m.  
 „ Brämie, premium, Latin *praemium*, n.  
 „ Rosine, raisin, French *le raisin*, m.  
 „ Vocabel, vocable, Latin *vocabulum*, n.  
 „ Zitrone, lemon, French *le citron*, m.

## c. NEUTER—

- das Bajonet, bayonet, French *la bayonnette*, f.  
 „ Echo, echo, Latin *echo*, f.  
 „ Fenster, window, Latin *fenestra*, f.  
 „ Fieber, fever, Latin *febris*, f.  
 „ Krokodil, crocodile, Latin *crocodilus*, m.  
 „ Labyrinth, labyrinth, Latin *labyrinthus*, m.  
 „ Paradies, paradise, Latin *paradisus*, m.  
 „ Pulver, powder, Latin *pulvis*, m.  
 „ Consulat, consulate, Latin *consulatus*, m.

And other substantives in at, derived from Latin masculines ending in—*atus*.

## Note.

As the French language has no neuter gender, names of things which in it are masculine are in many instances made neuter in German; but some remain masculine. For example:—das Billet, ticket, *le billet*; das Genie, genius, *le génie*; das Porträt, portrait, *le portrait*; das Terrain, ground, locality, *le terrain*; das Resultat, result, *le résultat*; das Quartier, quarter, *le quartier*. But masculine—der Paß, step, *le pas*; der Degout, disgust, *le dégoût*, &c.

§ 133. A number of substantives have two genders, with a different signification for each. In some instances this is attributable to the fact, that in different dialects different genders had sometimes been assigned to the same word, and that the High-German language has availed itself of this circumstance to impart to such words a diversity of meaning according to their gender. But in other substantives the difference of gender is caused by their belonging to two different stems. Words of the latter description are marked in the subjoined list by an asterisk:—

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| der Band, volume of a book. | das Band, ribbon, tie.         |
| „ Bauer, peasant.           | „ Bauer, bird-cage.            |
| „ Buckel, hump.             | die Buckel, boss.              |
| „ Bund, alliance.           | das Bund, bundle (of hay, &c.) |
| „ Chor, chorus.             | „ Chor, choir.                 |

der Erbe, heir.	daß Erbe, inheritance.
die Erkenntniß, cognition.	" Erkenntniß, legal sentence.
der Gehalt, value, contents.	" Gehalt, salary.
* " Geißel, or Geißel, hostage.	die Geißel, scourge.
" Haft, hold, clasp, rivet.	" Haft, custody.
* " Harz, Harz mountains.	daß Harz, resin.
* " Heide, heathen.	die Heide, heath.
" Hut, hat.	" Hut, heed; pasture.
* " Kiefer, jaw.	" Kiefer, pine.
" Kunde, customer.	" Kunde, intelligence.
* " Leiter, conductor.	" Leiter, ladder.
" Lohn, reward.	daß Lohn, wages.
*die Mandel, almond.	" Mandel, number of fifteen.
*der Mangel, want, defect.	die Mangel, mangle.
*die Mark, boundary, mark (eight ounces of silver).	daß Mark, marrow.
*der Marsch, march, marching.	die Marsch, marsh, fen.
* " Mast, mast of a ship.	" Mast, fattening of cattle.
" Mensch, man.	daß Mensch, wench.
* " Messer, measurer.	" Messer, knife.
* " Reis, rice.	" Reis, twig.
* " Ohm (or Oheim), uncle.	die Ohm, (or Ohm), awm.
" Schild, shield.	daß Schild, sign-board.
" Schmulst, bombast.	die Schmulst, swelling, tumour.
" See, lake.	" See, sea.
" Sprosse, shoot, sprout.	" Sprosse, step of a ladder.
*die Steuer, tax, contribution.	daß Steuer, helm.
der Stift, tag, peg.	" Stift, ecclesiastical foundation.
" Theil, part of a whole.	" Theil, share, portion.
* " Thor, fool.	" Thor, gate.
" Verdienst, profit of labour.	" Verdienst, merit.
die Wehr, defence.	" Wehr, wear, dam.
*der Weiße (or Weiß), kite.	die Weiße, consecration.

State the gender of the following substantives, and the reasons :—

Kind, child. Pferd, horse. Liebling, favourite. Mensch, human being. Sonntag, Sunday. Frühling, spring. Winter, winter. Jahr, year. Mai, May. Diamant, diamond. Brocken, Brocken (name of a mountain). Weser, Weser (river).



Weichsel, Vistula (river). Rhein, Rhine (river). Neckar, Neckar (river). Themse, Thames. England, England. Schweiz, Switzerland. Türkei, Turkey. Gold, gold. Eisen, iron. Lom-  
 bad, pinchbeck. Silber, silver. Lesen, reading (an infinitive).  
 Leben, life (an infinitive). Für und Wider, the pro and  
 contra. Stern, star. Tisch, table. Baum, tree. Bank,  
 bench. Uhr, watch. Stadt, town. Zahl, number. Schlacht,  
 battle. Schrift, writing. That, deed. Jagd, chase. Kunst,  
 art. Ankunft, arrival. Andacht, devotion. Vernunft, reason.  
 Absicht, purpose. Buch, book. Dorf, village. Obst, fruit.  
 Haupthaar, hair of the head. Stadthor, gate of a town.  
 Wort, word. Antwort, answer. Verdeck, deck. Schlüssel,  
 key. Vogel, bird. Athem, breath. Schatten, shadow.  
 Hammer, hammer. Gabel, fork. Schüssel, dish. Fabel,  
 fable. Schulter, shoulder. Kammer, chamber. Butter,  
 butter. Segel, sail. Becken, basin. Zeichen, token. Wetter,  
 weather. Ufer, shore. Gehorsam, obedience. Honig, honey.  
 Hoffnung, hope. Freiheit, liberty. Freundschaft, friendship.  
 Krankheit, illness. Gerechtigkeit, justice. Unterhaltung, con-  
 versation. Schäferin, shepherdess. Malerei, art of painting.  
 Gegend, country. Landschaft, landscape. Seele, soul. Straße,  
 street. Name, name. Wille, will. Löwe, lion. Abend,  
 evening. Heimat, home. Armut, poverty. Mädchen, girl.  
 Knäblein, little boy. Herzogthum, dukedom. Bildniß, portrait.  
 Räthsel, riddle. Schicksal, fate. Kenntniß, knowledge. Irr-  
 thum, error. Reichthum, riches. Gesetz, law. Gebet, prayer.  
 Gefühl, feeling. Geschmack, taste. Gewinn, gain. Geduld,  
 patience. Geburt, birth. Gebärde, mien. Geschichte, history.  
 Gefährte, companion. Gesellschaft, company. Gewißheit,  
 certainty. Genehmigung, consent. Lesebuch, reading-book.  
 Feiertag, holiday. Aufstand, insurrection. Verstand, under-  
 standing. Einfluß, influence. Unschuld, innocence. Rind-  
 fleisch, beef. Wohlgeruch, fragrance. Traumgezicht, vision.  
 Großmuth, generosity. Sanftmuth, meekness. Natur, nature.  
 Nation, nation. Philosophie, philosophy. Musik, music.  
 Majestät, majesty. Palast, palace. Körper, body. Tempel,  
 temple. Bibel, Bible. Citrone, lemon. Fenster, window.  
 Paradies, paradise. Billet, ticket. Resultat, result. Band,  
 volume. Band, ribbon. Steuer, tax. Steuer, helm. Lohn,  
 reward. Lohn, wages. See, lake. See, sea. Schild, shield.  
 Schild, sign-board.

## XV.

### THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 134. Declension in general consists, like conjugation, in the affixing of terminations, and in the case of substantives, sometimes also in the modifying of the vowel of the stem. In declension are distinguished two numbers—namely, singular and plural; and four cases in each number—namely, nominative, genitive (or possessive), dative (or person-case), accusative (or objective).

§ 135. There are two declensions—the *strong* (or ancient), and the *weak* (or modern). Every substantive is declined according to either the one or the other.

*Words of the strong declension* take in the singular the termination *es* for the genitive, and *e* for the dative, the accusative being the same as the nominative. In the plural, they take *e* in the nominative, genitive, and accusative, and *en* in the dative. *Words of the weak declension* take the termination *en* (or simply *n*) in all cases except the nominative singular. A number of words of the strong declension, moreover, have their vowel modified in the plural, whilst all words of the weak declension leave their vowel unchanged.

Certain words of the strong declension lose the vowel *e* in all the inflectional terminations, so that the only terminations which require to be affixed are—*s* in the genitive singular, and *n* in the dative plural, if the word itself does not end in *n* or *ni*. This is called the *contracted form* of the strong declension.

Another class of words of the strong declension take in the plural the enlarged termination *er* in the nominative, genitive, and accusative, and *ern* in the dative; all the cases of the singular, however, retaining the primary terminations of the strong declension. This is called the *enlarged form* of the strong declension.

§ 136. *The strong declension* comprises substantives of all three genders, but principally of the masculine and neuter. A small number of feminine substantives are declined by the primary form, two by the contracted form, but none

by the enlarged. The *weak declension* comprehends only masculine and feminine substantives.

§ 137. All feminine substantives remain unchanged in the singular, whether they belong to the strong or weak declension in the plural.

*Note.*

The general practice of leaving the singular of feminine substantives unchanged was not introduced till the last two or three centuries. In the old High-German language all feminine substantives were declined both in the singular and plural; and in the middle High-German this custom was kept up nearly in its whole extent. But in the language of the present day it occurs only in some peculiar expressions (as—zu Gunsten, in behalf; auf Erden, upon earth; in Gnaden, with favour, &c.), and in poetry; e. g.—Zerstreuet euch, ihr Lämmer auf der Heiden, *Sch.*, disperse, you lambs, upon the heath. Schau' wie das flinkert in der Sonnen, *Sch.*, see how that glitters in the sun. Bis zu einer goldenen Pforten du gelangst, *Sch.*, till thou arrivest at a golden gate. Betrüglich sind die Güter dieser Erden, *Sch.*, the things of this earth are deceptive.

### § 138. TABULAR VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS OF BOTH DECLENSIONS.

#### STRONG DECLENSION.

	PRIMARY FORM.	CONTRACTED FORM.	ENLARGED FORM.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> —	—	—
	<i>Gen.</i> (e)ß, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> No change in feminine substantives.	ß,	(e)ß.
	<i>Dat.</i> (e), <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	—	(e).
	<i>Acc.</i> — <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	—	—
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> e, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> Some with modification of vowel.	— <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> Some with modification of vowel.	er, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span> Modification of vowel.
	<i>Gen.</i> e, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	— <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	er, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
	<i>Dat.</i> en, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	n, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	ern, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>
	<i>Acc.</i> e, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	— <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>	er, <span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">}</span>

#### WEAK DECLENSION.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> —	} No change in feminines.
	<i>Gen.</i> en or n,	
	<i>Dat.</i> en or n,	
	<i>Acc.</i> en or n,	
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> en or n.	
	<i>Gen.</i> en or n.	
	<i>Dat.</i> en or n.	
	<i>Acc.</i> en or n.	

## Note.

The dropping of the vowel *e* in the inflectional terminations of the genitive and dative singular in the strong declension, is euphonic. In words of more than one syllable having an unaccented suffix, it is generally thrown out in the genitive; as—*der König*, gen. *des Königs*; *der Reichthum*, gen. *des Reichthums*; *der Jüngling*, gen. *des Jünglings*; *der Monat*, gen. *des Monats*. It is usually omitted in monosyllabic words also, if they have a long vowel and end in a liquid; as—*der Thron*, gen. *des Throns*; *das Thal*, gen. *des Thals*. But if a substantive has a short vowel and ends in a mute consonant, especially in *h*, *b*, *t*, *ft*, *ch*, *g*, *f*, the *e* is commonly retained. After *s*, *ß* or *ff*, *sch*, and *z*, it can never be thrown out. In the dative, however, the vowel *e* is generally retained even in such words as admit of its omission in the genitive; except when a word without an article follows after a preposition, as *in—von Gold*, of gold; *von Stahl*, of steel; *mit Fleiß*, with industry; *aus Geiz*, from avarice; *zu Fuß*, on foot; *von Ort zu Ort*, from place to place; *mit Weib und Kind*, with wife and child, &c.

In the weak declension, the vowel *e* is always dropped in words ending in *e*, *i*, or *r*; as—*der Knabe*, gen. *des Knaben*; *der Baier*, plur. *die Baiern*; *die Feder*, plur. *die Federn*; *die Schüssel*, plur. *die Schüsseln*.

## PARADIGMS OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

## a. PRIMARY FORM—

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>der Sohn</i> , the son.	<i>die Kunst</i> , the art.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Sohnes</i> , of the son.	<i>der Kunst</i> , of the art.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Sohne</i> , to the son.	<i>der Kunst</i> , to the art.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Sohn</i> , the son.	<i>die Kunst</i> , the art.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	<i>die Söhne</i> , the sons.	<i>die Künste</i> , the arts.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Söhne</i> , of the sons.	<i>der Künste</i> , of the arts.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Söhnen</i> , to the sons.	<i>den Künsten</i> , to the arts.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Söhne</i> , the sons.	<i>die Künste</i> , the arts.

## b. CONTRACTED FORM—

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	<i>der Vater</i> , the father.	<i>der Hafen</i> , the harbour.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des Vaters</i> , of the father.	<i>des Hafens</i> , of the harbour.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem Vater</i> , to the father.	<i>dem Hafen</i> , to the harbour.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den Vater</i> , the father.	<i>den Hafen</i> , the harbour.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	<i>die Väter</i> , the fathers.	<i>die Häfen</i> , the harbours.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>der Väter</i> , of the fathers.	<i>der Häfen</i> , of the harbours.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>den Vätern</i> , to the fathers.	<i>den Häfen</i> , to the harbours.
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die Väter</i> , the fathers.	<i>die Häfen</i> , the harbours.

## c. ENLARGED FORM.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	das Land, the country.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Landes, of the country.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Lande, to the country.
<i>Acc.</i>	das Land, the country.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Länder, the countries.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Länder, of the countries.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Ländern, to the countries.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Länder, the countries.

## PARADIGMS OF THE WEAK DECLENSION.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Graf, the count.	die Frau, the woman.
<i>Gen.</i>	des Grafen, of the count.	der Frau, of the woman.
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Grafen, to the count.	der Frau, to the woman.
<i>Acc.</i>	den Grafen, the count.	die Frau, the woman.
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Grafen, the counts.	die Frauen, the women.
<i>Gen.</i>	der Grafen, of the counts.	der Frauen, of the women.
<i>Dat.</i>	den Grafen, to the counts.	den Frauen, to the women.
<i>Acc.</i>	die Grafen, the counts.	die Frauen, the women.

## WORDS TO BE DECLINED AFTER THE ABOVE SPECIMENS.

(Those marked with an asterisk take a modified vowel in the plural).

1. STRONG DECLENSION.—a. PRIMARY FORM:—\*der Ton, the sound; \*der Strom, the stream; der Stein, the stone; \*der Baum, the tree; \*der Fuß, the foot; \*der Zahn, the tooth; \*der Fluß, the river; der Freund, the friend; der Feind, the enemy; der Stern, the star; das Pferd, the horse; das Schiff, the ship; das Schaf, the sheep; das Werk, the work. \*Die Hand, the hand; \*die Bank, the bench; \*die Gans, the goose; \*die Frucht, the fruit; \*die Kraft, the strength; \*die Nacht, the night.

b. CONTRACTED FORM:—\*der Vogel, the bird; der Lehrer, the teacher; der Schüler, the scholar; \*der Bruder, the brother; der Löffel, the spoon; \*der Apfel, the apple; \*der

Garten, the garden; das Messer, the knife; das Zeichen, the sign; das Mädchen, the girl.

c. ENLARGED FORM :—\*das Band, the ribbon; \*das Blatt, the leaf; \*das Thal, the valley; \*das Haus, the house; \*das Volk, the people; \*das Buch, the book; das Kind, the child; das Bild, the picture; \*der Mann, the man; der Geist, the spirit.

2. WEAK DECLENSION :—der Prinz, the prince; der Mensch, the human being; der Narr, the fool; der Ochse, the ox; der Knabe, the boy; der Nefte, the nephew; der Löwe, the lion. Die Zahl, the number; die Uhr, the watch; die Burg, the castle; die Schönheit, the beauty; die Tugend, the virtue; die Blume, the flower; die Stube, the room; die Fackel, the torch; die Schüssel, the dish; die Nadel, the needle; die Schulter, the shoulder; die Mauer, the wall.

#### MODIFICATION OF VOWEL IN THE PLURAL.

§ 139. The modification of the vowels a, o, u, and of the diphthong au, takes place in the formation of the plural of words of the strong declension only.

1. Monosyllables of the masculine and feminine genders declined according to the primary form, are subject to the modification of the vowel; as—der Sohn, plural die Söhne; die Kunst, plural die Künste.

The following masculines are excepted :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Adler, eagle;	die Adler.
“ Aar, eagle;	“ Aare.
“ Arm, arm;	“ Arme.
“ Born, well;	“ Borne.
“ Docht, wick;	“ Dochte.
“ Dolch, dagger;	“ Dolche.
“ Dom, dome;	“ Dome.
“ Druck, pressure, print;	“ Drucke. <sup>1</sup>
“ Grad, degree;	“ Grade.
“ Gurt, girth;	“ Gurte.
“ Halm, blade of grass;	“ Halme.
“ Hauch, breath;	“ Hauche.

<sup>1</sup> In the compounds of Druck, the plural has a modified vowel; as—Abdrücke, copies; Ausdrücke, expressions; Nachdrücke, counterfeit editions.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Huf, hoof ;	die Hufe.
" Hund, dog ;	" Hunde.
" Kork, cork ;	" Korke.
" Lachs, salmon ;	" Lachse.
" Lack, lac ;	" Lacke.
" Laut, sound ;	" Laute.
" Luchs, lynx ;	" Luchse.
" Molch, salamander ;	" Molche.
" Mond, moon ;	" Monde.
" Mord, murder ;	" Morde.
" Ort, place ;	" Orte (§ 148).
" Park, park ;	" Parke.
" Pfad, path ;	" Pfade.
" Pfau, peacock ;	" Pfaue.
" Pol, pole ;	" Pole.
" Puls, pulse ;	" Pulse.
" Punkt, point ;	" Punkte.
" Schuft, mean fellow ;	" Schufte.
" Schuh, shoe ;	" Schuhe.
" Staar, starling ;	" Staare.
" Stoff, material ;	" Stoffe.
" Sund, strait, sound ;	" Sunde.
" Tag, day ;	" Tage.
" Tact, tact, bar (in music) ;	" Takte.
" Thron, throne ;	" Throne.
" Zoll, inch ;	" Zolle (§ 148).

## Note.

The above rule indirectly implies that neuter substantives, if declined after the primary form of the strong declension, do not undergo any change of vowel ; as—das Pfund, pound, plur. die Pfunde ; das Thor, gate, plur. die Thore ; das Schaf, sheep, plur. die Schafe. The following are excepted ; namely—das Floß, raft, plur. die Flüße ; das Rohr, cane, plur. die Röhre. Das Boot, boat, has both Bote and Boote ; the latter form is more correct.

2. The following substantives of the contracted form are also subject to the modification of the vowel :—

## α. MASCULINES—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Acker, field ;	die Aecker.
" Bruder, brother ;	" Brüder.
" Hammer, hammer ;	" Hämmer.
" Schwager, brother-in-law ;	" Schwäger.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Vater, father ;	die Väter.
" Boden, bottom, loft ;	" Böden.
" Faden, thread ;	" Fäden.
" Garten, garden ;	" Gärten.
" Graben, ditch ;	" Gräben.
" Hafen, harbour ;	" Häfen.
" Laden, shop ;	" Läden (§ 148).
" Ofen, stove ;	" Öfen.
" Schaden, damage ;	" Schäden.
der Apfel, apple ;	die Äpfel.
" Hammel, wether ;	" Hammel.
" Handel, affair, quarrel ;	" Händel.
" Mantel, cloak ;	" Mäntel.
" Nabel, navel ;	" Nabel.
" Nagel, nail ;	" Nägel.
" Sattel, saddle ;	" Sättel.
" Schnabel, beak ;	" Schnäbel.
" Vogel, bird ;	" Vögel.

## b. FEMININES—

die Mutter, mother ;	die Mütter.
" Tochter, daughter ;	" Töchter.

## c. NEUTER—

das Kloster, cloister ;	die Klöster.
-------------------------	--------------

All other words of the contracted form leave the vowel unchanged.

3. All substantives of the enlarged form are subject to the modification of the vowel ; as—das Land, country, plur. die Länder ; das Volk, people, plur. die Völker.

4. Substantives of foreign origin do *not* modify the vowel in the plural, except the following :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Abt, abbot ;	die Äbte.
" Altar, altar ;	" Altäre.
" Bischof, bishop ;	" Bischöfe.
" (or das) Chor, chorus, choir ;	" Chöre.
" Choral, choral ;	" Choräle.
" Canal, canal ;	" Canäle.



SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Kaplan, chaplain ;	die Kapläne.
" Kardinal, cardinal ;	" Kardinäle.
" Marsch, march ;	" Märsche.
" Morast, morass ;	" Moräste.
" Palast, palace ;	" Paläste.
" Papst, pope ;	" Päpste.
" Probst, prebendary ;	" Präbste.
" Hospital, } hospital ;	" Hospitäler.
" Spital, }	" Spitäler.

## Notes.

1. In words having a double a, one a is thrown out, when the modification is required; as—der Saal, saloon, plur. die Säle; das Raß, carrion, plur. die Raser.

2. An analogy for the modification of vowels presents itself in the English words 'man, men; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; goose, geese; mouse, mice.'

## SUBSTANTIVES DECLINED AFTER THE STRONG DECLENSION.

§ 140. Masculine and neuter substantives, in general, are declined after the strong declension.

§ 141. By the contracted form of the strong declension, in particular, are declined—

1. All masculine and neuter substantives ending in el, er, en, em, chen, lein, sel.

2. All neuter substantives having the augment ge, and ending in e.

3. der Käse, cheese.

§ 142. By the enlarged form of the strong declension, in particular, are declined—

1. The following few masculines :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Bösewicht, villain ;	die Bösewichter.
" Dorn, thorn ;	" Dörner (§ 148).
" Geist, spirit ;	" Geister.
" Gott, God ;	" Götter.
" Leib, body ;	" Leiber.
" Mann, man ;	" Männer.
" Ort, place ;	" Derter (§ 148).
" Rand, edge ;	" Ränder.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

der Vormund, guardian ;	die Vormünder.
" Wald, forest ;	" Wälder.
" Wurm, worm ;	" Würmer.

## 2. The following neuter substantives of one syllable :--

das Maß, carrion ;	die Aeser.
" Amt, office ;	" Aemter.
" Bad, bath ;	" Bäder.
" Band, ribbon ;	" Bänder (§ 148).
" Bild, picture ;	" Bilder.
" Blatt, leaf ;	" Blätter.
" Brett, board ;	" Bretter.
" Buch, book ;	Bücher.
" Dach, roof ;	Dächer.
" Dorf, village ;	Dörfer.
" Ei, egg ;	Eier.
" Fach, compartment ;	Fächer.
" Faß, cask ;	Fässer.
" Feld, field ;	Felder.
" Geld, money ;	Gelder.
" Glas, glass ;	Gläser.
" Glied, limb ;	Glieder.
" Grab, grave ;	Gräber.
" Gras, grass ;	Gräser.
" Gut, estate ;	Güter.
" Haupt, head ;	Häupter.
" Haus, house ;	Häuser.
" Holz, wood ;	Hölzer.
" Horn, horn ;	Hörner (§ 148).
" Huhn, fowl ;	Hühner.
" Kalb, calf ;	Kälber.
" Kind, child ;	Kinder.
" Kleid, garment ;	Kleider.
" Korn, grain ;	Körner.
" Kraut, herb ;	Kräuter.
" Lamm, lamb ;	Lämmer.
Land, country ;	" Länder.
Licht, light ;	" Lichter (§ 148).
Lied, song ;	" Lieder.
Loch, hole ;	" Löcher.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
das Maul, mouth ;	die Mäuler.
" Nest, nest ;	" Nester.
" Pfand, pledge ;	" Pfänder.
" Rad, wheel ;	" Räder.
" Reis, twig ;	" Reiser.
" Rind, neat ;	" Rinder.
" Schild, sign-board ;	" Schilder.
" Schloß, lock ;	" Schlösser.
" Schwert, sword ;	" Schwerter.
" Stift, ecclesiastical foundation ;	" Stifter.
" Thal, valley ;	" Thäler.
" Tuch, cloth ;	" Tücher.
" Volk, people ;	" Völker.
" Weib, woman ;	" Weiber.
" Wort, word ;	" Wörter (§ 148).

3. The following six neuters with the augment ge:—

das Gemach, apartment ;	die Gemächer.
" Gemüth, mind ;	" Gemüther.
" Geschlecht, sex ;	" Geschlechter.
" Gesicht, face ;	" Gesichter (§ 148).
" Gespenst, spectre ;	" Gespenster.
" Gewand, garment ;	" Gewänder.

4. All substantives ending in thum ; as—das Fürstenthum, principality, plur. die Fürstenthümer ; der Irrthum, error, plur. die Irrthümer.

§ 143. Only a small number of feminine substantives follow the strong declension, the singular remaining unchanged, however, according to § 137.

1. By the primary form are declined—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
die Angst, anguish ;	die Angste.
" Ausflucht, evasion ;	" Ausflüchte.
" Axt, axe ;	" Aexte.
" Bank, bench ;	" Bänke (§ 148).
" Braut, bride ;	" Bräute.
" Brust, breast ;	" Brüste.
" Faust, fist ;	" Fäuste.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
die Frucht, fruit ;	die Früchte.
" Gans, goose ;	" Gänse.
" Gruft, grave ;	" Grüste.
" Hand, hand ;	" Hände.
" Haut, skin ;	" Häute.
" Kluft, cleft ;	" Klüfte.
" Kraft, strength ;	" Kräfte.
" Kuh, cow ;	" Kühe.
" Kunst, art ;	" Künste.
" Laus, louse ;	" Läuse.
" Luft, air ;	" Lüfte.
" Lust, desire ;	" Lüste.
" Macht, power ;	" Mächte.
" Magd, maid-servant ;	" Mägde.
" Maus, mouse ;	" Mäuse.
" Nacht, night ;	" Nächte.
" Naht, seam ;	" Nähte.
" Noth, need ;	" Nöthe.
" Nuß, nut ;	" Nüsse.
" Sau, sow ;	" Säue (§ 148).
" Schnur, string ;	" Schnüre.
" Stadt, town ;	" Städte.
" Wand, wall ;	" Wände.
" Würst, sausage ;	" Würste.
" Zunft, guild ;	" Zünfte.
" Zusammenkunft, meeting ;	" Zusammenkünfte.
(No singular) ;	" Einkünfte, income, revenue.

And those ending in *niß*.

2. By the contracted form are declined—

die Mutter, mother ;	die Mütter.
" Tochter, daughter ;	" Töchter.

#### SUBSTANTIVES DECLINED AFTER THE WEAK DECLENSION.

§ 144. Feminine substantives generally follow the weak declension. The exceptions are mentioned in the preceding paragraph. The practice of leaving feminine substantives unchanged in the singular has been referred to in § 137.

Feminines ending in *in* take the usual termination *en* in the plural, but at the same time double the *n* of the derivative suffix; as—*Hirtin*, shepherdess, plur. *Hirtinnen*; *Heldin*, heroine, plur. *Heldinnen*; *Göttin*, goddess, plur. *Göttinnen*.

§ 145. Some masculine substantives likewise follow the weak declension; namely—

1. All those that end in *e*, except *der Käse*, cheese (§ 141, 3). Examples:—*der Bote*, messenger; *der Knabe*, boy; *der Schütze*, archer; *der Gefährte*, companion; *der Löwe*, lion; *der Hase*, hare. Also the names of nations ending in *e*, and some ending in *er* and *ar*; *e.g.*—*der Britte*, Briton; *der Preuße*, Prussian; *der Däne*, Dane; *der Türk(e)*, Turk; *der Mohr(e)*, Moor; *der Baier*, Bavarian; *der Kaffer*, Kaffir; *der Ungar*, Hungarian.

2. The following monosyllables:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>der Bär</i> , bear;	<i>die Bären</i> .
" <i>Christ</i> , Christian;	" <i>Christen</i> .
" <i>Fink</i> , finch;	" <i>Finken</i> .
" <i>Fürst</i> , prince;	" <i>Fürsten</i> .
" <i>Ges</i> , fop;	" <i>Gesen</i> .
" <i>Graf</i> , count;	" <i>Grafen</i> .
" <i>Held</i> , hero;	" <i>Helden</i> .
" <i>Herr</i> , master;	" <i>Herren</i> .
" <i>Hirt</i> , herdsman;	" <i>Hirten</i> .
" <i>Mensch</i> , man;	" <i>Menschen</i> .
" <i>Narr</i> , fool;	" <i>Narren</i> .
" <i>Nerv</i> , nerve;	" <i>Nerven</i> .
" <i>Ochs</i> , ox;	" <i>Ochsen</i> .
" <i>Prinz</i> , prince;	" <i>Prinzen</i> .
" <i>Thor</i> , fool;	" <i>Thoren</i> .

And the compounds—

<i>der Hagestolz</i> , old bachelor;	<i>die Hagestolzen</i> .
" <i>Vorfahr</i> , ancestor;	" <i>Vorfahren</i> .

**Note.**

The words mentioned under 2 were not originally monosyllables. They had in old High-German the termination *o* peculiar to adjectives, which in most instances passed into *e* in middle High-German; and even in the language of the present day this *c* is sometimes retained, as it generally is

in the words referred to under 1. For example:—old High-German *herro*, which is a contraction for *heriro*, meaning 'a higher one, a superior;' middle High-German *herre*, new High-German *Herr* or *Herre*. Old High-German *furisto*, the superlative of *furi*, 'before,' hence 'the foremost, the first;' middle High-German *vürste*; new High-German *Fürst*. Old High-German *mennisco*, an adjective formed from *man* by means of the suffix *isc*, modern *isch*, hence 'manlike, manly;' middle High-German *mensche*; new High-German *Mensch*. Old High-German *pero*; middle High-German *ber*; new High-German *Bär*. In the same manner *Graf*, *hinf*, *Dich*, and the rest, have thrown off the primitive termination.

## EXERCISE XXIV.

The trees blossom.<sup>1</sup> The fruit<sup>2</sup> of the tree is delicious.<sup>3</sup> I have lost a friend. My father has two brothers. Mr N. has three daughters and four<sup>4</sup> sons. [The] sleep<sup>5</sup> is the brother of [the] death.<sup>6</sup> I see the houses of the village. The barrels<sup>7</sup> are filled<sup>8</sup> with sugar.<sup>9</sup> The girl has put<sup>10</sup> the glasses and plates<sup>11</sup> upon<sup>12</sup> the table.<sup>13</sup> The information<sup>14</sup> was [being] brought to the king.<sup>15</sup> Have you been in<sup>16</sup> the apartments<sup>17</sup> of the king? I have lost a key.<sup>18</sup> Bring a hammer and some<sup>19</sup> nails. Are the apples ripe? The eggs are hard.<sup>20</sup> Do you know the road?<sup>21</sup> The road leads<sup>22</sup> over<sup>23</sup> the mountain.<sup>24</sup> We dismissed<sup>25</sup> the guide.<sup>26</sup> We had two guides. London is the market<sup>27</sup> of the world. Have you read the books? The children are well brought up.<sup>28</sup> The wheels<sup>29</sup> must be repaired.<sup>30</sup> I have bought some pictures.<sup>31</sup> Riches do not make happy.<sup>32</sup> [The] death heals<sup>33</sup> all<sup>34</sup> wounds.<sup>35</sup> Do you know the count and the countess?<sup>36</sup> I know the prince<sup>37</sup> and the princess.<sup>38</sup> The prince keeps<sup>39</sup> many<sup>40</sup> hounds.<sup>41</sup> He possesses<sup>42</sup> three

<sup>1</sup> To blossom, blühen. <sup>2</sup> Fruit, Frucht. <sup>3</sup> Delicious, köstlich. <sup>4</sup> Four, vier. <sup>5</sup> Sleep, Schlaf. <sup>6</sup> Death, Tod. <sup>7</sup> Barrel, Faß. <sup>8</sup> Filled, angefüllt. <sup>9</sup> Sugar, Zucker. <sup>10</sup> To put, setzen. <sup>11</sup> Plate, Teller. <sup>12</sup> Upon, auf, with the accusative. <sup>13</sup> Table, Tisch. <sup>14</sup> The information, die Nachricht. <sup>15</sup> King, König. <sup>16</sup> In, in, with the dative. <sup>17</sup> Apartment, Zimmer. <sup>18</sup> Key, Schlüssel. <sup>19</sup> Some, einige. <sup>20</sup> Hard, hart. <sup>21</sup> Road, Weg. <sup>22</sup> To lead, führen. <sup>23</sup> Over, über, with the accusative. <sup>24</sup> Mountain, Berg. <sup>25</sup> To dismiss, entlassen. <sup>26</sup> Guide, Führer. <sup>27</sup> Market, Markt. <sup>28</sup> Well brought up, wohl erzogen. <sup>29</sup> Wheel, Rad. <sup>30</sup> To repair, ausbessern. <sup>31</sup> Picture, Bild. <sup>32</sup> Happy, glücklich. <sup>33</sup> To heal, heilen. <sup>34</sup> All, alle. <sup>35</sup> Wound, Wunde. <sup>36</sup> Countess, Gräfin. <sup>37</sup> Prince, Prinz. <sup>38</sup> Princess, Prinzessin. <sup>39</sup> To keep, halten (see § 62, note 2). <sup>40</sup> Many, viele. <sup>41</sup> Hound, Jagdhund. <sup>42</sup> To possess, besitzen.

estates.<sup>43</sup> The queen<sup>44</sup> and the princesses are taking a drive.<sup>45</sup> The gardens are planted<sup>46</sup> with<sup>47</sup> trees and flowers. I have ordered<sup>48</sup> twelve<sup>49</sup> bottles<sup>50</sup> of wine. Has the shoemaker<sup>51</sup> sent<sup>52</sup> my shoes? The streets<sup>53</sup> of the town are very broad.<sup>54</sup> I have seen many towns. Truth is the blossom<sup>55</sup> of [the] liberty.<sup>56</sup> [The] hope<sup>57</sup> is the anchor<sup>58</sup> of the soul.<sup>59</sup> We heard the sounds<sup>60</sup> of a harp.<sup>61</sup> Bring a knife, a fork, and a spoon.<sup>62</sup> The knives are not clean.<sup>63</sup> Clean<sup>64</sup> the dishes<sup>65</sup> and plates. I have bought a table and some chairs.<sup>66</sup> The life<sup>67</sup> of [the] man is short.<sup>68</sup> The author<sup>69</sup> has dedicated<sup>70</sup> his work<sup>71</sup> to the queen. I admire<sup>72</sup> the beauties<sup>73</sup> of [the] nature.<sup>74</sup> Stories<sup>75</sup> were [being] told.<sup>76</sup> Have you answered<sup>77</sup> the questions?<sup>78</sup> I have drunk two cups<sup>79</sup> of coffee.<sup>80</sup> The butterfly<sup>81</sup> is the symbol<sup>82</sup> of [the] immortality.<sup>83</sup> We kindled<sup>84</sup> torches.<sup>85</sup> The heroes<sup>86</sup> of [the] antiquity.<sup>87</sup> The Britons<sup>88</sup> are an enterprising nation.<sup>89</sup>

<sup>43</sup> Estate, Landgut. <sup>44</sup> Queen, Königin. <sup>45</sup> Are taking a drive, fahren spazieren. <sup>46</sup> To plant, pflanzen. <sup>47</sup> With, mit, with the dative. <sup>48</sup> To order, bestellen. <sup>49</sup> Twelve, zwölf. <sup>50</sup> Bottle, Flasche. <sup>51</sup> Shoemaker, Schuhmacher. <sup>52</sup> To send, schicken. <sup>53</sup> Street, Straße. <sup>54</sup> Broad, breit. <sup>55</sup> Blossom, Blüthe. <sup>56</sup> Liberty, Freiheit. <sup>57</sup> Hope, Hoffnung. <sup>58</sup> Anchor, Anker. <sup>59</sup> Soul, Seele. <sup>60</sup> Sound, Ton. <sup>61</sup> Harp, Harfe. <sup>62</sup> Spoon, Löffel. <sup>63</sup> Clean, rein. <sup>64</sup> To clean, reinigen. <sup>65</sup> Dish, Schüssel. <sup>66</sup> Chair, Stuhl. <sup>67</sup> Life, Leben. <sup>68</sup> Short, kurz. <sup>69</sup> Author, Verfasser. <sup>70</sup> To dedicate, widmen. <sup>71</sup> His work, sein Werk. <sup>72</sup> To admire, bewundern. <sup>73</sup> Beauty, Schönheit. <sup>74</sup> Nature, Natur. <sup>75</sup> Story, Geschichte. <sup>76</sup> To tell, erzählen. <sup>77</sup> To answer, beantworten. <sup>78</sup> Question, Frage. <sup>79</sup> Cup, Tasse. <sup>80</sup> Coffee, Kaffee. <sup>81</sup> Butterfly, Schmetterling. <sup>82</sup> Symbol, Sinnbild. <sup>83</sup> Immortality, Unsterblichkeit. <sup>84</sup> To kindle, anzünden. <sup>85</sup> Torch, Fackel. <sup>86</sup> Hero, Held. <sup>87</sup> Antiquity, Alterthum. <sup>88</sup> Briton, Britte. <sup>89</sup> An enterprising nation, ein unternehmendes Volk.

#### PECULIARITIES IN DECLENSION.

§ 146. The following substantives ending in *e* are declined by the weak declension through singular and plural, but take in the genitive singular the strong termination *s* in addition to the weak termination *n* :—

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.
der Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet ;	des Buchstabens.
" Friede, peace ;	" Friedens.
" Funke, spark ;	" Funken.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.
der Gedanke, thought ;	des Gedankens.
" Glaube, faith ;	" Glaubens.
" Haufe, heap ;	" Haufens.
" Name, name ;	" Namens.
" Same, seed ;	" Samens.
" Schade, injury ;	" Schadens.
" Wille, will ;	" Willens.

The neuter *das Herz*, heart, is similarly declined, except that it remains unchanged in the accusative singular :—Sing. nom. *das Herz*, gen. *des Herzens*, dat. *dem Herzen*, acc. *das Herz* ; plur. *die Herzen*, &c.

## Note.

The irregularity of the above ten masculines is thus to be accounted for. They had in middle High-German the termination *e*, and followed the weak declension throughout ; as—*der Name*, gen. *des Namen*, dat. *dem Namen*, &c. ; but the modern language considered the inflectional ending *en* as a derivative termination, and accordingly followed in the declension of these nouns the analogy of similar words originally ending in *en*. It should be observed, moreover, that, owing to this circumstance, most words included in the above list are sometimes used, even by the best authors, with the termination *n* in the nominative ; as—*Funfen*, *Fricten*, *Samen*, *Schaden*, *Haufen*, &c. One of them only takes a modified vowel in the plural, namely *Schaden*, plur. *Schäden*. See § 139, 2, *a*.

§ 147. The following masculine and neuter substantives follow the strong declension in the singular, but the weak in the plural :—

## 1. MASCULINES—

NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.	GENITIVE SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Ahn, ancestor ;	des Ahnes ;	die Ahnen.
" Bauer, peasant ;	" Bauers ;	" Bauern.
" Dorn, thorn ;	" Dornes ;	" Dornen (§ 148).
" Forst, forest ;	" Forstes ;	" Forsten.
" Gau, district ;	" Gaues ;	" Gauen (or Gaue).
" Gebatter, godfather ;	" Gebatters ;	" Gebattern.
" Lorbeer, laurel ;	" Lorbeers ;	" Lorbeern.
" Mast, mast of a ship ;	" Mastes ;	" Masten.
" Nachbar, neighbour ;	" Nachbars ;	" Nachbarn.
" Pantoffel, slipper ;	" Pantoffels ;	" Pantoffeln (or Pantoffel).



NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.	GENITIVE SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
der Pfau, peacock ;	des Pfauens ;	die Pfauen (or Pfäue).
" Schmerz, pain ;	" Schmerzes ;	" Schmerzen.
" See, lake ;	" Sees ;	" Seen.
Sporn, spur ;	" Spornes ;	" Spornen (or Sporen).
" Staat, state ;	" Staates ;	" Staaten.
" Stachel, sting ;	" Stachels ;	" Stacheln.
" Stiefel, boot ;	" Stiefels ;	" Stiefeln (or Stiefel).
" Strahl, ray ;	" Strahles ;	" Strahlen.
" Strauß, ostrich ;	" Straußes ;	" Strauße (or Straußen).
" Unterthan, subject ;	" Unterthans (or Unterthanen) ;	" Unterthanen.
" Vetter, cousin ;	" Veters ;	" Vettern.
" Zierat, ornament ;	" Zierats ;	" Zieraten.
" Zins, interest ;	" Zinses ;	" Zinsen.

## 2. NEUTERS—

das Auge, eye ;	des Auges ;	die Augen.
" Bett, bed ;	" Bettes ;	" Betten.
" Ende, end ;	" Endes ;	" Enden.
" Hemd, shirt ;	" Hemdes ;	" Hemden.
" Ohr, ear ;	" Ohres ;	" Ohren.

## Note.

The substantives contained in this list followed formerly either the one or the other of the regular declensions. Their present anomalous mode of inflection has only gradually crept into the language.

§ 148. A number of substantives have a double plural, which has been caused by the reception of different forms from different dialects into the High-German language. This diversity of form has, in not a few instances, been employed to mark a difference of signification. The following deserve particular notice :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
das Band ;	Bänder, ribbons ;	Bande, ties.
die Bank ;	Bänke, benches ;	Banken, commercial banks.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

der Dorn ;	Dörne or Dörner, thorns ;	Dornen, thorns (collectively).
daß Gesicht ;	Gefichter, faces ;	Gefichte, visions.
daß Horn ;	Hörner, horns ;	Hörne, kinds of horn.
der Laden ;	Läden, shops ;	Laden, shutters.
daß Land ;	Länder, separate countries ; <sup>1</sup>	Lande, the various parts, provinces, or districts of the same kingdom or empire.
daß Licht ;	Lichte, candles ;	Lichter, lights.
der Mond ;	Monde, satellites ;	Monden, months (poetic).
der Ort ;	Derter (single) places ; <sup>2</sup>	Orte, places (collectively).
die Sau ;	Säue, sows ;	Sauen, wild boars.
der Strauß ;	Strauße or Straußen, ostriches ;	Sträüße, nose-gays.
daß Stück ;	Stücke, pieces ;	Stücken, fragments.
daß Wort ;	Wörter, single words ;	Worte, coherent words.
der Zoll ;	Zölle, inches ;	Zölle, tolls.

<sup>1</sup> For instance—the Länder Europas, the countries of Europe (individually considered) ; but die Preussischen Lande, the parts or provinces of the Prussian territory ; die Niederlande, the Netherlands. Poets use the latter form also in the sense of the former.

<sup>2</sup> For instance—in allen Dertern der Provinz, in all (inhabited) places of the province ; but an allen Orten, in all places generally, everywhere.

## Notes.

1. The following substantives commonly form the plural by the enlarged form of the strong declension :—daß Denkmal, monument, plur. Denkmäler ; daß Gemach, apartment, plur. Gemächer ; daß Gewand, garment, plur. Gewänder ; daß Thal, valley, plur. Thäler. But in works of poetry the following forms occur also :—die Denkmale, Gemache, Geschlechter, Gewande, Thale.

2. Mann has, besides its common plural Männer, the form Mannen, meaning ‘vassals,’ more especially in their capacity of warriors. Substantives compounded with Mann form the plural by the collective Leute, when used in a collective or general sense ; as—Arbeitsleute, work-people ; Bergleute, miners ; Edelleute, noblemen ; Eheleute, married people ; Fuhrleute, wagoners ; Handelsleute, trades-people, shopkeepers ; Kaufleute, merchants ; Landleute, country-people ; Landsleute, people of the same country ; Miethsleute, lodgers. But the ordinary form Männer must be employed if persons are considered as individuals, not as a class ; as—Biedermänner,

honest, or loyal men; *Ehrenmänner*, men of honour; *Staatsmänner*, statesmen; or if a sexual distinction is to be made, as in *Ehemänner*, husbands; *Nichtsmänner*, male lodgers. With some words of this description, however, the plural *Leute* has become so prevalent, that even the best authors use it under all circumstances; e. g.—*Kaufleute*, *Handleute*, and others.

§ 149. In compound substantives, the last component only is declined; as—*Handbuch*, manual, gen. *Handbuchs*, plur. *Handbücher*; *Armband*, bracelet, gen. *Armbandes*, plur. *Armbänder*.

Two compounds of *Macht*, power, follow the weak, whilst the simple noun *Macht* follows the strong declension; namely—*Schmach*, fainting-fit, plur. *Schmachten*; and *Vollmacht*, power of attorney, plur. *Vollmachten*.

## EXERCISE XXV.

Freedom<sup>1</sup> of [the] will is a privilege<sup>2</sup> of [the] man. We enjoy<sup>3</sup> the blessings<sup>4</sup> of [the] peace. John<sup>5</sup> is learning the letters. Thoughts are free.<sup>6</sup> I have heard the name. It is the desire<sup>7</sup> of my heart. We are neighbours. The house of my neighbour has been sold.<sup>8</sup> The thistle<sup>9</sup> has thorns. Fetch<sup>10</sup> my slippers. I shall take off<sup>11</sup> my boots. A sovereign<sup>12</sup> must respect<sup>13</sup> the rights<sup>14</sup> of the subjects. Germany consists<sup>15</sup> of<sup>16</sup> many<sup>17</sup> states. [The] man has two eyes and two ears. The ribbons are too long.<sup>18</sup> Ties of [the] friendship<sup>19</sup> and love.<sup>20</sup> Have you understood<sup>21</sup> my words? These<sup>22</sup> are two Latin<sup>23</sup> words. We have been in three shops. Shut<sup>24</sup> the shutters. Bring two wax-candles.<sup>25</sup> He has travelled through<sup>26</sup> [the] most<sup>27</sup> countries of Europe.<sup>28</sup> Several<sup>29</sup> merchants have failed.<sup>30</sup> We are people of the same country. They are men of honour. I have bought some travelling manuals.<sup>31</sup> She has sometimes<sup>32</sup> fainting-fits.

<sup>1</sup> Freedom, *Freiheit*. <sup>2</sup> Privilege, *Vorrecht*. <sup>3</sup> To enjoy, *genießen*. <sup>4</sup> Blessing, *Gebung*. <sup>5</sup> John, *Johann*. <sup>6</sup> Free, *frei*. <sup>7</sup> Desire, *Wunsch*. <sup>8</sup> To sell, *verkaufen*. <sup>9</sup> Thistle, *Distel*. <sup>10</sup> To fetch, *holen*. <sup>11</sup> To take off, *ausziehen*. <sup>12</sup> Sovereign, *Fürst*. <sup>13</sup> To respect, *achten*. <sup>14</sup> Right, *Recht*. <sup>15</sup> To consist, *bestehen*. <sup>16</sup> Of, *aus*, with the dative. <sup>17</sup> Many, *vielen*. <sup>18</sup> Too long, *zu lang*. <sup>19</sup> Friendship, *Freundschaft*. <sup>20</sup> Love, *Liebe*. <sup>21</sup> To understand, *verstehen*. <sup>22</sup> These, *dies*. <sup>23</sup> Latin, *lateinische*. <sup>24</sup> To shut, *zumachen*. <sup>25</sup> Wax-candle, *Wachslicht*. <sup>26</sup> To travel through, *bereisen*. <sup>27</sup> The most, *die meisten*. <sup>28</sup> Europe, *Europa*. <sup>29</sup> Several, *mehrere*. <sup>30</sup> To fail, *falliren*. (See § 63). <sup>31</sup> Travelling manual, *Reisehandbuch*. <sup>32</sup> Sometimes, *zumweilen*.

## DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 150. The following foreign substantives take the strong declension both in the singular and plural :—

1. Most names of things of the masculine and neuter genders ; *e.g.*—*der Instinkt, das Monument, das Problem, das Exemplar, das Diadem, &c.* The following names of things take *er* in the plural :—*das Hospital, das Spital, das Regiment.*

2. Those names of male persons which end in *al, ar, an, aner, and iner*, being derived from Latin words in *alis, arius, anus, inus* ; as—*Kardinal, Vikar, Kaplan, Dominikaner, Benediktiner, &c.* Likewise—*Abt, Probst, Papst, Bischof, Major, Matador, Spion, Patron, Magister, Offizier.*

§ 151. The following are declined after the strong declension in the singular, after the weak in the plural :—

1. Those names of male persons which end in an unaccented *or* (Latin *or*) ; as—*Professor, gen. Professors, plur. Professoren.*

2. Those neuter substantives which end in *tiv* (Latin *tivum*) ; as—*Adjektiv, gen. Adjektivs, plur. Adjektiven.* A few of this class, however, follow the strong declension throughout ; as—*Motiv, Rejektiv, Vomitiv.*

3. Those neuter substantives which had originally, or still have, the Latin termination *ium* or *um*, and also those neuters which end in *al* or *il* (Latin *ale, ile*). These have in the plural *ien* or *en* respectively. For example :—*Studium, gen. Studiums, plur. Studien* ; *Individuum, gen. Individuum's, plur. Individuen* ; *Evangelium, gen. Evangelium's, plur. Evangelien* ; *Prinzip, gen. Prinzips, plur. Prinzipien* ; *Material, gen. Materials, plur. Materialien* ; *Fossil, gen. Fossils, plur. Fossilien.*

4. The following masculines :—*Diamant, Fasan, Kapaun, Impost, Konsul, Muskel, Präsekt, Psalm, Rubin* ; and the neuters *Insekt, Pronom, Statut, Verb.*

§ 152. The following are declined by the weak declension both in the singular and plural (the feminines, however, remaining unchanged in the singular) :—

1. All substantives of the feminine gender ; as—*Finktur, Fakultät, Zone.*

2. By far the greatest number of the appellations of male persons, more especially—

a. Those ending in *at, ant, ent, if* (Latin *atus, ans, ens, icus*), *ast, ist, ost, et, it, ot, and e*; for instance—*Advocat, Protestant, Student, Katholik, Phantast, Jurist, Prophet, Jesuit, Idiot, Alumne*;

b. Those compounded with *log, soph, nom, arch*, or similar Greek words; as—*Theolog, Philosoph, Astronom, Patriarch, Demagog, Geograph*;

3. These masculines:—*Dufat, Elephant, Konsonant, Komet, Planet, Quotient*, and others of a similar kind.

§ 153. Masculine and neuter substantives which belong to other modern languages and have retained their original foreign form unchanged, take *s* in the genitive singular, and likewise *s* in the plural; as—*die Lords, Clubs, Genies, Chefs, Fonds, Details, Banquiers, Acteurs, Porträts, Solos, Raïnos*.

#### EXERCISE XXVI.

I have two copies<sup>1</sup> of<sup>2</sup> Schiller's works. Have you seen Goethe's monument<sup>3</sup> at Frankfort?<sup>4</sup> I shall keep<sup>5</sup> the documents.<sup>6</sup> The regiments have fought bravely.<sup>7</sup> Three officers<sup>8</sup> have been wounded.<sup>9</sup> The professors of the university<sup>10</sup> are assembled.<sup>11</sup> The library<sup>12</sup> of the professor will be sold by auction.<sup>13</sup> I am learning the declension<sup>14</sup> of the substantives<sup>15</sup> and adjectives.<sup>16</sup> Has he finished<sup>17</sup> his studies? He has a collection<sup>18</sup> of<sup>19</sup> fossils.<sup>20</sup> He is collecting<sup>21</sup> materials<sup>22</sup> for a new work.<sup>23</sup> Each German university<sup>24</sup> has four faculties.<sup>25</sup> Loyola was the founder<sup>26</sup> of the order<sup>27</sup> of the Jesuits.<sup>28</sup> Mr M. and Mr L. are advocates.<sup>29</sup> Plato and Aristotle<sup>30</sup> were philosophers.<sup>31</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> Copy, Exemplar. <sup>2</sup> Of, von, with the dative. <sup>3</sup> Monument, Monument. <sup>4</sup> At Frankfort, zu Frankfurt. <sup>5</sup> To keep, behalten. <sup>6</sup> Document, Document. <sup>7</sup> Bravely, tapfer. <sup>8</sup> Officer, Offizier. <sup>9</sup> To wound, verwunden. <sup>10</sup> University, Universität. <sup>11</sup> To assemble, versammeln. <sup>12</sup> Library, Bibliothek. <sup>13</sup> To sell by auction, versteigern. <sup>14</sup> Declension, Declination. <sup>15</sup> Substantive, Substantiv. <sup>16</sup> Adjective, Adjektiv. <sup>17</sup> To finish, beenden. <sup>18</sup> Collection, Sammlung. <sup>19</sup> Of, von. <sup>20</sup> Fossil, Fossil. <sup>21</sup> To collect, sammeln. <sup>22</sup> Materials, Materialien. <sup>23</sup> For a new work, für ein neues Werk. <sup>24</sup> Each German university, jede deutsche Universität. <sup>25</sup> Faculty, Fakultät. <sup>26</sup> Founder, Stifter. <sup>27</sup> Order, Orden. <sup>28</sup> Jesuit, Jesuit. <sup>29</sup> Advocate, Advokat. <sup>30</sup> Aristotle, Aristoteles. <sup>31</sup> Philosopher, Philosoph.

students<sup>32</sup> of the university and the alumni<sup>33</sup> of the school<sup>34</sup> have vacations.<sup>35</sup> I shall communicate<sup>36</sup> to you<sup>37</sup> the details<sup>38</sup> of the journey.<sup>39</sup> The Lords assemble [themselves] at twelve<sup>40</sup> o'clock.

<sup>32</sup> Student, Student. <sup>33</sup> Alumnus, Alumne. <sup>34</sup> School, Schule. <sup>35</sup> Vacations, Ferien. <sup>36</sup> To communicate, mittheilen. <sup>37</sup> To you, Ihnen. <sup>38</sup> Detail, Detail. <sup>39</sup> Journey, Reise. <sup>40</sup> Twelve, zwölf.

## DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 154. Those proper names which are never used without an article—as, according to § 121, the names of rivers, seas, lakes, mountains, and forests, and the names of countries of the masculine or feminine gender—follow entirely the rules given for the declension of common names. But with regard to those proper names which are commonly used without an article—that is, names of persons, places, and neuter names of countries—the following rules are observed:—

§ 155. They take in the genitive the strong termination *s*; as—Karl, Karls; Friedrich, Friedrichs; Elisabeth, Elisabeths; Adelheid, Adelheids; Amerika, Amerikas; Berlin, Berlins.

§ 156. Names of females ending in *e* follow the weak declension, but take in the genitive the mixed termination *ens*; as—Sophie, gen. Sophiens, dat. and acc. Sophien.

§ 157. Names of male persons ending in a sibilant (*s*, *ß*, *x*, *sch*, *g*) also take *ens* in the genitive and sometimes *en* in the dative; as—Max, Maxens, Maxen; Hussens Anhänger, the adherents of Huss.

§ 158. Foreign names ending in a sibilant, especially such of them as have an unaccented termination, are not declined, and the case is pointed out by the definite article; for instance—das Heer des Xerxes, the army of Xerxes; die Schriften des Aristoteles, the writings of Aristotle; das Schwert der Themis, the sword of Themis; dem Paulus, to Paul.

The same expedient is sometimes had recourse to, even with names which can be inflected in the genitive; *e.g.*—die Briefe des Cicero (or Cicero's Briefe), the epistles of Cicero.

With such names as do not takè any inflectional termination in the dative, it is a very common practice to point out the case by means of the article, especially if this may serve to avoid ambiguities; as in—*er zieht Göthe dem Schiller vor*, he prefers Goethe to Schiller.

§ 159. Proper names of countries and places come under the general rule—that is, they take *s* in the genitive. But when, owing to the last consonant being a sibilant, the genitive cannot take the termination *s*, or whenever another case requires to be used, a common name is placed in apposition to the proper name; as—*die Merkwürdigkeiten der Stadt Paris*, the sights of the city of Paris; *der Befehlshaber der Festung Mainz*, the commander of the fortress of Mayence; *dem Königreich Spanien ist Frankreich überlegen*, France is superior in power to the kingdom of Spain. The relation of the genitive can, in such cases, be expressed by the preposition *von*; as in—*die Bevölkerung von Paris*, the population of Paris; *die Lage von Cadix*, the situation of Cadiz.

Note.

The latter mode of expressing the relation of the genitive is not limited to names ending in a sibilant, but is often employed with names of places, and especially of countries generally, if the name follows the substantive by which it is governed; *e. g.*—*die Umgegend von Frankfurt*, the environs of Frankfort; *die Königin von England*, the Queen of England, *der Kaiser von Rußland*, the Emperor of Russia.

§ 160. When proper names of persons are used in the plural, they follow the declension of common names—that is, those of male persons the strong, and those of females the weak; as *die Heinrichs*; *die Marien*. The names of males ending in *v* sometimes take *ne* in the plural; as—*Nero*, *Nerone*. A few take *nen*; as—*Scipio*, *Scipionen*. Those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *el*, *en*, and *er*, remain unchanged in the plural; as—*die Seneca*, *die Schlegel*.

Note.

The plural of names of families is sometimes formed in *s*, when all or several members of the same family are spoken of collectively; for instance—*Salzmann's sind verreist*, the Salzmanns are from home. *Müller's haben Besuch*, the Müllers have visitors. *Wir werden heute bei Schmidt's zu Mittag speisen*, we are going to dine to-day at the Schmidts.

§ 161. When the name of a person is preceded by an

article, with or without an adjective, it is not declined in the singular ; as—*der Schiller, des Schiller, dem Schiller, den Schiller* ; *der große Göthe, des großen Göthe, dem großen Göthe, den großen Göthe*. This rule is only departed from when a name in the genitive case, and preceded by an adjective, is placed before the word by which it is governed ; as—*des großen Friedrich's Thaten*, great Frederick's deeds ; *des berühmten Neander's Werke*, the works of the celebrated Neander.

§ 162. Christian names, when placed before family names, are not declined ; as—*Ludwig Uhland's Balladen*, L. U.'s ballads ; *August Wilhelm von Schlegel's Schriften*, A. W. Schlegel's writings.

§ 163. When a common name, indicating a person's title, dignity, or occupation, is placed before a proper name, the common name only is declined ; as—*das Leben des Kaisers Joseph*, the life of the emperor Joseph ; *die Besitzungen des Grafen von Mansfeld*, the possessions of Count Mansfeld. But when the genitive without any article goes before the substantive by which it is governed, the proper name is declined ; as—*König Friedrich's Thaten*, King Frederick's deeds ; *Doctor Martin Luther's Geburtsort*, Doctor Martin Luther's birthplace.

§ 164. The names of the Saviour, *Jesus* and *Christus*, are declined according to the Latin declension ; namely—*Jesus*, gen. and dat. *Jesu*, acc. *Jesum* ; *Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*.

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

Alexander was the son of Philip.<sup>1</sup> Curtius relates<sup>2</sup> the deeds of Alexander. I know<sup>3</sup> Frederick's<sup>4</sup> handwriting.<sup>5</sup> Have you seen Charlotte's drawings ?<sup>6</sup> Huss's adherents<sup>7</sup> were [being] called Hussites.<sup>8</sup> I am translating the writings<sup>9</sup> of Aristotle. We read the epistles<sup>10</sup> of Cicero. The tales<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Philip, Philipp. <sup>2</sup> To relate, erzählen. <sup>3</sup> To know, kennen. <sup>4</sup> Frederick, Friedrich. <sup>5</sup> Handwriting, Handschrift. <sup>6</sup> Drawing, Zeichnung. <sup>7</sup> Adherent, Anhänger. <sup>8</sup> Hussite, Hussit. <sup>9</sup> Writing, Schrift. <sup>10</sup> Epistle, Brief. <sup>11</sup> Tale, Märchen.



of Musæus are very entertaining.<sup>12</sup> I prefer<sup>13</sup> Schiller to Uhland. The commerce<sup>14</sup> of the city<sup>15</sup> of London. We have seen the sights<sup>16</sup> of Paris. The situation<sup>17</sup> of Coblenz is very beautiful. The environs<sup>18</sup> of Frankfort are charming.<sup>19</sup> Have you seen the Queen of England? Berlin is the capital<sup>20</sup> of the kingdom<sup>21</sup> of Prussia.<sup>22</sup> Munich<sup>23</sup> is the capital of Bavaria.<sup>24</sup> I have read the life of the emperor<sup>25</sup> Joseph. Ernst Schulze's 'enchanted rose'<sup>26</sup> is a fine poem.<sup>27</sup> Doctor Martin Luther's translation<sup>28</sup> of the Bible. The Schmidts have asked<sup>29</sup> us to dinner.<sup>30</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Entertaining, unterhaltend. <sup>13</sup> To prefer, vorziehen. <sup>14</sup> Commerce, Handel. <sup>15</sup> City, Stadt. <sup>16</sup> Sight, Merkwürdigkeit. <sup>17</sup> Situation, Lage. <sup>18</sup> Environs, Umgegend; use the singular number. <sup>19</sup> Charming, reizend. <sup>20</sup> Capital, Hauptstadt. <sup>21</sup> Kingdom, Königreich. <sup>22</sup> Prussia, Preußen. <sup>23</sup> Munich, München. <sup>24</sup> Bavaria, Baiern. <sup>25</sup> Emperor, Kaiser. <sup>26</sup> Enchanted rose, bezauberte Rose. <sup>27</sup> A fine poem, ein schönes Gedicht. <sup>28</sup> Translation, Uebersetzung. <sup>29</sup> To ask, bitten. <sup>30</sup> To dinner, zum Mittagessen.

#### SUBSTANTIVES WHICH ARE USED ONLY IN THE SINGULAR.

§ 165. All common names can be used in the plural; as—Bäume, trees; Städte, towns; Männer, men; Frauen, women. Proper names can be used in the plural only when they assume the nature of common names, or when several individuals are comprised in one name; as—die Raphaelen unserer Zeit, the Raphaels of our time; die Stuarts, the Stuarts.

§ 166. Names of materials commonly do not take a plural, except when different species of the same genus are to be expressed. For instance—Fleisch, meat; Honig, honey; Gold, gold; Flachs, flax; Heu, hay; Asche, ashes; Sand, sand. But Moose, kinds of moss; Gräser, kinds of grass; Salze, kinds of salt; Erden, kinds of earth. Some words of this class, when used in the plural, assume a signification somewhat different from that of the singular; as—Gelder, sums of money; Papiere, documents.

§ 167. Collective nouns are used in the plural to indicate a plurality of collectives; as—Völker, nations; Heere, armies; Wälder, forests; Gebirge, ranges of mountains. But many can occur in the singular only, because they, in themselves.

denote an unlimited plurality ; as—*Vieh*, cattle ; *Ungeziefer*, vermin ; *Gesinde*, servants.

§ 168. Most substantives of an abstract meaning cannot be used in the plural. Those are excepted which denote actions ; as—*Schläge*, strokes ; *Klänge*, sounds ; *Blicke*, looks ; *Schüsse*, shots ; *Fälle*, falls ; *Schnitte*, cuts ; and also those which assume a concrete signification ; as—*Tugenden*, virtues, *Lasten*, vices ; *Fehler*, errors ; *Schönheiten*, beauties ; *Hindernisse*, hinderances.

§ 169. Those substantives which denote a measure, weight, or number, without expressing at the same time the substance of the thing measured, weighed, or numbered, are used in the singular, when preceded by a numeral. Examples :—*zehn Fuß lang*, ten feet long ; *sechs Zoll breit*, six inches broad ; *acht Pfund Kaffee*, eight pounds of coffee ; *zwei Paar Schuhe*, two pair of shoes ; *einige Buch Papier*, some quires of paper ; *zwei Bogen Papier*, two sheets of paper ; *zwölf Stück Vieh*, twelve head of cattle ; *ein Regiment von tausend Mann*, a regiment of a thousand men. But if a substantive expresses not only the measure, but also the substance measured, it is put in the plural ; more especially the names of coins, as—*zehn Schillinge*, ten shillings ; and nouns denoting a space of time, as—*zwei Monate*, two months ; *acht Tage*, eight days ; *sieben Jahre*, seven years.

Feminine substantives of a similar signification form the plural under all circumstances ; as—*zwölf Ellen Tuch*, twelve yards of cloth ; *acht Meilen*, eight miles ; *zwei Unzen Seide*, two ounces of silk ; *drei Tassen Thee*, three cups of tea.

#### SUBSTANTIVES WHICH ARE USED ONLY IN THE PLURAL.

§ 170. A few substantives occur only in the plural number ; namely—

<i>Alpen</i> , Alps.	<i>Geschwister</i> , brother(s) and sister(s).
<i>Beinkleider</i> or <i>Hosen</i> , trousers.	<i>Gefälle</i> , duties, rates.
<i>Briefschaften</i> , letters, papers.	<i>Gliedmaßen</i> , limbs.
<i>Einkünfte</i> , revenue.	<i>Gefen</i> , yeast, dregs.
<i>Eltern</i> or <i>Ältern</i> , parents.	<i>Kosten</i> or <i>Unkosten</i> , expenses.
<i>Fasten</i> , Lent.	<i>Leute</i> , people.
<i>Ferien</i> , vacation.	<i>Masern</i> or <i>Rötheln</i> , measles.
<i>Gebrüder</i> , brothers (of one firm).	<i>Molken</i> , whey.

Ostern, Easter.	Träber, ground malt.
Wfingften, Whitsuntide.	Trümmer, ruins.
Ränke, tricks, intrigues.	Weihnachten, Christmas.
Spotteln, perquisites.	Seitläufte, junctures.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

The preparation<sup>1</sup> of [the] flax is very troublesome.<sup>2</sup> The hay has been cut.<sup>3</sup> The ashes are (say, is) still warm. A botanist<sup>4</sup> knows<sup>5</sup> all kinds of grass and of moss. I cannot find the documents. The nations rise<sup>6</sup> against each other. The boy tends<sup>7</sup> the cattle. [The] rain<sup>8</sup> kills<sup>9</sup> the vermin. He has paid off<sup>10</sup> his<sup>11</sup> servants. The board<sup>12</sup> is ten feet long and ten inches broad. She has bought six pounds of coffee. I shall take with *me* three pair of shoes. Send some quires of paper. Lend me<sup>13</sup> two sheets of paper. I shall send you<sup>14</sup> twelve yards of cloth. I require<sup>15</sup> three ounces of silk. My brothers and sisters are from home.<sup>16</sup> The parents of the child are dead.<sup>17</sup> The revenue is not sufficient<sup>18</sup> to cover<sup>19</sup> the expenditure.<sup>20</sup> I shall pay<sup>21</sup> the expenses of the journey. We have vacation in<sup>22</sup> summer and at<sup>23</sup> Christmas. He has drunk<sup>24</sup> the cup<sup>25</sup> even to<sup>26</sup> the dregs. The child has had the measles.

<sup>1</sup> Preparation, Zubereitung. <sup>2</sup> Troublesome, mühsam. <sup>3</sup> To cut, mähen.  
<sup>4</sup> Botanist, Botaniker. <sup>5</sup> To know, kennen. <sup>6</sup> Rise against each other, erheben sich wider einander. <sup>7</sup> To tend, hüten. <sup>8</sup> Rain, Regen. <sup>9</sup> To kill, tödten. <sup>10</sup> To pay off, ablöshen. <sup>11</sup> His, sein. <sup>12</sup> Board, Brett. <sup>13</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>14</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>15</sup> To require, brauchen. <sup>16</sup> From home, verreist. <sup>17</sup> Dead, gestorben. <sup>18</sup> Sufficient, hinreichend. <sup>19</sup> To cover, zu decken; follows after 'the expenditure.' <sup>20</sup> The expenditure, die Ausgaben. <sup>21</sup> To pay, bezahlen. <sup>22</sup> In, im. <sup>23</sup> At, zu. <sup>24</sup> To drink, austrinken. <sup>25</sup> Cup, Reich. <sup>26</sup> Even to, bis auf, with the accusative.

## XVI.

## THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 171. Adjectives are words which qualify substantives—that is, words by which the kinds (*genera*) of persons or things are referred to particular or subordinate species. Thus

the general term *Pferd*, horse, is referred to particular species ; as—*ein altes Pferd*, an old horse ; *ein junges Pferd*, a young horse ; *ein großes Pferd*, a tall horse ; *ein kleines Pferd*, a little horse ; *dieses Pferd*, this horse ; *jenes Pferd*, that horse ; *mein Pferd*, my horse ; *welches Pferd*, which horse. The words *alt*, *jung*, *groß*, *klein*, *dieses*, *jenes*, *mein*, *welches*, accordingly, restrict or qualify the substantive *Pferd*, and come all under the term *adjectives*. But commonly the name adjective is used in a more limited sense, as applying only to words which denote qualities or properties ascribed to persons or things, such as, in the above examples, *alt*, *jung*, *groß*, *klein*. In the present chapter, adjectives are considered in this limited acceptance of the term.

§ 172. Adjectives are used in a twofold manner :—

1. A quality can be asserted of a person or thing by means of the copula *sein*, to be (or *werden*, to become, or *bleiben*, to remain). An adjective thus asserted of a person or thing forms the *predicate* of a sentence, and in such a connection it always remains unchanged. For example :—*das Pferd ist jung*, the horse is young. *Die Bäume sind grün*, the trees are green. *Die Kirschchen werden reif*, the cherries become ripe. *Das Wetter wird schön bleiben*, the weather will remain beautiful. *Er ist reich gewesen*, he has been rich.

2. A quality can be considered as the attribute of a person or thing—that is, as inherent in it. An adjective thus employed stands in an *attributive* connection with a substantive, and is made to agree with it in gender, number, and case, by means of inflectional changes. For example :—*ein junges Pferd*, a young horse ; *die grünen Bäume*, the green trees ; *reife Kirschchen*, ripe cherries ; *bei schönem Wetter*, in beautiful weather ; *reiche Leute*, rich people.

Most adjectives can be used in a predicative as well as an attributive connection. See the exceptions in § 287, notes 2 and 3.

§ 173. Every adjective which can be used in an attributive connection has two forms of declension, which, like the declensions of substantives, are called the ‘strong’ (or ‘ancient’) and the ‘weak’ (or ‘modern’). The strong declension is more perfect than the weak, being subject to a greater variety of inflectional changes. The former

corresponds with the declension of the definite article, the latter bears a resemblance to the weak declension of substantives.

# TABULAR VIEW OF THE TERMINATIONS.

## STRONG DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	er,	e,	eß,	e.
<i>Gen.</i>	eß (en),	er,	eß (en),	er.
<i>Dat.</i>	em,	er,	em,	en.
<i>Acc.</i>	en,	e,	eß,	e.

## WEAK DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	e,	e,	e,	en.
<i>Gen.</i>	en,	en,	en,	en.
<i>Dat.</i>	en,	en,	en,	en.
<i>Acc.</i>	en,	e,	e,	en.

## PARADIGM.

### STRONG DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	guter,	gute,	guteß,	gute.
<i>Gen.</i>	guteß (en),	guter,	guteß (en),	guter.
<i>Dat.</i>	gutem,	guter,	gutem,	guten.
<i>Acc.</i>	guten,	gute,	guteß,	gute.

### WEAK DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	gute,	gute,	gute,	guten.
<i>Gen.</i>	guten,	guten,	guten,	guten.
<i>Dat.</i>	guten,	guten,	guten,	guten.
<i>Acc.</i>	guten,	gute,	gute,	guten.

1. In the genitive singular of the masculine and neuter genders of the strong declension, the weak termination *en* is now generally adopted in the place of the strong termination *es*; *e. g.*—*eine Flasche alten Weines*, a bottle of old wine; *der Jüngling edlen Gefühles, &c.*, the youth of noble feeling. The strong form, however, still occurs in various phrases; as—*guter Muthes*, of good courage; *gerader Wege*, immediately; *reines Herzens*, of (a) pure heart; *heutiges Tages*, now-a-days.

2. Adjectives ending in one of the syllables *er*, *el*, *en*, when inflected, commonly lose the vowel *e* of these syllables. For instance:—*wacker Tell, Sch.*, brave Tell; *eine edle That*, a noble action; *ein bescheidner Mann, Sch.*, an unpretending man; *ein seltnr Vogel, Sch.*, a curious bird. With adjectives ending in *er* or *el*, however, this rule is sometimes not strictly adhered to, the vowel *e* of the inflectional termination being thrown out instead of the *e* of the affix; *e. g.*—*Er sitzt in seiner sichern Weste, Sch.*, he sits in his secure stronghold. *In bitterm Schmer, U.*, in bitter sorrow. *Die edeln Herrn*, the noble lords.

3. The adjective *hoch*, high, when declined, changes *ch* into *h*; as in *ein hoher Berg*, a high mountain; *hohe Felsen*, high rocks.

§ 174. An adjective follows the strong declension when it is not preceded by any article, pronoun, or numeral, or when preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral which has no inflectional termination. For instance:—*guter Wein*, good wine; *schönes Wetter*, fine weather; *reine Kleider*, clean dresses; *ein ebner Weg*, an even road; *mein lieber Freund*, my dear friend; *unser neues Haus*, our new house.

An adjective follows the weak declension when it is preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral, which shews by its strong termination the gender, number, and case of the substantive. For instance:—*der gute Wein*, the good wine; *des süßen Weines*, of the sweet wine; *das schöne Wetter*, the fine weather; *die reinen Kleider*, the clean dresses; *dieser ebne Weg*, this even road; *meine lieben Freunde*, my dear friends; *in unserm neuen Hause*, in our new house.

From this rule it is obvious that an adjective may follow the strong declension in one case, while it may require the weak in another, although preceded by the same article, pronoun, or numeral, according as the latter has a strong termination or not. For example, in the nominative *ein tapfrer Held*, a valiant hero, the adjective is in the strong declension, but in the genitive, dative, and accusative in the

weak ; namely—gen. eines tapfren Helden, dat. einem tapfren Helden, acc. einen tapfren Helden. Or in unser neues Haus, our new house, the adjective is in the strong declension in the nominative and accusative singular, but in the weak in all the other cases. Examples :—

*Sing. Nom.* alter Wein, old wine.

*Gen.* alten Weines, of old wine.

*Dat.* alten Weine, to old wine.

*Acc.* alten Wein, old wine.

*Plur. Nom.* alte Weine, old wines.

*Gen.* alter Weine, of old wines.

*Dat.* alten Weinen, to old wines.

*Acc.* alte Weine, old wines.

*Sing. Nom.* der junge Baum, the young tree.

*Gen.* des jungen Baumes, of the young tree.

*Dat.* dem jungen Baume, to the young tree.

*Acc.* den jungen Baum, the young tree.

*Plur. Nom.* die jungen Bäume, the young trees.

*Gen.* der jungen Bäume, of the young trees.

*Dat.* den jungen Bäumen, to the young trees.

*Acc.* die jungen Bäume, the young trees.

*Sing. Nom.* die schöne Kunst, the fine art.

*Gen.* der schönen Kunst, of the fine art.

*Dat.* der schönen Kunst, to the fine art.

*Acc.* die schöne Kunst, the fine art.

*Plur. Nom.* die schönen Künste, the fine arts.

*Gen.* der schönen Künste, of the fine arts.

*Dat.* den schönen Künsten, to the fine arts.

*Acc.* die schönen Künste, the fine arts.

*Sing. Nom.* dieses grüne Feld, this green field.

*Gen.* dieses grünen Feldeß, of this green field.

*Dat.* diesem grünen Felde, to this green field.

*Acc.* dieses grüne Feld, this green field.

*Plur. Nom.* diese grünen Felder, these green fields.

*Gen.* dieser grünen Felder, of these green fields.

*Dat.* diesen grünen Feldern, to these green fields.

*Acc.* diese grünen Felder, these green fields.

- Sing. Nom.* ein tapfrer Held, a valiant hero.  
*Gen.* eines tapfren Helden, of a valiant hero.  
*Dat.* einem tapfren Helden, to a valiant hero.  
*Acc.* einen tapfren Helden, a valiant hero.
- Plur. Nom.* tapfre Helden, valiant heroes.  
*Gen.* tapfren Helden, of valiant heroes.  
*Dat.* tapfren Helden, to valiant heroes.  
*Acc.* tapfre Helden, valiant heroes.
- Sing. Nom.* meine liebe Schwester, my dear sister.  
*Gen.* meiner lieben Schwester, of my dear sister.  
*Dat.* meiner lieben Schwester, to my dear sister.  
*Acc.* meine liebe Schwester, my dear sister.
- Plur. Nom.* meine lieben Schwestern, my dear sisters.  
*Gen.* meiner lieben Schwestern, of my dear sisters.  
*Dat.* meinen lieben Schwestern, to my dear sisters.  
*Acc.* meine lieben Schwestern, my dear sisters.

FOR PRACTICE:—Lieber Bruder, dear brother; geliebte Schwester, beloved sister; frisches Brod, new bread; der grüne Baum, the green tree; der breite Fluß, the broad river; die lange Straße, the long street; die gute That, the good action; das neue Lied, the new song; das junge Mädchen, the young girl; dieser neue Mantel, this new cloak; jenes große Faß, that large cask; ein weiser König, a wise king; ein kleiner Knabe, a little boy; ein alter Gebrauch, an old custom; eine große Stadt, a large town; ein volles Glas, a full glass; ein schönes Bild, a fine picture; ein trocknes Blatt, a dry leaf; sein neues Landgut, his new estate; mein alter Nachbar, my old neighbour; dein edler Entschluß, thy noble resolution; unsre goldne Uhr, our gold watch; ihre schwache Hoffnung, her faint hope

## EXERCISE XXIX.

The air is pure.<sup>1</sup> The barns<sup>2</sup> are full.<sup>3</sup> The sea was calm.<sup>4</sup> Are the roads<sup>5</sup> dry?<sup>6</sup> Have you learned the German language? Mr M. teaches the Dutch<sup>7</sup> language. Professor L. is a celebrated<sup>8</sup> man. The cloak<sup>9</sup> is new. I have got a new cloak. The child was ill<sup>10</sup> The disease<sup>11</sup> is incurable.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Pure, rein. <sup>2</sup> Barn, Scheuer. <sup>3</sup> Full, voll. <sup>4</sup> Calm, still. <sup>5</sup> Road, Weg.  
<sup>6</sup> Dry, trocken. <sup>7</sup> Dutch, holländisch. <sup>8</sup> Celebrated, berühmte. <sup>9</sup> Cloak, Mantel.  
<sup>10</sup> Ill, krank. <sup>11</sup> Disease, Krankheit. <sup>12</sup> Incurable, unheilbar.



Martin Luther was the son of a poor miner.<sup>13</sup> The history<sup>14</sup> of the ancient<sup>15</sup> nations<sup>16</sup> is interesting.<sup>17</sup> We read an interesting book. A good book is a good friend. A good tree bears<sup>18</sup> good fruit.<sup>19</sup> The large<sup>20</sup> estate<sup>21</sup> belongs<sup>22</sup> to an old lady.<sup>23</sup> Her<sup>24</sup> brother possesses<sup>25</sup> a large estate in Scotland.<sup>26</sup> He is the proprietor<sup>27</sup> of a large estate. Have you been in<sup>28</sup> his new house? My father has a valuable<sup>29</sup> library.<sup>30</sup> The library consists<sup>31</sup> of<sup>32</sup> Latin,<sup>33</sup> Greek,<sup>34</sup> English,<sup>35</sup> French,<sup>36</sup> German, and Spanish<sup>37</sup> works. Deep<sup>38</sup> valleys and high mountains intersect<sup>39</sup> the whole<sup>40</sup> country. Bring me<sup>41</sup> warm water and a clean<sup>42</sup> towel.<sup>43</sup> My sister has bought [for herself]<sup>44</sup> a brown<sup>45</sup> parasol.<sup>46</sup> She is a learned<sup>47</sup> lady. He wears<sup>48</sup> a black<sup>49</sup> coat.<sup>50</sup> The Dutch<sup>51</sup> are an industrious<sup>52</sup> and sober<sup>53</sup> people.<sup>54</sup> I am studying<sup>55</sup> the Roman<sup>56</sup> history. He died a glorious<sup>57</sup> death. It was bright<sup>58</sup> moonshine.<sup>59</sup> The electric<sup>60</sup> telegraph<sup>61</sup> is a recent<sup>62</sup> invention.<sup>63</sup> The melons<sup>64</sup> are not yet ripe. It was a fresh<sup>65</sup> morning.<sup>66</sup> I wish<sup>67</sup> you<sup>68</sup> a good-morning. Good-night. Good-evening.<sup>69</sup> She wears a silk<sup>70</sup> dress.<sup>71</sup> Is she not a vain<sup>72</sup> woman? He has a noble<sup>73</sup> heart. His own<sup>74</sup> mouth<sup>75</sup> has disclosed<sup>76</sup> it to me. She is a modest<sup>77</sup> girl. Do you like<sup>78</sup> bitter beer?<sup>79</sup> A golden<sup>80</sup> key<sup>81</sup> opens<sup>82</sup> all locks.<sup>83</sup>

- <sup>13</sup> Miner, Bergmann. <sup>14</sup> History, Geschichte. <sup>15</sup> Ancient, alt. <sup>16</sup> Nation, Volk. <sup>17</sup> Interesting, interessant. <sup>18</sup> To bear, tragen. <sup>19</sup> Fruit, Frucht. <sup>20</sup> Large, groß. <sup>21</sup> Estate, Landgut. <sup>22</sup> To belong, gehören. <sup>23</sup> Lady, Dame. <sup>24</sup> Her, ihr. <sup>25</sup> To possess, besitzen. <sup>26</sup> Scotland, Schottland. <sup>27</sup> Proprietor, Besitzer. <sup>28</sup> In, in, with the dative. <sup>29</sup> Valuable, werthvoll. <sup>30</sup> Library, Bibliothek. <sup>31</sup> To consist, bestehen. <sup>32</sup> Of, aus, with the dative. <sup>33</sup> Latin, lateinisch. <sup>34</sup> Greek, griechisch. <sup>35</sup> English, englisch. <sup>36</sup> French, französisch. <sup>37</sup> Spanish, spanisch. <sup>38</sup> Deep, tief. <sup>39</sup> To intersect, durchschneiden, is here inseparable. <sup>40</sup> Whole, ganz. <sup>41</sup> Me, mir (dat.) <sup>42</sup> Clean, rein. <sup>43</sup> Towel, Handtuch. <sup>44</sup> For herself, sich. <sup>45</sup> Brown, braun. <sup>46</sup> Parasol, Sonnenschirm. <sup>47</sup> Learned, gelehrt. <sup>48</sup> To wear, tragen. <sup>49</sup> Black, schwarz. <sup>50</sup> Coat, Mantel. <sup>51</sup> The Dutch, die Holländer. <sup>52</sup> Industrious, fleißig. <sup>53</sup> Sober, einfach. <sup>54</sup> People, Volk. <sup>55</sup> I am studying, ich studire. <sup>56</sup> Roman, römisch. <sup>57</sup> Glorious, glorreich. <sup>58</sup> Bright, hell. <sup>59</sup> Moonshine, Mondlicht. <sup>60</sup> Electric, elektrisch. <sup>61</sup> Telegraph, Telegraf. <sup>62</sup> Recent, neu. <sup>63</sup> Invention, Erfindung. <sup>64</sup> Melon, Melone. <sup>65</sup> Fresh, frisch. <sup>66</sup> Morning, Morgen. <sup>67</sup> To wish, wünschen. <sup>68</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>69</sup> Evening, Abend; use the accusative. <sup>70</sup> Silk (adjective), seiden. <sup>71</sup> Dress, Kleid. <sup>72</sup> Vain, eitel. <sup>73</sup> Noble, edel. <sup>74</sup> Own, eigen. <sup>75</sup> Mouth, Mund. <sup>76</sup> To disclose, entdecken. <sup>77</sup> Modest, bescheiden. <sup>78</sup> Do you like [to drink], trinken Sie gern. <sup>79</sup> Beer, Bier. <sup>80</sup> Golden, golden. <sup>81</sup> Key, Schlüssel. <sup>82</sup> To open, aufschließen. <sup>83</sup> All locks, alle Schlüssel.

Montscheim. <sup>60</sup> Electric, elektrisch. <sup>61</sup> Telegraph, Telegraf. <sup>62</sup> Recent, neu. <sup>63</sup> Invention, Erfindung. <sup>64</sup> Melon, Melone. <sup>65</sup> Fresh, frisch. <sup>66</sup> Morning, Morgen. <sup>67</sup> To wish, wünschen. <sup>68</sup> You, Ihnen (dat.) <sup>69</sup> Evening, Abend; use the accusative. <sup>70</sup> Silk (adjective), seiden. <sup>71</sup> Dress, Kleid. <sup>72</sup> Vain, eitel. <sup>73</sup> Noble, edel. <sup>74</sup> Own, eigen. <sup>75</sup> Mouth, Mund. <sup>76</sup> To disclose, entdecken. <sup>77</sup> Modest, bescheiden. <sup>78</sup> Do you like [to drink], trinken Sie gern. <sup>79</sup> Beer, Bier. <sup>80</sup> Golden, golden. <sup>81</sup> Key, Schlüssel. <sup>82</sup> To open, aufschließen. <sup>83</sup> All locks, alle Schlüssel.

§ 175. The above rule regarding the declension of adjectives is rarely departed from.

1. In the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender, the adjective in the strong declension sometimes drops its termination *es*, especially in poetry, and also in the language of everyday life. Examples:—*Ich aber habe ein getreu Gedächtniß, Sch.*, but I have a faithful memory. *Der König trug ein schwarz Gewand, U.*, the king wore a black mantle. *Ich suche nicht mein eigen Heil, Platen*, I do not seek my own happiness. *Schon früh in meiner Kindheit war mein täglich Spiel der Krieg, Stolberg*, even in my early childhood war was my daily play.—*Kalt Wasser*, cold water; *baar Geld*, ready money; *alt Eisen*, old iron; *schön Wetter*, fine weather.

2. After *einige*, *etliche*, some; *wenige*, few; *mehrere*, several; *andere*, other; *solche*, such; *viele*, many; *welche*, which, the adjective takes the strong declension in the nominative and accusative plural; for example—*einige gute Bücher*, some good books; *viele fremde Staaten*, many foreign states; *solche schöne Blumen*, such fine flowers.

3. After the personal pronouns *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, the adjective takes the weak declension, except in the nominative singular; *e.g.*—*Nom. ich armer Mann*, I poor man; *dat. mir armen Manne*; *acc. mich armen Mann*; *plur. nom. wir armen Männer*; *dat. uns armen Männern*; *acc. uns armen Männer*. After *ihr*, however, the practice varies, as will be seen from comparing the following passages:—*Ich zittere nur für euch, ihr blöden Thoren, Chamisso*, I tremble only for you, you dull fools. *Ihr zarten Forellen, Schwab*, you tender trouts. *Ihr geliebte Triften, Sch.*, you beloved pastures. *Ihr stille Thäler, Sch.*, you quiet valleys. *Ihr sonnige Weiden, Sch.*, you sunny pastures.

4. *Ganz*, whole, and *halb*, half, take no additional termination when put before names of places and countries without the definite article; as—*ganz England*, all England; *in ganz England*, in all England; *halb London*, the half of London. But with the article—*das ganze Deutschland*, the whole of Germany; *die halbe Schweiz*, the half of Switzerland.

§ 176. Adjectives formed from proper names of places often take the suffix *er*, which is peculiar to substantives, in preference to the adjective suffix *isch*, especially if the name has a compound form, as *Freiburg*, *Frankfurt*, *Heidelberg*.

Such adjectives are indeclinable, and can only be employed in the attributive connection. For instance :—*der Freiburger Münster*, the minster of Friburg; *die Frankfurter Zeitung*, the Frankfort Gazette; *das Heidelberger Faß*, the Heidelberg tun; *Hamburger Rindfleisch*, Hamburg beef; *die Leipziger Messe*, the Leipzig fair; *die Londoner Börse*, the London exchange; *die Pariser Moden*, the Paris fashions.

§ 177. As the participles of verbs partake of the nature of adjectives, they are subject to the same rules of declension. For example :—*Das sterbende Blatt*, the dying leaf. *Das gepriesene Italien*, *Sch.*, much-praised Italy. *Ich war in ein anstoßendes Zimmer gegangen*, *Sch.*, I had gone into an adjoining room. *Das verlorene Paradies*, Paradise Lost. *Eine rauschende Musik*, a noisy music. *Reißende Thiere*, wild beasts.

Present participles can only be used in the attributive connection, excepting such as have, from long usage, assumed entirely the nature of adjectives. The following, among others, are of the latter description :—

ansteckend, contagious.	glänzend, brilliant.
ausdauernd, persevering.	rasend, frantic.
bedeutend, important.	reizend, charming.
bezaubernd, enchanting.	umfassend, extensive.
drückend, oppressive.	vermögend, wealthy.
empörend, revolting.	vorherrschend, predominant
entscheidend, decisive.	wüthend, furious.

The past participle of those intransitive verbs which require the auxiliary verb *haben*, can be used neither in the predicative nor attributive connection.

§ 178. Both adjectives and participles can be used as substantives, always retaining, however, the declension peculiar to adjectives. The masculine and feminine genders are employed, both in the singular and plural, to denote persons, and the neuter gender, in the singular, to denote things. The German language carries out this practice with greater freedom than the English. Examples :—*ein Deutscher*, a German; *eine Deutsche*, a German woman; *die Deutschen*, the Germans; *der Fremde*, the stranger; *Fremde*, strangers; *ein Sterblicher*, a mortal; *die sieben Weisen Griechenlands*, the seven wise men of Greece; *ein Reisender*, a traveller; *die Umstehenden*, the bystanders; *der Redende*, the speaker; *ein*

Gelehrter, a learned man; die Gelehrten, the learned; Gelehrte, learned people.—Daß Gute, that which is good. Haltet dem Guten an, *B.*, cleave to that which is good. Gutes thun, to do good. Großes habt ihr in kurzer Zeit geleistet, *Sch.*, you have done great things in a short time. Wer kann das Mögliche berechnen? *G.*, who can calculate possibilities?

## EXERCISE XXX.

Some Danish<sup>1</sup> vessels<sup>2</sup> are in the roads.<sup>3</sup> My cousin<sup>4</sup> has many influential<sup>5</sup> friends in the capital.<sup>6</sup> We have neglected<sup>7</sup> several good opportunities.<sup>8</sup> We spent<sup>9</sup> some pleasant<sup>10</sup> months<sup>11</sup> at Vienna.<sup>12</sup> I have observed<sup>13</sup> only<sup>14</sup> few good pictures in Mr A.'s collection.<sup>15</sup> He has travelled over<sup>16</sup> all (say, whole) England. Do you like<sup>17</sup> Hamburg beef? Have you seen the minster of Friburg? No, but I have seen the Cologne<sup>18</sup> cathedral.<sup>19</sup> We read the Frankfort Gazette. This<sup>20</sup> is a Geneva<sup>21</sup> watch. I shall buy a pair<sup>22</sup> of Paris gloves.<sup>23</sup> You will find me in the adjoining<sup>24</sup> room. It is a wished-for<sup>25</sup> intelligence.<sup>26</sup> Milton's 'Paradise Lost' is a fine poem. The weather is charming. The disease is contagious. His<sup>27</sup> prospects<sup>28</sup> are brilliant. The answer<sup>29</sup> is decisive. The heat<sup>30</sup> was oppressive. Is Mr B. a German? Miss B. is a German lady. She has near<sup>31</sup> relations<sup>32</sup> at Stuttgart. We met<sup>33</sup> with two travellers from<sup>34</sup> Switzerland.<sup>35</sup> Strangers are not [being] admitted.<sup>36</sup> [The] death spares<sup>37</sup> neither<sup>38</sup> the poor nor<sup>39</sup> the rich. The ungrateful<sup>40</sup> is [being] hated<sup>41</sup> by everybody.<sup>42</sup> The new is not always good. Strive<sup>43</sup> after<sup>44</sup> the good and noble.

<sup>1</sup> Danish, dänisch. <sup>2</sup> Vessel, Schiff. <sup>3</sup> In the roads, auf der Rheide. <sup>4</sup> Cousin, Vetter. <sup>5</sup> Influential, einflußreich. <sup>6</sup> Capital, Hauptstadt (dat.) <sup>7</sup> To neglect, veräußen. <sup>8</sup> Opportunity, Gelegenheit. <sup>9</sup> To spend, zubringen. <sup>10</sup> Pleasant, angenehm. <sup>11</sup> Month, Monat. <sup>12</sup> At Vienna, in Wien. <sup>13</sup> To observe, bemerken. <sup>14</sup> Only, nur. <sup>15</sup> Collection, Sammlung. <sup>16</sup> To travel over, bereisen. <sup>17</sup> Do you like [to eat], essen Sie gern. <sup>18</sup> Cologne (adjective), Kölner. <sup>19</sup> Cathedral, Dom. <sup>20</sup> This, dies. <sup>21</sup> Geneva (adjective), Genfer. <sup>22</sup> A pair, ein Paar. <sup>23</sup> Glove, Handschuh. <sup>24</sup> Adjoining, anstoßend. <sup>25</sup> Wished-for, erwünscht. <sup>26</sup> Intelligence, Nachricht, f. <sup>27</sup> His, seine. <sup>28</sup> Prospect, Aussicht, f. <sup>29</sup> Answer, Antwort, f. <sup>30</sup> Heat, Hitze. <sup>31</sup> Near, nahe. <sup>32</sup> Relations, Verwandte. <sup>33</sup> To meet with, treffen. <sup>34</sup> From, aus, with the dative. <sup>35</sup> Switzerland, die Schweiz. <sup>36</sup> To admit, zulassen. <sup>37</sup> To spare, verschonen. <sup>38</sup> Neither, weder. <sup>39</sup> Nor, noch. <sup>40</sup> Ungrateful, unanständig. <sup>41</sup> To hate, hassen. <sup>42</sup> By everybody, von Jedermann. <sup>43</sup> To strive, streben. <sup>44</sup> After, nach, with the dative.

## XVII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 179. When a quality is ascribed to an object without any regard to other objects, the adjective stands in its fundamental form, called the *positive* degree; as—*der Mann ist reich*, the man is rich. *Herr N. ist ein reicher Mann*, Mr N. is a rich man.

When a quality is ascribed to an object in a comparative relation to other objects, or when different qualities, in comparison with one another, are ascribed to the same object, the relation is either one of equality or of inequality. The relation of equality is indicated in German as well as in English by certain particles placed before the positive. For example:—*Herr N. ist so reich als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is *as* rich as Mr Z. *Herr N. ist ein eben so reicher Mann als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is *just as* rich a man as Mr Z. *Er ist so edel als flug*, he is *as* noble as he is prudent.

The relation of inequality is expressed by particular forms of the adjective, called the *comparative* and *superlative* degrees.

§ 180. The comparative is used when a quality is ascribed to one person or thing in a higher degree than to another, or when to the same person or thing one quality is ascribed in a higher degree than another quality. In the former case, a *simple comparative* is used, which is formed, as in English, by adding to the adjective the syllable *er*; as in—*Herr N. ist reicher als Herr Z.*, Mr N. is richer than Mr Z. In the latter case, a *compound comparative* is used, which is formed by putting *mehr*, more, before the adjective; as in—*er ist mehr reich als weise*, he is more rich than wise.

§ 181. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u* (but not the diphthong *au*), are modified in the simple comparative and superlative of most monosyllabic adjectives; as—*lang*, long; *länger*, longer; *der längste*, the longest; *flug*, clever; *flüger*, more clever; *der flügste*, the cleverest.

The following adjectives do not modify :—

barsch, harsh.	farg, stingy.	sanft, soft.
brav, brave.	fnapp, tight.	fatt, satiated.
bunt, variegated.	lahm, lame.	schlaff, slack.
dumpf, dull (said of sound).	laß, tired.	schlanf, slender.
faß, fallow.	matt, wearied.	schroff, rugged.
falsch, false.	morsch, rotten.	starr, stiff.
flach, flat.	nackt, naked.	stolz, proud.
fröh, joyful.	platt, flat.	straff, tight, stretched.
glatt, smooth.	plump, clumsy.	stumpf, blunt.
höhl, hollow.	rasch, quick.	toll, mad.
hold, favourable.	roh, raw.	voll, full.
faßl, bald.	rund, round.	wahr, true.
	sacht, slow.	zahm, tame.

The practice varies with bang or bange, afraid ; blaß, pale ; fromm, pious ; gesund, sound ; klar, clear ; naß, wet ; zart, tender.

Notes.

The English language presents an analogy for the modification of the vowel in the comparative and superlative of *old*—elder, eldest.

§ 182. The comparative remains unchanged, when used as predicate, but in the attributive connection it is declined like an adjective in the positive degree, either by the strong or the weak declension, as the general rule in § 174 provides. For example :—*U. ist reicher als B., A. is richer than B. ; der reichere Mann, the richer man ; ein reicherer Mann, a richer man ; reichere Leute, richer people.*

Notes.

1. As the adjective in the positive degree, so the comparative sometimes loses its strong termination *es* in the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender, especially in poetry ; e. g.—*Kein schöner Bild sah ich in meinem Leben, G., no finer picture did I ever see in my life. Doch zieht ein höher Bedürfnis immer den strebenden Geist leise zur Wahrheit hinan, G., but a higher want ever draws the striving spirit gently towards the truth. Compare § 175, 1.*

2. The particle 'than' after the comparative is commonly expressed by *als*, sometimes by  *denn*  ; but the latter is rather antiquated. The particle 'the—the' before comparatives is expressed by *je*— *desto*  (or  *je* , or  *um so* ) ; e. g.—*je länger die Nächte, desto (or je, or um so) kürzer die Tage, the longer the nights, the shorter the days.*

§ 183. The superlative is used when a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in the highest degree, in comparison with all other, or at least a given number of, persons or things; or when a quality is ascribed to a person or thing in a very or eminently high degree, without strictly instituting a comparison. In the former case, the superlative is called *the relative superlative*; in the latter, *the absolute superlative*.

§ 184. The relative superlative is formed, as in English, by adding to the adjective *st* or *est*—the latter, if the final consonant be *d, t, s, p, sch, z*—and modifying the vowel when the adjective is a monosyllable (§ 181). It is declined like the adjective in the positive degree. For instance:—*Er ist der reichste Mann in der ganzen Stadt*, he is the richest man in the whole town. *Die reichsten Leute sind nicht immer die glücklichsten*, the richest people are not always the happiest. *Der kürzeste Tag*, the shortest day. *Die breitesten Straßen*, the broadest streets. *Liebster Bruder*, dearest brother.

#### Notes.

1. The relative superlative can be strengthened by having the genitive *aller*, 'of all,' prefixed; as—*der allerreichste Mann*, the richest man of all; *die allerfeinste Seide*, the very finest silk. *Und man hörte bei Hof die aller schönsten Gesänge*, *G.*, the most beautiful songs were heard at court.

2. The adverbial form of the relative superlative, as—*am reichsten*, (at the) richest; *am größten*, (at the) greatest, is sometimes employed instead of the adjective form to which this paragraph refers. From its adverbial nature, it is obvious that it can never be employed in an attributive connection with a substantive. Examples:—*Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gottes Hilfe am nächsten*, when the need is at the greatest, God's help is nearest. *Im nördlichen Theile der Stadt war die Erschütterung am stärksten*, in the northern part of the city the earthquake was strongest.

§ 185. The absolute superlative is formed by means of such adverbs as *höchst*, most; *sehr*, very; *äußerst*, extremely; *überaus*, exceedingly; *recht*, right; *ganz*, quite; *außerordentlich*, extraordinarily; *vorzüglich*, pre-eminently; *ungemein*, uncommonly. These are placed before the adjective, as in English, and the adjective is declined in the usual way. For instance:—*Das Dorf ist reinlich, und seine Lage höchst angenehm*, the village is clean, and its situation most pleasant. *Er ist ein überaus kluger Mann*, he is an exceedingly clever man. *Die Sache scheint mir äußerst wichtig*, the affair appears to me extremely important.

## Note.

A great many compound adjectives are, so far as their signification is concerned, equal to absolute superlatives; *e. g.* —

bettelarm, as poor as a beggar.  
bleischnier, heavy as lead.  
blitzschnell, quick as lightning.  
blutjung, very young.  
eiskalt, cold as ice.  
federleicht, light as a feather.  
felsfest, firm as a rock.  
feuerroth, red as fire.  
gallenbitter, bitter as gall.  
honigßuß, sweet as honey.  
kohlßchwarz, black as coal.  
kugelförmig, round as a ball.

nadelßcharf, sharp as a needle.  
nagelneu, split new.  
riesengroß, big as a giant.  
riesenstark, strong as a giant.  
ßchneeweiß, white as snow.  
ßpiegelglatt, smooth as a mirror.  
ßteinalt, very old.  
ßteinhart, hard as stone.  
ßteinreich, enormously rich.  
uralt, very old.  
wunderßchön, extremely beautiful.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

Mr N. is as rich as Mr L. Is the Neckar as broad<sup>1</sup> as the Rhine? England is not so fertile<sup>2</sup> as Spain<sup>3</sup> or Italy.<sup>4</sup> John<sup>5</sup> is older than Edward.<sup>6</sup> Is your brother taller<sup>7</sup> than you? The air has become purer<sup>8</sup> and cooler.<sup>9</sup> A fig<sup>10</sup> is sweeter<sup>11</sup> than an apple. A wolf<sup>12</sup> is stronger<sup>13</sup> than a sheep.<sup>14</sup> You must write longer letters. Have you ever<sup>15</sup> seen a finer<sup>16</sup> monument?<sup>17</sup> You have no<sup>18</sup> truer<sup>19</sup> friend in England. Give me a smaller<sup>20</sup> piece. The<sup>21</sup> longer the day, the shorter<sup>22</sup> the night. He is more tall than strong. She is more weak<sup>23</sup> than ill.<sup>24</sup> Your friend is more learned<sup>25</sup> than just.<sup>26</sup> This carriage<sup>27</sup> is more useful<sup>28</sup> than handsome.<sup>29</sup> It was a more artificial<sup>30</sup> than conclusive<sup>31</sup> speech.<sup>32</sup> The rose<sup>33</sup> is the most beautiful flower in the garden. These<sup>34</sup> were the happiest<sup>35</sup> days of my life. Plato and Aristotle<sup>36</sup> were the most celebrated<sup>37</sup> philosophers among<sup>38</sup> the Greeks.<sup>39</sup> I consider<sup>40</sup> you as<sup>41</sup> my best and truest

<sup>1</sup> Broad, breit. <sup>2</sup> Fertile, fruchtbar. <sup>3</sup> Spain, Spanien. <sup>4</sup> Italy, Italien.  
<sup>5</sup> John, Johann. <sup>6</sup> Edward, Eduard. <sup>7</sup> Tall, groß. <sup>8</sup> Pure, rein. <sup>9</sup> Cool, kühl.  
<sup>10</sup> Fig, Feige. <sup>11</sup> Sweet, süß. <sup>12</sup> Wolf, Wolf. <sup>13</sup> Strong, stark.  
<sup>14</sup> Sheep, Schaf. <sup>15</sup> Ever, je. <sup>16</sup> Fine, schön. <sup>17</sup> Monument, Denkmal.  
<sup>18</sup> No, kein. <sup>19</sup> True, treu. <sup>20</sup> Small, klein. <sup>21</sup> See § 182, note 2. <sup>22</sup> Short, kurz.  
<sup>23</sup> Weak, schwach. <sup>24</sup> Ill, krank. <sup>25</sup> Learned, gelehrt. <sup>26</sup> Just, gerecht.  
<sup>27</sup> Carriage, Wagen. <sup>28</sup> Useful, nützlich. <sup>29</sup> Handsome, schön. <sup>30</sup> Artificial, künstlich.  
<sup>31</sup> Conclusive, bündig. <sup>32</sup> Speech, Rede. <sup>33</sup> Rose, Roß. <sup>34</sup> These, dies.  
<sup>35</sup> Happy, glücklich. <sup>36</sup> Aristotle, Aristoteles. <sup>37</sup> Celebrated, berühmte.  
<sup>38</sup> Among, unter, with the dative. <sup>39</sup> Greek, Griech. <sup>40</sup> To consider, betrachten. <sup>41</sup> As, als.



friend. Work<sup>42</sup> and hunger<sup>43</sup> season<sup>44</sup> the plainest<sup>45</sup> dish.<sup>46</sup> The most dangerous<sup>47</sup> enemies of [the] life are intemperance<sup>48</sup> and idleness.<sup>49</sup> Mary<sup>50</sup> is the youngest,<sup>51</sup> and Caroline<sup>52</sup> the oldest of the sisters. He is a most modest<sup>53</sup> youth.<sup>54</sup> The weather is excessively cold. The affair<sup>55</sup> is most important.<sup>56</sup> Mrs B. is a most learned lady. We have received<sup>57</sup> very favourable<sup>58</sup> accounts<sup>59</sup> from India.<sup>60</sup> An exceedingly cruel<sup>61</sup> murder<sup>62</sup> has lately<sup>63</sup> been committed.<sup>64</sup>

<sup>42</sup> Work, Arbeit. <sup>43</sup> Hunger, Hunger. <sup>44</sup> To season, würzen. <sup>45</sup> Plain, einfach. <sup>46</sup> Dish, Gericht. <sup>47</sup> Dangerous, gefährlich. <sup>48</sup> Intemperance, Unmäßigkeit. <sup>49</sup> Idleness, Trägheit. <sup>50</sup> Mary, Marie. <sup>51</sup> Young, jung. <sup>52</sup> Caroline, Karoline. <sup>53</sup> Modest, bescheiden. <sup>54</sup> Youth, Jüngling. <sup>55</sup> Affair, Sache. <sup>56</sup> Important, wichtig. <sup>57</sup> To receive, erhalten. <sup>58</sup> Favourable, günstig. <sup>59</sup> Account, Nachricht, f. <sup>60</sup> From India, aus Indien. <sup>61</sup> Cruel, grausam. <sup>62</sup> Murder, Mord. <sup>63</sup> Lately, neulich. <sup>64</sup> To commit, begehen.

§ 186. The superlative of groß, great, is der größte, which is a contraction for größteste.

An interchange of ch and h takes place in hoch, high, höher, der höchste; and in nah or nahe, near, näher, der nächste.

Gut, good, has besser, der beste.

Viel, much, has mehr, der meiste. The plural of mehr—namely, mehrere, or more commonly mehrere—is used in the sense of ‘several.’

Wenig, little, few, has the regular forms weniger, der wenigste, and also the irregular forms minder, der mindeste.

The superlative der erste, the first, is formed from eh, early; and the superlative der letzte, the last, from the old lat, late. From these two superlatives there are again formed the comparatives der erstere, the former, and der letztere, the latter.

The following adjectives, derived from adverbs of place, have the form of comparatives, but the meaning of simple adjectives. They make the following superlatives:—

ober, upper;	der oberste,	the uppermost.
unter, under;	„ unterste,	„ undermost.
inner, inner;	„ innerste,	„ inmost.
äußer, outer;	„ äußerste,	„ outmost.
vorder, fore;	„ vorderste,	„ foremost.
hinter, hinder;	„ hinterste,	„ hindmost.
mittler, middle;	„ mittelfste,	„ middlemost.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

The mountains are higher than they appear.<sup>1</sup> The chamois-hunter<sup>2</sup> disregards<sup>3</sup> the greatest dangers.<sup>4</sup> I have dressed<sup>5</sup> myself in the greatest haste.<sup>6</sup> Good health<sup>7</sup> is the greatest earthly<sup>8</sup> blessing.<sup>9</sup> The oldest wine is the best. You will have no better opportunity. Her<sup>10</sup> nearest relations<sup>11</sup> are dead. Princes<sup>12</sup> are often unhappier<sup>13</sup> than [the] most of their subjects.<sup>14</sup> Charles<sup>15</sup> has made [the] fewest mistakes.<sup>16</sup> She will arrive by<sup>17</sup> the first train.<sup>18</sup> The last train is a goods-train.<sup>19</sup> The family<sup>20</sup> is (say, finds itself<sup>21</sup>) in the utmost<sup>22</sup> distress.<sup>23</sup> They live<sup>24</sup> in the uppermost story.<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To appear, scheinen. <sup>2</sup> Chamois-hunter, Gemsenjäger. <sup>3</sup> To disregard, verachten. <sup>4</sup> Danger, Gefahr. <sup>5</sup> To dress, anfeiden. <sup>6</sup> Haste, Eile. <sup>7</sup> Health, Gesundheit. <sup>8</sup> Earthly, irdisch. <sup>9</sup> Blessing, Gut. <sup>10</sup> Her, ihre. <sup>11</sup> Relations, Verwandten. <sup>12</sup> Prince, Fürst. <sup>13</sup> Unhappy, unglücklich. <sup>14</sup> Of their subjects, ihrer Unterthanen. <sup>15</sup> Charles, Karl. <sup>16</sup> Mistake, Fehler. <sup>17</sup> By, mit, with the dative. <sup>18</sup> Train, Bahnzug, or Zug. <sup>19</sup> Goods-train, Güterzug. <sup>20</sup> Family, Familie. <sup>21</sup> To find one's self, sich befinden. <sup>22</sup> Utmost, äußerste. <sup>23</sup> Distress, Noth. <sup>24</sup> To live, wohnen. <sup>25</sup> Story, Stodwerk.

§ 187. There are many adjectives which cannot have any degrees of comparison, because they denote qualities which we cannot conceive as being possessed by different persons or things in a higher or lower degree; *e.g.*—tobt, dead; lebendig, alive; stumm, dumb; blind, blind; leer, empty; recht, right; adelig, of noble birth; heutig, belonging to this day, &c.; and particularly those which denote the material of which a thing is made, as—steinern, made of stone; hölzern, wooden; golden, golden, &c. However, when such words assume a figurative meaning, they also admit of the degrees of comparison, as in—der leerste Kopf, the emptiest head; sein Betragen war hölzerner als je, his behaviour was more awkward than ever.

§ 188. Participles do not admit of the degrees of comparison, with the exception of such as have entirely assumed the nature of adjectives; *e.g.*—gelehrt, learned; gewandt, active, versatile; betrübt, sorrowful; beredt, eloquent; ergeben, devoted, and others; also most of the present participles mentioned in § 177.

## XVIII.

### PRONOUNS.

§ 189. Pronouns are words which supply the place of the name of a person or thing, and at the same time show the relation in which a person or thing stands to the speaker. Pronouns which are not joined to substantives, but stand by themselves, are called *substantive pronouns*; as—*ich*, I; *du*, thou; *er*, he; *wer*, who; *was*, what. Pronouns which are connected with a substantive like an attributive adjective, so as to qualify the substantive, are called *adjective pronouns*; as—*mein*, my; *dein*, thy; *sein*, his; *dieser*, this; *jener*, that; *welcher*, which.

§ 190. In regard to signification, all pronouns are divided into six classes:—

1. *Personal pronouns*—*ich*, I; *du*, thou; *er*, he; *sie*, she; *es*, it; *wir*, we; *ihr*, you; *sie*, they.

2. *Possessive pronouns*—*mein*, my; *dein*, thy; *sein*, his; *ihr*, her; *unser*, our; *euer*, your; *ihr*, their.

3. *Demonstrative pronouns*—*der*, that; *derjenige*, that; *derselbe*, the same; *dieser*, this; *jener*, that, yon; *joldher*, such.

4. *Interrogative pronouns*—*wer*, who; *was*, what; *welcher*, which; *was für ein*, what kind of.

5. *Relative pronouns*—*wer*, who; *was*, what; *der*, who; *welcher*, which.

6. *Indefinite pronouns*—*man*, one; *Jemand*, somebody; *Niemand*, nobody; *etwas*, something; *nichts*, nothing; *Jedermann*, everybody.

#### 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 191. The personal pronouns point out the person speaking, or the first person—*ich*, I; in the plural *wir*, we; the person spoken to, or the second person—*du*, thou; in the plural *ihr*, you; the person or thing spoken of, or the third person—

er, he; ſie, she; eß, it; in the plural ſie, they. They are declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.				
FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.		
		MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i> ich, I;	du, thou;	er, he;	ſie, she;	eß, it.
<i>Gen.</i> meiner (or mein), of me;	deiner (or dein), of thee;	ſeiner (or sein), him	ſihr, her;	ſeiner (or ſeit), of it.
<i>Dat.</i> mir, to me;	dir, to thee;	ihr, him;		to it.
<i>Acc.</i> mich, me;	diß, thee;	iñ, him;		.
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i> wir, we;	ihr, you;	ſie, they.		
<i>Gen.</i> unſer, of us;	eurer, of you;	ihrer, of it.		
<i>Dat.</i> unß, to us;	euch, to you;	ihnen, to the.		
<i>Acc.</i> unß, us;	euch, you;	ſie, them.		

## Notes.

1. In the early language, there were employed in the genitive singular the forms *mein*, *dein*, *ſein*, in the place of which *meiner*, *deiner*, *ſeiner*, are now commonly used. The old forms still occur in poetry, and in a few phrases; as—*vergiß mein nicht*, forget me not; *ich gedente dein*, I think of thee; *man ſpottet ſein*, one sneers at him. The corresponding genitive *ihr*, for *ihrer*, is no longer in use.

2. The neuter *eß* is often, for the sake of euphony, contracted with the word that precedes it, and sometimes (in poetry) with the word that follows it, and the omission of the vowel *e* is marked by an apostrophe ('); e.g.—*Nimm's hin*, take it. *Iß't's gewiß?* is it certain? *Was giebt's?* what is the matter? *'s kommt Regen*, *Sch.*, rain is coming.

§ 192. As the pronoun of the third person has in the singular different forms for the three genders, it must agree in gender with its antecedent—that is, with the substantive to which it refers. For example:—*Sie* (namely, *die Erde*) *ißt rund*, it (the earth) is round. *Ich habe ihn* (namely, *den Schlüssel*) *verloren*, I have lost it (the key). *Es war ein Meiſterſchuß*, *ich muß ihn loben*, *Sch.*, it was a master-shot, I must praise it. *So verabscheut ißt die Tyrannei*, daß *ſie kein Werkzeug findet*, *Sch.*, the tyranny is so detested, that it finds no tool.

§ 193. On account of the identity of the genitive and dative

of the neuter pronoun of the third person with the genitive and dative of the masculine, the use of *seiner* and *ihm* in the neuter gender is generally avoided, and the corresponding forms of the neuter demonstrative pronoun *daß*—namely, *dessen* and *dem*—are employed in their stead. For example:—*Ich erinnere mich dessen*, I remember it. *Sie waren geehrt und freuten sich dessen*, they were honoured and were glad of it. *Ich gebe ihm keinen Glauben*, I give it no credit. The third person, moreover, cannot be joined to the adverb *da*, there, or, when the preposition is a vowel, *dar* is used instead, and the particle *durch*, as in *dadurch*, through it; *dafür*, for it; *damit*, with it; *davon*, of it; *darin*, in it; *darunter*, beneath it. For example:—*Ich stimme für ihn*, I vote for it. *Bist du davon überzeugt?* art thou persuaded of it? *Sie können sich darauf verlassen*, you may rely upon it. When the pronoun refers to a definite substance, it can be rendered by a form of the demonstrative *derselbe*, the same.

## Note.

*Es* answers to the English 'so' in such phrases as—*ich hoffe es*, I hope so; *ich glaube es*, I believe so; or when it takes the place of an adjective, participle, or substantive mentioned in the preceding clause, as in the following examples:—*Setzt seid ihr frei, ihr seid's durch dies Gesetz, Sch.*, now you are free, you are so through this law. *Dann wären wir Sklaven, und verdienten es zu sein, Sch.*, then we should be slaves, and should deserve to be so. *Wo die Gefahr eine gewöhnliche Erscheinung ist, ist es auch der Muth, Jacobs*, where danger is an ordinary phenomenon, courage is likewise so.

§ 194. The most usual mode of addressing one or more persons is by the third person plural—*Sie*, you; *Ihnen*, to you; *Ihr*, your. This mode is now generally adopted in the conversation of people of education, even when speaking to those of an inferior condition. The natural address by the second person singular—*du*, thou—is confined to such relations of intimacy as exist between the members of a family and confidential friends. The Supreme Being is also addressed by *Du*. The second person plural—*ihr*, you—is used in speaking to two or more persons, each of whom would be entitled to the familiar *du*. Other modes of address, such as the third person singular—*er*, he, *sie*, she—and also the second person plural—*ihr*, you—(to a single individual) are customary among country-people and others living in a

similar sphere. Inferiors, especially servants, are sometimes addressed by their employers in the third person singular; but even in such relations it is more common now to use, according to circumstances, either the second person singular, or the third person plural. In the poetical style, *du* and *ih* are employed.

The addressing pronoun, especially that of the third person plural, is always written with a capital initial; *e.g.*—*Wo find Sie gewesen?* where have you been? *Ich danke Ihnen,* I thank you.

## Note.

The strange and unnatural mode of addressing a person by the third person plural is of comparatively recent origin. In ancient times every person, even the sovereign of the country, was addressed by *Du*. But in imitation of the usage of the Romanic languages, the custom was introduced about the beginning of the thirteenth century, of addressing men or women of rank by *Sir*, *Guch*, *Guer* (or rather *Gwer*, according to the orthography of that time).<sup>\*</sup> After the middle of the seventeenth century, it was considered more polite to use the third person singular—*Er*, or *Sie*. But when in course of time even this usage lost its respectability by being extended to people of an inferior station, the third person plural was at last resorted to. The latter mode, however, was not firmly established till about the middle of last century.

<sup>\*</sup> A remaining trace of this old custom is the pedantic fashion, still rather tenaciously clung to in Germany, of using in ceremonious letters the address *Guer* (or abbreviated *Gm.*) *Wohlgelobten*; *Guer Hochwohlgelobten*, &c., varying according to the rank or station which the person addressed holds in society.

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

He asked<sup>1</sup> me. I know him very well. Does he know thee? The Lord<sup>2</sup> will not forsake<sup>3</sup> me. Pray lend [to] me a dollar.<sup>4</sup> I expect<sup>5</sup> her to-day. Give [to] him the letter. I have lent [to] her the book. I will give [to] thee a good advice.<sup>6</sup> Have you seen him? We have spoken with<sup>7</sup> him. Write to us soon. Shew<sup>8</sup> [to] him the way.<sup>9</sup> Here are the letters; I have copied<sup>10</sup> them. Are they friends? We have sought<sup>11</sup> you everywhere.<sup>12</sup> I am much obliged<sup>13</sup> to you. She has deceived<sup>14</sup> me. Has he thought<sup>15</sup> of me? I

<sup>1</sup> To ask, fragen. <sup>2</sup> Lord, Herr. <sup>3</sup> To forsake, verlassen. <sup>4</sup> Dollar, Thaler. <sup>5</sup> To expect, erwarten. <sup>6</sup> Advice, Rath. <sup>7</sup> With, mit, with the dative. <sup>8</sup> To shew, zeigen. <sup>9</sup> Way, Weg. <sup>10</sup> To copy, abschreiben. <sup>11</sup> To seek, suchen. <sup>12</sup> Everywhere, überall. <sup>13</sup> Much obliged, sehr verbunden. <sup>14</sup> To deceive, hintergehen. (See § 109.) <sup>15</sup> To think, denken.

have thought of thee. We shall think of you. They will have need<sup>16</sup> of us. We have need of them. Do you see the rainbow?<sup>17</sup> It is double.<sup>18</sup> I have lost a key; have you found it? The wine is sour,<sup>19</sup> I cannot drink it. Taste<sup>20</sup> this pear,<sup>21</sup> it is sweet. [The] virtue,<sup>22</sup> it is no empty<sup>23</sup> sound.<sup>24</sup> Do you vote<sup>25</sup> for<sup>26</sup> it? You are responsible<sup>27</sup> for it. They insisted<sup>28</sup> upon<sup>29</sup> it. I rely<sup>30</sup> upon it. I wonder<sup>31</sup> at<sup>32</sup> it.

<sup>16</sup> To have need, bedürfen. <sup>17</sup> Rainbow, Regenbogen. <sup>18</sup> Double, doppelt. <sup>19</sup> Sour, sauer. <sup>20</sup> To taste, kosten. <sup>21</sup> This pear, diese Birne. <sup>22</sup> Virtue, Tugend. <sup>23</sup> Empty, leer. <sup>24</sup> Sound, Schall. <sup>25</sup> To vote, stimmen. <sup>26</sup> For, für. <sup>27</sup> Responsible, verantwortlich. <sup>28</sup> To insist, bestehen. <sup>29</sup> Upon, auf. <sup>30</sup> To rely, sich verlassen. <sup>31</sup> To wonder, sich wundern. <sup>32</sup> At, über.

## REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 195. The German language expresses the reflective relation in the first and second persons singular as well as plural by means of the personal pronouns; but in the third person both of the singular and plural by means of the word *sich*, which serves at once for the dative and accusative. For example:—*ich fleide mich an*, I dress myself; *wir fleiden uns an*, we dress ourselves; *du rühmst dich*, thou boastest thyself; *ihr rühmt euch*, you boast yourselves; *er (or sie) erholt sich*, he (or she) recovers himself (or herself); *sie erholen sich*, they recover themselves; *erholen Sie sich*, recover yourself (or yourselves). In old English, the personal pronouns were also used with a reflective meaning; *e.g.*—I have bethought *me* of another fault; *hie thee*; hold *you* content; wash *you*, make *you* clean.

## Note.

The English reflective pronouns 'myself, thyself, himself,' &c., are often used in an *exclusive* sense, the emphasis being laid on 'self;' *e.g.*—I *myself* have been a witness of it. I *myself* can save her. There he is *himself*. You have told it *yourself*. We have seen it *ourselves*. In German, the indeclinable word *selbst* or *selber* is employed in this sense:—*Ich selbst bin Zeuge davon gewesen. Ich selber kann sie retten, Sch. Da ist er selber, Sch. Sie selbst haben es gesagt. Wir haben es selbst gesehen.* In cases where the English reflective pronoun conveys at once an exclusive and reflective meaning, the word *selbst* is added to the reflective pronoun in German. For example:—*Erkenne dich selbst*, know thyself. *Homer vergaß sich selbst, G., Homer forgot himself. Der brave Mann denkt an sich selbst zuletzt, Sch., a brave man thinks last of himself.*

The word *selbst* is also used with an *inclusive* signification, and is translated by 'even,' or by the pronouns 'myself, thyself, himself,' &c. In

this sense it always has a subordinate accent. Examples:—*Selbst der Reichste ist nicht ohne Sorgen*, even the richest, or the richest himself, is not without cares. *Wanken auch die Berge selbst?* *Sch.*, do even the very mountains shake? *Der Prinz selbst verlor seinen Ernst*, *Sch.*, the prince himself lost his seriousness.

§ 196. The reflective pronouns of the plural—*uns*, *euch*, *sich*—can also be employed when a *reciprocal* action between two or more subjects is to be expressed. For example:—*Wir sahen uns bestürzt an*, *Sch.*, we looked at each other with surprise. *Warum zankt ihr euch?* Why do you quarrel with one another? *Die Tyrannen reichen sich die Hände*, *Sch.*, the tyrants reach their hands to one another. This relation is more commonly expressed, however, by the indeclinable word *einander*, especially if an ambiguity could possibly arise from the use of the reflective pronouns; *e. g.*—*Wir schätzen einander*, we esteem one another. *Sie kennen einander*, they know each other; or with prepositions—*Wir schreiben an einander*, we write to each other. *Sie saßen neben einander*, they sat beside each other.

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

I have wounded<sup>1</sup> myself. Have you wounded yourself? She is dressing<sup>2</sup> herself. They pride<sup>3</sup> themselves in their wealth.<sup>4</sup> He came himself. The physician<sup>5</sup> himself is ill. I shall do it myself. They did it themselves. Have you heard it yourself? She herself has betrayed<sup>6</sup> the deed.<sup>7</sup> Know<sup>8</sup> thyself. He thinks<sup>9</sup> only of<sup>10</sup> himself. Even the king (or, the king himself) could not save<sup>11</sup> him. Even his enemies admire<sup>12</sup> him. Even his name is unknown<sup>13</sup> to me. The wisest himself can err.<sup>14</sup> My best friends themselves have forsaken me. We wished<sup>15</sup> each other a good-night. We met<sup>16</sup> each other. They hate<sup>17</sup> each other. They betrayed each other. They betrayed themselves. We must assist<sup>18</sup> each other. We shall see one another again. We travelled with one another. We sat beside<sup>19</sup> each other.

<sup>1</sup> To wound, verwunden. <sup>2</sup> To dress, ankleiden. <sup>3</sup> To pride one's self, sich brüsten. <sup>4</sup> In their wealth, mit ihrem Reichthum. <sup>5</sup> Physician, Arzt. <sup>6</sup> To betray, verrathen. <sup>7</sup> Deed, That. <sup>8</sup> To know, erkennen. <sup>9</sup> To think, denken. <sup>10</sup> Of, an. <sup>11</sup> To save, retten. <sup>12</sup> To admire, bewundern. <sup>13</sup> Unknown, unbekannt. <sup>14</sup> To err, irren. <sup>15</sup> To wish, wünschen. <sup>16</sup> To meet, treffen. <sup>17</sup> To hate, hassen. <sup>18</sup> To assist, beistehen. <sup>19</sup> Beside, neben.



## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 197. The possessive pronouns represent the object to which they are joined, as being in the possession of one of the three persons—the person or persons speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns, the latter assuming the form of adjectives, and are therefore rightly denominated *personal adjective pronouns*.

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>First Person,</i>	mein,	meine,	mein, my.
<i>Second "</i>	dein,	deine,	dein, thy.
<i>Third "</i>	{ fein, ihr,	feine, ihre,	fein, his, its. ihr, her, its.

## PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>First Person,</i>	unser,	unsere,	unser, our.
<i>Second "</i>	euer,	eure,	euer, your.
<i>Third "</i>	ihr, (Ihr,	ihre, Ihre,	ihr, their. Ihr, your,
	when used to address one or more persons.)		

The possessive pronouns agree with the substantive which they qualify in gender, number, and case. They are declined after the strong declension of adjectives, but they have, like the indefinite article, no inflectional termination in the nominative singular masculine, or in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	PLURAL. ALL THREE GENDERS.
<i>Nom.</i>	mein,	meine,	mein, my ;	meine, my.
<i>Gen.</i>	meines,	meiner,	meines, of my ;	meiner, of my.
<i>Dat.</i>	meinem,	meiner,	meinem, to my ;	meinen, to my.
<i>Acc.</i>	meinen,	meine,	mein, my ;	meine, my.

## Note.

As there are two pronouns for the third person singular—*sein* and *ihr*—it depends in every instance upon the gender of the antecedent which of

the two must be employed; whilst the declension of the pronoun—that is, in what gender, number, and case it is to be put—depends upon the substantive which it precedes and qualifies. For example:—Die Blume hat ihren schönen Geruch verloren, the flower has lost *its* fine smell. Die Natur fordert unwiderstehlich ihre Rechte, *G.*, nature irresistibly demands *its* (or *her*) rights. Das Dorf mit seinen Bewohnern, the village with *its* inhabitants. Das Schiff mit seiner ganzen Mannschaft, the ship with *her* whole crew.

§ 198. When the substantive which the possessive pronoun qualifies is omitted or understood, the pronoun takes either the weak or the strong declension throughout, according as the definite article precedes it or not. For instance:—Wem gehört dieser Hut? Es ist meiner, or der meine. To whom does this hat belong? It is mine. Leih ihm dein Buch, er hat seines (or das seine) verlegt, lend him thy book, he has mislaid his. Sein Loos ist meines, *Sch.*, his fate is mine.

Instead of der, die, das meine; der, die, das seine; der, die, das unsere, &c., the following forms are in more ordinary use:—

der, die, das meinige, mine;	der, die, das unsrige, ours.
“ “ “ deinige, thine;	“ “ “ eurige, yours.
“ “ “ seinige, his;	“ “ “ ihrige, theirs.
“ “ “ ihrige, hers;	“ “ “ (Ihrige, yours.)

They always have the definite article, and are accordingly declined after the weak declension. For example:—Sein Nam' ist Friedland; auch der meinige, *Sch.*, his name is Friedland; mine also. Meine Gesundheit ist dauerhafter als die seinige, my health is stronger than his. Wir wohnen in einem fremden Hause, wir haben das unsrige vermietet, we live in another person's house; we have let ours, or our own.

When the possessive pronoun is the predicate of a sentence, the forms mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr (without any change whatever), are also used. For instance:—Was dieses Zimmer enthält, ist mein, what this room contains, is mine. Dieser Augenblick ist dein, this moment is thine, or thy own. Sein sind die Märkte, die Gerichte, sein die Kaufmannsstraßen, *Sch.*, his are the markets, the courts, his the highways. Kein Kaiser kann, was unser ist, verschenken, *Sch.*, no emperor can give away what is ours.

Note.

The plural die Meinigen, die Deinigen, &c., signifies 'those belonging to me, to thee,' &c., or 'my, thy friends or relations;' and the neuter das

Meinige, daß Deinige, &c., signifies 'my, thy property, or share, or duty.' For example:—Ich gehe mit den Meinigen nach Frankfurt, G., I am going with my family to Frankfort. Wie befinden sich die Ihrigen? how are you all at home? Das ist meine Hütte! Ich stehe wieder auf dem Meinigen, Sch., that is my hut! I stand once more upon my own property. Er hat all das Seinige verschwendet, he has squandered all that belonged to him. Ich habe das Meinige gethan, I have done my duty, or my utmost, or all in my power.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

I have lost my purse.<sup>1</sup> I have lost my pocket-handkerchief.<sup>2</sup> Has he lost his situation?<sup>3</sup> They have attained<sup>4</sup> their object.<sup>5</sup> She has neglected<sup>6</sup> her duties.<sup>7</sup> England is our native country.<sup>8</sup> Hear my opinion.<sup>9</sup> Her mother wrote to her sister. I shewed his letter to my cousin.<sup>10</sup> My hopes<sup>11</sup> have been frustrated.<sup>12</sup> Have you spent<sup>13</sup> your money? The flower has lost its smell.<sup>14</sup> The river is navigable,<sup>15</sup> for<sup>16</sup> its bed is deep and broad. My hat is finer than thine. Take your book, and give [to] me mine; yours is torn.<sup>17</sup> Her drawings<sup>18</sup> are better than ours. Where have you bought your watch? I shall give<sup>19</sup> mine away, and buy a new one. My umbrella<sup>20</sup> is being mended,<sup>21</sup> pray lend [to] me yours. Are these gloves<sup>22</sup> yours or mine? I prefer<sup>23</sup> his house to yours. The house is my own. What this box<sup>24</sup> contains<sup>25</sup> is our own. My friends desire<sup>26</sup> to be remembered to you. His relations have removed<sup>27</sup> to Cologne.<sup>28</sup> He has squandered<sup>29</sup> his property. I shall do all in my power. We have done our utmost.

<sup>1</sup> Purse, Börse. <sup>2</sup> Pocket-handkerchief, Taschentuch. <sup>3</sup> Situation, Stelle.  
<sup>4</sup> To attain, erreichen. <sup>5</sup> Object, Zweck. <sup>6</sup> To neglect, vernachlässigen.  
<sup>7</sup> Duty, Pflicht. <sup>8</sup> Native country, Vaterland. <sup>9</sup> Opinion, Meinung.  
<sup>10</sup> Cousin, Vetter. <sup>11</sup> Hope, Hoffnung. <sup>12</sup> To frustrate, vereiteln. <sup>13</sup> To spend, ausgeben. <sup>14</sup> Smell, Geruch. <sup>15</sup> Navigable, schiffbar. <sup>16</sup> For, denn.  
<sup>17</sup> Torn, zerissen. <sup>18</sup> Drawing, Zeichnung. <sup>19</sup> To give away, verschenken.  
<sup>20</sup> Umbrella, Regenschirm. <sup>21</sup> To mend, ausbessern. <sup>22</sup> Glove, Handschuh.  
<sup>23</sup> To prefer, vorziehen. <sup>24</sup> Box, Kiste. <sup>25</sup> To contain, enthalten. <sup>26</sup> Desire to be remembered to you, lassen sich Ihnen empfehlen. <sup>27</sup> To remove, ziehen.  
 (See § 67, 2). <sup>28</sup> To Cologne, nach Köln. <sup>29</sup> To squander, verschwenden.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 199. Demonstrative pronouns point to an object, and can all be used substantively as well as adjectively. There are six demonstrative pronouns ; namely—

der, die, daß, the, that.  
 dieser, diese, dieseß, this.  
 jener, jene, jenes, that, yon.  
 solcher, solche, solcheß, such.  
 derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, that.  
 derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same.

They are declined as follows :—

The declension of *der, die, daß*, when used adjectively—that is, in an adjective connection with a substantive—is the same as that of the definite article. But when used substantively—that is, not in an adjective connection with a substantive—it has the following enlarged forms :—

*Sing. Gen.* dessen, deren, dessen (or deß), of that ; of him, of her, of it.

*Plur. Gen.* derer, or deren, of those, of them.

“ *Dat.* denen, to those, to them.

The form *deren*, of them, in the genitive plural can be used only in the sense of the genitive plural of the third personal pronoun, *ihrer*. *Deß* in the genitive of the neuter occurs only in poetry.

*Dieser, jener*, and *solcher*, are declined according to the strong declension of adjectives. *Solcher* occurs also with the indefinite article placed either before or after it :—*ein solcher, eine solche, ein solcheß* ; or *solch ein, solch eine, solch ein*. In the former case, *ein solcher* is declined like an adjective ; in the latter, *solch* remains unchanged.

*Derjenige* and *derselbe* are declined like adjectives with the definite article, according to the following specimen :—

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>derjenige,</i>	<i>diejenige,</i>	<i>dasjenige,</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dessenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>desjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>demjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>demjenigen,</i>	<i>denjenigen.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>denjenigen,</i>	<i>diejenige,</i>	<i>dasjenige,</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>

§ 200. *Der, die, daß*, has of all demonstrative pronouns the most general signification, as it may stand for *dieser, jener, and derjenige*. Examples:—*Da ist der Tell, der führt das Ruder auch, Sch.*, there is that (man) Tell, he (or, that one) also manages the helm. *Des Wegs kam er, Sch.*, he came that (or this) way. *Dort oben ist dein Vater! Den ruf' an! Sch.*, there above is thy Father! call on him! *Ist's der im Nachen, den ihr sucht? Sch.*, is it that one in the boat whom you seek? *Das ist des Kaisers Hand und Siegel, Sch.*, that is the emperor's hand and seal. *Nimm das Geld, ich bedarf dessen nicht, take the money, I do not require it. Kaufe keine Blumen, ich habe deren genug, do not buy any flowers, I have enough of them. Das Ansehen derer, die seine Person umgaben, Sch.*, the high rank of those who surrounded his person. *Das Geheimniß des Herrn ist unter denen, die ihn fürchten, B.*, the secret of the Lord is with them who fear him.

## Notes.

1. The genitive of this demonstrative pronoun in its enlarged forms—*dessen* and *deren*—is sometimes employed for the possessive pronouns of the third person, in order to avoid ambiguity. For example:—*König Philipp August von Frankreich bestärkte den Prinzen Johann in der Feindseligkeit gegen seinen Bruder und dessen Freunde, Wilken*, Philip Augustus, King of France, confirmed Prince John in his enmity towards his brother and his friends—that is, his brother's friends. *Roland ritt hinter'm Vater her mit dessen Speer und Schilde, U.*, Roland rode behind his father with his—that is, his father's—spear and shield. *Sie beschenkte ihre Schwester und deren Tochter*, she gave presents to her sister and her daughter, namely, her sister's daughter.

2. When the demonstrative 'that' is joined to a preposition proper, its equivalent in German very often assumes the form of the adverb *da*, or when the preposition begins with a vowel, of *dar*, and the preposition is annexed. But this takes place only if the notion of a thing (and not of a person) is expressed, and if, at the same time, the pronoun is not joined with a substantive. Thus *dadurch* is said for 'through that,' *damit* for 'with that,' *dafür* for 'for that,' *dabei* for 'at that,' *darin* for 'in that,' *darauf* for 'upon that,' &c. For example:—*Ich bin dafür verantwortlich, I am responsible for that. Ich weiß nichts davon, I know nothing of that. Darin hast du Recht, in that you are right. Ich habe nicht daran gedacht, I did not think of that. Seine Stühle waren uralt, aber er lud täglich Semanten ein, darauf zu sitzen, G.*, his chairs were very old, but he daily invited somebody to sit upon them. (See § 193.) When the demonstrative pronoun stands as antecedent to a relative, the adverb *da* cannot be used in its place. For example:—*Mein Vater sagte mir wenig von dem (not davon), was er mit ihm geredet hatte, G.*, my father told me little of

that about which he had spoken with him. Vergebens erinnerte der Abgeordnete den Eroberer an das (not daran), was die Gerechtigkeit von ihm forderte, *Sch.*, in vain did the delegate remind the conqueror of what (literally, of that which) justice demanded of him.

§ 201. Dieser, diese, dieses, this, points to a particular object near to the speaker, either with regard to space or to time; jener, jene, jenes, that, yon, points to a particular object distant from the speaker; *e. g.*—dieser Baum ist höher als jener, this tree is higher than that one. In dieser Welt und in jener Welt, in this world and in the world to come. In the same way, when two objects have been spoken of, the last mentioned is referred to by dieser, English 'the latter,' and the first mentioned by jener, English 'the former;' *e. g.*—der Frühling und der Herbst hat seine Freuden: dieser giebt Früchte, jener Blumen, spring as well as autumn has its delights: the latter gives fruits, the former flowers.

## Notes.

1. The neuter dieses, when used substantively, is, like the neuter das or es, often employed in the nominative and accusative, to indicate the most general and indefinite notion of a person or thing, without any regard to the gender or number of the object pointed at. Dieses is then usually contracted into dieß. Examples:—Dieß ist ein Feigenbaum, this is a fig-tree. Dieß ist eine Pflanze, this is a pink. Wofür hältst du dieß? what dost thou take this for? Dieß sind wichtige Papiere, these are important documents. Dieß hier ist mein Schwestersohn, *Sch.*, this is my sister's son. Das ist Herr Reding, *Sch.*, that is Mr Reding. Das sind meine Schwestern, those are my sisters. Das ist des Königs Wille nicht, *Sch.*, that is not the will of the king. Das sind des Himmels furchtbare Gerichte, *Sch.*, those are the fearful judgments of Heaven. Es war meine Mutter, it was my mother. Es sind Fremde, they are strangers.

2. When the neuter dieß, used substantively, and applied to notions of things in a general way, comes to be connected with a preposition, the adverb hier is generally used instead, the preposition being annexed. For example:—Hieran erkenne ich ihn, by this (or hereby) I know him. Hiervon weiß ich nichts, of this I know nothing. Hiermit (or hiemit) muß ich schließen, with this I must close.

§ 202. Solcher, solche, solches, such, points to an object, with respect to its nature or quality. For instance:—Nicht jeder Baum trägt solche Frucht, it is not every tree that bears such fruit. Mit solchen Federn kann ich nicht schreiben, I cannot write with such pens. Ein solches Betragen ist sehr tadelnswürdig, such conduct is very blameworthy. Solch ein

Wetter ist selten zu solcher Ernte gekommen, *G.*, rarely was such weather for such a harvest.

## Notes.

1. When *such* in English is placed before an adjective, it unites with its demonstrative nature the power of an adverb of intensity, and is generally translated by *so*. For instance:—*Such* bad weather, *so* schlechtes Wetter. To be seen by ladies of *such* high breeding in *such* vulgar attitudes! *Goldsmith*, Von *so* vornehmen Damen in *so* gemeinen Stellungen gesehen zu werden!

2. *Solcher* is but rarely used instead of the personal pronoun of the third person.

§ 203. Derjenige, derjenige, dasjenige, that, does not, like *jener*, point to a particular or definite object, but to an object which requires to be defined by means of a relative clause. For example:—Dasjenige Haus, welches auf Sand gebaut ist, steht auf keinem festen Grunde, that house which is built upon sand, stands on no firm foundation (to be compared with jenes Haus ist zu vermietzen, that [particular] house is to be let). Derjenige, der nicht an Gott glaubt, wird ein Atheist genannt, he who does not believe in God, is called an atheist. Ich schätze diejenigen, welche die Wahrheit reden, I esteem those who speak the truth.

§ 204. Derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same, points to an object as being identical either with one before mentioned, or with one described in a subjoined clause. For example:—Wir wohnen in derselben Straße, we live in the same street. Es sind dieselben, die wir gestern sahen, they are the same that we saw yesterday.

## Notes.

1. The pronoun *derselbe* is frequently used instead of the personal pronoun of the third person, and instead of the possessive pronouns *sein*, *his*, and *ihr*, *her*, especially if, for the sake of perspicuity, a precise distinction requires to be made between two before-mentioned objects. In such a case, the demonstrative pronoun generally refers to the object which is mentioned last. For example:—Die Tochter schrieb ihrer Mutter, daß dieselbe in London erwartet werde, the daughter wrote to her mother that she (the mother) was expected in London. Der Vater sprach von seinem Sohne und rühmte die Talente desselben, the father spoke of his son, and praised his (the son's) talents. See § 200, note 1. Sometimes *derselbe* is used for the third personal pronoun merely for the sake of euphony, as in the following examples:—Sobald die Mutter ihre Tochter sah, fragte sie dieselbe (instead of *sie* *sie*), as soon as the mother saw her daughter, she asked her. Der Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen denselben (for *ihn* *Ihnen*) empfehlen, the wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

2. *Derſe bige* and *ter nämliche* are also in use as well as *derſelbe*. The identity of an object is made more emphatic in *eben derſelbe*, the very same, the self-same, and in *ein und derſelbe*, one and the same.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

That *one* has broken<sup>1</sup> the glass. Do you know that *one*? I have seen her (or, that one). With those *ones* I am well-pleased.<sup>2</sup> We have heard that already. I do not recollect<sup>3</sup> that. I shall buy no more pictures,<sup>4</sup> I have enough<sup>5</sup> of them. These grapes will soon be ripe. I admire<sup>6</sup> the beautiful blossoms of this tree. Do you like<sup>7</sup> these ribbons? Do you know that lady? My friend lives<sup>8</sup> in<sup>9</sup> that house. That house is to be let.<sup>10</sup> That piece *of* land is to be sold.<sup>11</sup> That old tree shall<sup>12</sup> be cut down.<sup>13</sup> That tree which<sup>14</sup> bears<sup>15</sup> no fruit, will be cut down. The sister as well as<sup>16</sup> her friend<sup>17</sup> commanded<sup>18</sup> our admiration,<sup>19</sup> the latter by<sup>20</sup> her beauty, the former by her modesty.<sup>21</sup> I prefer<sup>22</sup> those advisers<sup>23</sup> who<sup>24</sup> love my welfare.<sup>25</sup> He (or, that one) who<sup>26</sup> performs<sup>27</sup> his duties conscientiously,<sup>28</sup> enjoys<sup>29</sup> true<sup>30</sup> peace of mind.<sup>31</sup> Such deeds deserve<sup>32</sup> imitation.<sup>33</sup> Such fruits do not grow everywhere.<sup>34</sup> Can you write with such a pen? The same sun illuminates<sup>35</sup> the whole earth. It is the same lady. Play the same piece once more.<sup>36</sup> I have struggled<sup>37</sup> with the same difficulties.<sup>38</sup> My friend has written to me on<sup>39</sup> the same day. This is a day of [the] joy.<sup>40</sup> This is my

<sup>1</sup> To break, zerbrechen. <sup>2</sup> Well-pleased, wohl zufrieden. <sup>3</sup> To recollect, sich erinnern, governs the genitive. 'Not' comes after 'that.' <sup>4</sup> No more pictures, keine Bilder mehr. <sup>5</sup> Enough, genug, follows after 'of them.' <sup>6</sup> To admire, bewundern. <sup>7</sup> Do you like, gefallen Ihnen. <sup>8</sup> To live, wohnen. <sup>9</sup> In, in, with the dative. <sup>10</sup> To be let, zu vermietben. <sup>11</sup> To be sold, zu verkaufen. <sup>12</sup> Shall, soll. <sup>13</sup> To cut down, umhauen. <sup>14</sup> Which, welcher; arrange—'which no fruit bears.' <sup>15</sup> To bear, tragen. <sup>16</sup> As well as, sowohl als. <sup>17</sup> Friend, Freundin. <sup>18</sup> To command, erregen. <sup>19</sup> Admiration, Bewunderung. <sup>20</sup> By, durch, with the accusative. <sup>21</sup> Modesty, Bescheidenheit. <sup>22</sup> To prefer, vorziehen. <sup>23</sup> Adviser, Rathgeber. <sup>24</sup> Who, die; arrange—'who my welfare love.' <sup>25</sup> Welfare, Wohlfahrt. <sup>26</sup> Who, welcher; 'performs' comes after 'conscientiously.' <sup>27</sup> To perform, erfüllen. <sup>28</sup> Conscientiously, gewissenhaft. <sup>29</sup> To enjoy, genießen. <sup>30</sup> True, wahr. <sup>31</sup> Peace of mind, Seelenruhe. <sup>32</sup> To deserve, verdienen. <sup>33</sup> Imitation, Nachahmung. <sup>34</sup> Everywhere, überall. <sup>35</sup> To illuminate, erleuchten. <sup>36</sup> Once more, noch einmal. <sup>37</sup> To struggle, kämpfen. <sup>38</sup> Difficulty, Schwierigkeit. <sup>39</sup> On, an, with the dative. <sup>40</sup> Joy, Freude.



younger brother, and these are my sisters. Is this your umbrella? These are my gloves. That is a falsehood. That is Dr B. We have heard nothing<sup>41</sup> of<sup>42</sup> that. I declare<sup>43</sup> myself satisfied<sup>44</sup> with that. By<sup>45</sup> this you will know me. Have the goodness<sup>46</sup> to inquire<sup>47</sup> after<sup>48</sup> this.

<sup>41</sup> Nothing, nichts. <sup>42</sup> Of, von. <sup>43</sup> To declare, erklären. <sup>44</sup> Satisfied, zufrieden. <sup>45</sup> By, an. <sup>46</sup> Goodness, Güte. <sup>47</sup> To inquire, sich . . . zu erkundigen. <sup>48</sup> After, nach.

#### IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 205. Interrogative pronouns inquire regarding an object. There are four :—

wer? who?  
 was? what?  
 welcher, welche, welches? which?  
 was für ein, eine, ein? what kind of?

The declension of *wer* and *was* is as follows :—

<i>Nom.</i> wer, who ;	<i>was</i> , what.
<i>Gen.</i> wessen, whose ;	wessen, of what.
<i>Dat.</i> wem, to whom ;	(dative is wanting).
<i>Acc.</i> wen, whom ;	<i>was</i> , what.

Neither *wer* nor *was* has a plural.

*Was* cannot be connected with a preposition ; the adverb *wo* is then used in its stead (or *wor*, if the preposition begin with a vowel), and the preposition is annexed ; as—*wovon*, of what ; *wodurch*, through what ; *womit*, with what ; *worin*, in what ; *worauf*, upon what. For example :—*Wovon sprach er?* what did he speak of? *Womit kann ich Ihnen dienen?* with what can I serve you? *Worin habe ich gefehlt?* in what have I done wrong? But instead of *worum*, for what, why, *warum* is generally used.

*Welcher*, *e*, *es*, is declined like an adjective after the strong declension. In *was für ein*, only *ein* is declined. Before names of materials, and in the plural, *ein* is dropped, as in *was für Wein?* what kind of wine? *Was für Gläser?* what kind of glasses?

## Note.

The old genitive of *wer* and of *was*—namely, *wes* or *weß*—occurs sometimes in poetry; *e.g.*—*Weß ist die unsichtbare Hand, die Blumenkränz' um Thäler wand?* *Wessenberg*, whose is the invisible hand which wound wreaths of flowers round valleys? It is also preserved in *weshalb* and *weswegen*, on what account, wherefore.

§ 206. Both *wer* and *was* are substantive pronouns, whence they cannot be joined to a substantive. For example:—*Wer ruft Hülfe?* *Wer war's?* *Sch.*, who calls for help? who was it? *Wessen Handschrift ist dies?* whose handwriting is this? *Wen meinen Sie?* whom do you mean? *Ich weiß nicht, wen Sie meinen*, I do not know whom you mean. *Was ist geschehen?* what has happened? *Was sehe ich!* what do I see! *Sag an, was du gesehen hast*, say what thou hast seen.

## Notes.

1. It is but very rarely that *was* occurs in connection with a substantive, and in such instances it signifies 'what a quantity,' or 'what a number;' *e.g.*—*Was Gold, was Edelsteine!* *U.*, what gold, what precious stones!

2. *Was* is sometimes employed in the sense of 'why;' *e.g.*—*Was lachst du?* why doest thou laugh? *Was zauderst du?* *Sch.*, why doest thou hesitate? *Was jagt mein Herz?* *Gellert*, why does my heart fear?

§ 207. *Welcher* and *was für ein* have the nature of adjectives, and can therefore be joined to substantives. Whilst *wer* and *was* inquire quite indefinitely, the former after a person, the latter after a thing, *welcher*, *e*, *es*, inquires after a particular person or thing, and *was für ein*, *eine*, *ein*, after a particular kind or sort. For example:—*Welches Buch soll ich zuerst lesen, Schiller's Wilhelm Tell, oder Wallenstein?* Which book am I to read first, Schiller's William Tell, or Wallenstein? *Was für ein Buch soll ich lesen, eine Novelle oder ein historisches Werk?* What kind of book am I to read, a novel or a historical work? *Welches Pferd wollen Sie reiten? Den Braunen.* Which horse are you going to ride? The bay horse. *Was für ein Pferd ist dies?* Ein Araber. What kind of horse is this? An Arabian.

## Notes.

1. The same mode of expression as the German *was für ein*, is to be met with also in old English; *e.g.*—*What art thou for an animal, to suck thy livelihood out of my carcass?* *What is he for a fool, that betroths himself to unquietness, Shakspeare.* It is worthy of notice that, as in these examples, so also in German, the pronoun *was* is sometimes

separated from für ein; as in was soll ich für ein Buch lesen? what kind of book am I to read? Was ist das für ein Mann, daß ihm Wind und Meer gehorham ist! *B.*, what manner of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him!

2. Welch ein (welch being indeclinable) is sometimes used in the sense of was für ein, especially in expressions of wonder. For example:—Seht, welch ein Fest! *Sch.*, see, what a feast! Ach, welch ein Wohnort der Unschuld und Freude! *Kr.*, ah, what an abode of innocence and joy! Or without ein:—Welch Vertrauen ist das! *G.*, what confidence is this! Welch Schicksal aber wird das eure sein! *Sch.*, but what will be your fate! Welch is inflected, however, when the substantive is of the feminine gender:—In dieser Armut, welche Güte! In diesem Kerker, welche Seligkeit! *G.*, In this poverty, what abundance! In this dungeon, what bliss!

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

Who comes? Who are these strangers?<sup>1</sup> Who is the author<sup>2</sup> of this comedy?<sup>3</sup> Whose works do you study? To whom do these fine<sup>4</sup> horses belong?<sup>5</sup> Whom did he mention?<sup>6</sup> From<sup>7</sup> whom have you received<sup>8</sup> this present?<sup>9</sup> What do you seek?<sup>10</sup> What is the matter?<sup>11</sup> What is more hateful<sup>12</sup> than [the] lying?<sup>13</sup> I do not know what he means.<sup>14</sup> Of what is the woman accused?<sup>15</sup> With what can I console<sup>16</sup> you? With what shall<sup>17</sup> I pass<sup>18</sup> the time? Of<sup>19</sup> what is she so proud?<sup>20</sup> Which tailor<sup>21</sup> do you employ?<sup>22</sup> Which countries have you visited?<sup>23</sup> What sort of hats<sup>24</sup> are now [being] worn in Paris? To which fashion<sup>25</sup> do you give the preference?<sup>26</sup> What kind of play<sup>27</sup> will be performed<sup>28</sup> this evening; a comedy or a tragedy?<sup>30</sup> Which part<sup>31</sup> does Mr K. act?<sup>32</sup> Advise<sup>33</sup> [to] me what kind of books I am to read.<sup>34</sup> Which authors<sup>35</sup> do you recommend?<sup>36</sup> Which of these houses is to be let? From

<sup>1</sup> The stranger, der Fremde. (See § 178.) <sup>2</sup> Author (of a particular work), Verfasser. <sup>3</sup> Comedy, Lustspiel. <sup>4</sup> Fine, schön. <sup>5</sup> To belong, gehören. <sup>6</sup> To mention, erwähnen. <sup>7</sup> From, von, with the dative. <sup>8</sup> To receive, bekommen. <sup>9</sup> Present, Geschenk. <sup>10</sup> To seek, suchen. <sup>11</sup> Is the matter, giebt es. <sup>12</sup> Hateful, verhaßt. <sup>13</sup> Lying, das Lügen. <sup>14</sup> To mean, meinen. <sup>15</sup> To accuse, beschuldigen. <sup>16</sup> To console, trösten. <sup>17</sup> Shall, soll. <sup>18</sup> To pass, hinbringen. <sup>19</sup> Of, here auf. <sup>20</sup> Proud, stolz. <sup>21</sup> Tailor, Schneider. <sup>22</sup> To employ, beschäftigen. <sup>23</sup> To visit, besuchen. <sup>24</sup> Hat, Hut. <sup>25</sup> Fashion, Mode. <sup>26</sup> Preference, Vorzug. <sup>27</sup> Play, Schauspiel. <sup>28</sup> To perform, auführen. <sup>29</sup> Use the accusative. <sup>30</sup> Tragedy, Trauerspiel. <sup>31</sup> Part, Rolle. <sup>32</sup> To act, spielen. <sup>33</sup> To advise, raten. <sup>34</sup> I am to read, ich lesen soll. <sup>35</sup> Author, Schriftsteller. <sup>36</sup> To recommend, empfehlen.

which of your correspondents<sup>37</sup> have you this news?<sup>38</sup> What kind of dress<sup>39</sup> are you going<sup>40</sup> to put on?<sup>41</sup> I do not know which dress I am to put on,<sup>42</sup> whether<sup>43</sup> the brown<sup>44</sup> one or the blue<sup>45</sup> one.

<sup>37</sup> Correspondent, Correspondent. <sup>38</sup> News, Nachricht, f. <sup>39</sup> Dress, Kleid.  
<sup>40</sup> Are you going, wollen Sie. <sup>41</sup> To put on, anziehen. <sup>42</sup> I am to put on, ich anziehen soll. <sup>43</sup> Whether, ob. <sup>44</sup> Brown, braun. <sup>45</sup> Blue, blau.

## V. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 208. A relative pronoun puts an explanatory clause in connection with another sentence. The Germanic languages have no peculiar word for the relative pronoun, but employ other pronouns in its place. Thus the German language uses in the sense of relatives three interrogative pronouns and one demonstrative, namely—

wer, who ;  
 was, what ;  
 welcher, e, es, } who, which, that.  
 der, die, das, }

The declension of *wer*, *was*, and *welcher*, is the same as when these pronouns are used interrogatively ; and *der*, *die*, *das*, is declined in the same manner as the demonstrative when used substantively, namely—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> der, die, das ;	die.
<i>Gen.</i> dessen, deren, dessen ;	deren.
<i>Dat.</i> dem, der, dem ;	denen.
<i>Acc.</i> den, die, das ;	die.

1. The form *deß* in the genitive, for *dessen*, is met with only in poetry ; e. g.—Wo bist du, Faust, deß Stimme mir erklang? *G.*, where art thou, Faust, whose voice resounded to me? Dort liegt der Säng' er auf der Waise, deß bleicher Mund sein Lied beginnt, *U.*, there lies the minstrel upon the bier, whose pale mouth begins no song.

2. The use of *jo* as a relative pronoun is obsolete. It occurs now and then in poetry, is indeclinable, and can only stand for the nominative and accusative in the singular and plural.

§ 209. *Wer* and *was*, being substantive pronouns, cannot be used as relatives in connection with a noun or personal

pronoun. As *wer*, who, is equivalent to 'he who' or 'the man who,' and *was*, what, to 'that which,' or 'the thing which,' they do not even require that a demonstrative should precede them. For example:—*Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen*, *Prov.*, who (or, he who) does not wish to hear, must feel. *Was du heute thun kannst, verschiebe nicht auf morgen*, what (or, that which) thou canst do to-day, do not delay till to-morrow. But the demonstratives corresponding with *wer* and *was*—namely, *der* and *das*—may be put at the head of the second clause, as in *Wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen*. *Wer lügt, der stiehlt auch*, he who lies, steals also. *Was du heute thun kannst, das verschiebe nicht auf morgen*. In the latter case, the demonstrative may go before the relative:—*das was du heute thun kannst, verschiebe nicht auf morgen*. *Er gestand das, was er wußte*, he confessed that which he knew.

*Was* is also used after *nichts*, nothing; *etwas*, something; *alles*, everything; *vieles*, much; *manches*, many a thing; and after the neuter of an adjective in the superlative degree, as—*das Beste was ich habe*, the best that I have. *Wer* can be used after *Jeder*, every one.

Note.

There is one other case in which *was* is correctly used, namely, when the relative pronoun *which* refers to the whole preceding clause, and not to a particular word in that clause, as—*er ging ohne einen Führer fort, was sehr unvorsichtig war*, he went away without a guide, *which* was very imprudent.

§ 210. *Welcher*, *e*, *es*, and *der*, *die*, *das*, are adjective pronouns, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer. There is no material difference of signification between these two pronouns, and it must be decided by euphony or taste which shall be employed in any particular case.

There are only two cases in which the requisite forms of *der*, *die*, *das* *must* be used; namely—

1. When the relative pronoun stands in the genitive, in English 'of which, of whom, whose.' For example:—*Der Herr, dessen Haus ich kaufte, ist ausgewandert*, the gentleman whose house I bought, has emigrated. *Der Mond, dessen Scheibe fast voll war, beleuchtete die runden Gipfel des Berges*, in dessen Thale *Carracas* liegt, *Humboldt*, the moon, whose

disk was nearly full, illuminated the round tops of the mountains in whose valley Carracas lies. Die Bücher, deren ich bedarf, sind bestellt worden, the books which I require have been ordered. Die Geschichte, deren Kenntniß so wichtig ist, history, the knowledge of which is so important.

## Nota.

The genitive of welcher, e, es, is used only when the relative is joined to a substantive explanatory of the antecedent—that is, of the name of the person or thing to which the relative refers; e. g.—Cicero, welches großen Redners Schriften ich gelesen habe, Cicero, the writings of which great orator I have read.

2. Der, die, daß, must be used when the relative refers to a personal pronoun of the first or second person of the singular or plural, or to that of the third person plural in the sense of 'you.' Some of the subjoined examples shew that the personal pronoun is sometimes repeated in the relative clause, and that the verb in the relative clause is then made to agree with the personal pronoun. This, however, is not always done. Examples:—Erfennst du mich, die ich in manche Wunde des Lebens dir den reinsten Balsam goß? *G.*, Dost thou recognise me (namely, the goddess of truth), who poured the purest balm into many a wound of thy life? Daß wissen wir, die wir die Gamsen jagen, *Sch.*, we know that who hunt the chamois. Du, die du alle Wunden heilest, der Freundschaft leise, zarte Hand, *Sch.*, thou which healest all wounds, the soft, tender hand of friendship. Verachteſt du so deinen Kaiser, Tell, und mich, der hier an seiner Statt gebietet? *Sch.*, Dost thou thus despise thy emperor, Tell, and me who rule here in his stead?

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Who has<sup>1</sup> understanding,<sup>2</sup> possesses<sup>3</sup> a great treasure.<sup>4</sup> Who is my friend, must tell [to] me my faults.<sup>5</sup> I shall do what I have promised.<sup>6</sup> Let me know what I have to fear.<sup>7</sup> He has told [to] me all<sup>8</sup> that he knew. Nothing which

<sup>1</sup> Every relative clause being dependent, the verb is removed to the end; as—'who understanding has;' 'who my friend is;' 'what I promised have.'

<sup>2</sup> Understanding, Verstand. <sup>3</sup> To possess, besitzen. <sup>4</sup> Treasure, Schatz. <sup>5</sup> Fault, Fehler. <sup>6</sup> To promise, versprechen. <sup>7</sup> To fear, zu fürchten. <sup>8</sup> All, Alles.

happened<sup>9</sup> escaped<sup>10</sup> her attention.<sup>11</sup> That is something<sup>12</sup> that I could never<sup>13</sup> understand.<sup>14</sup> The best<sup>15</sup> that you can do is, to give up the contest.<sup>16</sup> The man who gave [to] me the letter was well dressed.<sup>17</sup> He is a man whom thou canst trust.<sup>18</sup> I know the advisers<sup>19</sup> whom thou followest.<sup>20</sup> The sculptor<sup>21</sup> who has made this statue,<sup>22</sup> is a famous<sup>23</sup> artist.<sup>24</sup> I give [to] you the same sum<sup>25</sup> which I have received.<sup>26</sup> The plans<sup>27</sup> which you have mentioned will not be executed.<sup>28</sup> The book which I read is very entertaining.<sup>29</sup> The house which I inhabit<sup>30</sup> is my property.<sup>31</sup> The affair<sup>32</sup> of<sup>33</sup> which we talked<sup>34</sup> yesterday, is more important<sup>35</sup> than we thought.<sup>36</sup> The finest joys<sup>37</sup> are those which we prepare<sup>38</sup> for others.<sup>39</sup> The merchant in whose hands<sup>40</sup> your money is, has become bankrupt.<sup>41</sup> Is Mr M. the lawyer<sup>42</sup> whose integrity<sup>43</sup> you praised so much?<sup>44</sup> Dr C. is a man in<sup>45</sup> whose skill<sup>46</sup> you can confide.<sup>47</sup> I shall send [to] you the books which you require.<sup>48</sup> They were daily<sup>49</sup> [being] entertained<sup>50</sup> with songs, the subject<sup>51</sup> of which (say, whose subject) was the happy valley. I who [I] am older than you, will assist<sup>52</sup> you with my advice.<sup>53</sup> I owe<sup>54</sup> it to thee who [thou] hast always<sup>55</sup> loaded<sup>56</sup> me with kindness.<sup>57</sup>

<sup>9</sup> To happen, vorgehen. <sup>10</sup> To escape, entgehen; governs the dative.  
<sup>11</sup> Attention, Aufmerksamkeit. <sup>12</sup> Something, etwas. <sup>13</sup> Never, nie. <sup>14</sup> To understand, begreifen. <sup>15</sup> The best, das Beste. <sup>16</sup> To give up the contest, den Streit aufzugeben. <sup>17</sup> Well dressed, wohl gekleidet. <sup>18</sup> To trust, trauen; governs the dative. <sup>19</sup> Adviser, Rathgeber. <sup>20</sup> To follow, folgen; governs the dative. <sup>21</sup> Sculptor, Bildhauer. <sup>22</sup> Statue, Statue. <sup>23</sup> Famous, berühmt. <sup>24</sup> Artist, Künstler. <sup>25</sup> Sum, Summe. <sup>26</sup> To receive, empfangen. <sup>27</sup> Plan, Plan. <sup>28</sup> To execute, ausführen. <sup>29</sup> Entertaining, unterhalten.  
<sup>30</sup> To inhabit, bewohnen. <sup>31</sup> Property, Eigenthum. <sup>32</sup> Affair, Angelegenheit.  
<sup>33</sup> Of, von, with the dative. <sup>34</sup> To talk, reden. <sup>35</sup> Important, wichtig.  
<sup>36</sup> To think, glauben. <sup>37</sup> Joy, Freude. <sup>38</sup> To prepare, bereiten. <sup>39</sup> For others, Andern. <sup>40</sup> Use the dative which is governed by in. <sup>41</sup> To become bankrupt, Bankerott machen. <sup>42</sup> Lawyer, Advokat. <sup>43</sup> Integrity, Redlichkeit.  
<sup>44</sup> So much, so sehr. <sup>45</sup> In, here auf. <sup>46</sup> Skill, Geschicklichkeit. <sup>47</sup> To confide, sich verlassen. <sup>48</sup> To require, bedürfen; governs the genitive.  
<sup>49</sup> Daily, täglich. <sup>50</sup> To entertain, unterhalten. (See § 109.) <sup>51</sup> Subject, Gegenstand. <sup>52</sup> To assist, beistehen; governs the dative. <sup>53</sup> Advice, Rath; use the dative which is governed by mit. <sup>54</sup> To owe, verdanken. <sup>55</sup> Always, immer; comes after 'me.' <sup>56</sup> To load, überhäufen. (See § 109.)  
<sup>57</sup> Kindness, Güte.

## § 211. From pronouns are formed some *Pronominal Adverbs*,

denoting place, time, and manner. They are partly of a demonstrative, partly of an interrogative and relative nature.

The following are *demonstrative* :—1. Denoting place—*da*, there, at that place ; *dort*, yonder ; *hier* (or *hie*), here, at this place ; *her*, hither, towards the speaker ; *hin*, hence, thither, away from the speaker : *dannen*, or *von dannen*, from thence, away ; and *hinnen*, or *von hinnen*, from hence, are obsolete. 2. Denoting time—*dann*, then, at that time. 3. Denoting manner—*so*, so, thus.

The following are *interrogative and relative* :—1. Denoting place—*wo*, where, at what place ; *woher*, whence, from what place ; *wohin*, whither, to what place : *von wannen*, from whence, is obsolete. 2. Denoting time—*wann*, when, at what time. 3. Denoting manner—*wie*, how, in what manner.

*Da*, *hier*, *wo*, *her*, and *hin* can be joined with prepositions. When the preposition begins with a vowel, *dar* is used for *da* (from the old High-German *thar*, English ‘there’), and *war* or *war*—the latter form in one instance only, namely, *warum*—for *wo* (from the old High-German *war*, English ‘where.’) *Hie* can be used for *hier* before a consonant. Numerous examples of prepositions joined to *da*, *hier*, and *wo*, have been given above, to illustrate the prevailing practice of employing such forms as *dafür*, *darauf*, *hiervon*, *hiemit*, *wovon*, *worin*, &c., instead of joining prepositions with the neuter pronouns *es*, *das*, *dies*, *was*. See § 193 ; § 200, note 2 ; § 201, note 2 ; § 203.

*Her* and *hin* are frequently connected with prepositions to express at once the motion of an object, and the direction of the motion with regard to the position of the speaker. For example :—*Er kam herauf*, he came up, that is, to where I am. *Er ging hinauf*, he went up, that is, away from where I am. *Gehen Sie hinaus*, go out, away from me. *Kommen Sie heraus*, come out, towards me.

§ 212. The relative pronouns *wer*, *was*, and *welcher*, and the relative pronominal adverbs *wo*, *woher*, *wohin*, *wann*, *wie*, are often put in connection with *auch*, or *immer*, or *nur*, in English ‘ever,’ or ‘soever,’ by which means their signification becomes generalised and indefinite. For example :—*Und welchen Preis nun auch mein Werk erhält, auch dank’ ihn, &c.*, and whatever praise my work receives, it is to you



that I owe it. Sie brachte, was sie nur hatte, *G.*, she brought whatever she had. Was ihr auch Schweres mögt zu leiden haben, tragt's in Geduld, *Sch.*, whatever hardships you may have to suffer, bear them with patience. Wer die Wahrheit hier suchte, dem blüht dort Freude hervor, wo er nur hinblickt, *Engel*, who sought the truth here, to him joy blooms yonder whithersoever he looks.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

Yonder dwells Mr H. There he is<sup>1</sup> himself.<sup>2</sup> Here is your account.<sup>3</sup> Come here (say, hither). Go there (say, thither). Thus ended<sup>4</sup> the war.<sup>5</sup> Where did you see<sup>6</sup> him? Whither shall<sup>7</sup> I turn<sup>8</sup> [myself]? Whence have you this news? When did it happen? How is the word spelt?<sup>9</sup> Come up.<sup>10</sup> Go up. He came in.<sup>11</sup> He went in. Go out.<sup>12</sup> Go down stairs.<sup>13</sup> I shall purchase the picture, whatever price<sup>14</sup> he asks.<sup>15</sup> The eye finds the Creator,<sup>16</sup> whithersoever it looks.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Invert the order, according to § 48, 3. <sup>2</sup> See § 195, note. <sup>3</sup> Account, Rechnung. <sup>4</sup> To end, enden. <sup>5</sup> War, Krieg. <sup>6</sup> Use the perfect. <sup>7</sup> Shall, soll. <sup>8</sup> To turn, wenden. <sup>9</sup> To spell, buchstabiren; use the present of the passive. <sup>10</sup> Up, . . . auf. <sup>11</sup> In, . . . ein. <sup>12</sup> Out, . . . aus. <sup>13</sup> Down stairs, hinunter. <sup>14</sup> Price, Preis. <sup>15</sup> To ask, fortern. <sup>16</sup> Creator, Schöpfer. <sup>17</sup> To look, blicken.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 213. The indefinite pronouns speak of persons and things in an indefinite or general way. They have the nature of substantives, but can be used only in the singular number. The following are of this description:—

Jedermann, everybody;  
 Jemand, somebody, anybody;  
 Niemand, nobody, not anybody;  
 man, one, people;  
 etwas, something, anything;  
 nichts, nothing, not anything.

Jedermann takes *s* in the genitive—Jedermanns. Jemand and Niemand have in the genitive Jemandes, Niemandes; in the dative and sometimes in the accusative Jemanden, Niemanden. Man, etwas, and nichts are indeclinable.

The numeral *Ein*, some one, is often used for *Jemand*, and *Keiner*, no one, for *Niemand*. They are both declined after the strong declension of adjectives. *Ein* supplies also the wanting cases of the indeclinable *man*.

§ 214. *Jedermann* answers precisely to the English 'everybody.' But it should be noticed that the English 'any, anyone, anybody,' are sometimes used in affirmative sentences in the sense of 'every, every one, everybody,' and must in such cases be translated by *Jedermann* or *Jeder*; *e. g.*—*Jedermann* (or *Jeder*) *kann Ihnen sagen, wo ich wohne*, anybody can tell you where I live; or, when used adjectively, *jede* (or *die erste beste*) *Jeder* *ist gut genug*, any pen will do.

§ 215. *Man*, like the French 'on,' is used to a greater extent than the English 'one.' As it indicates the notion of a person in the most indefinite manner (being originally the same as the substantive *Mann*, in old High-German *man*, that is, a human being, a person), it is very properly employed when an action, which is naturally conceived as being performed by a person, is to be represented without any definite subject. The English make use of different expressions for the same end; such as 'one, people, they, a person,' or they give the sentence a passive form. For example:—*Man läuft*, they are running. *Man schreit*, they scream. *Man sagt*, people say. *Ertragen muß man, was der Himmel sendet*, *Sch.*, one must bear what Heaven sends. *Man führt die Waffen nicht vergebens*, *Sch.*, one does not carry arms to no purpose. *Man hört eine Trommel*, *Sch.*, a drum is heard. *Mit grobem Zinn bedient man ihre Tafel*, *Sch.*, her table is served with coarse pewter.

The indefinite possessive pronoun, correlative with *man*, is *sein*, one's, and the indefinite reflective pronoun *sich*, one's self. For example:—*Man muß auf seiner Hut sein*, one must be on one's guard. *Man erkältet sich leicht*, one easily catches cold.

#### Notes.

1. When placed after an adjective or pronoun, as the substitute for a substantive either mentioned before or understood, 'one' is not translated; as—*Dem frohen Tage folgt ein trüber*, *Platen*, after the happy day follows a dull one. *Ich mag das einfache Muster lieber als das gebülmte*, I like the plain pattern better than the flowered one. *Welches gefällt Ihnen am besten?* which (one) do you like best?

2. 'One' before a proper name, as in—one Albert Schmid; one Captain Jones; one Louise Karsch, is rendered by ein gewisser:—ein gewisser Albert Schmid; ein gewisser Capitän Jones; eine gewisse Louise Karsch.

§ 216. Etwas and nichts can be joined to an adjective in the neuter gender, the latter assuming the force of a substantive. For example:—Etwas Unerhörtes, something unheard of. Mit nichts Geringem, with nothing small. Der Reichthum hat durch sich selbst nie etwas Großes erzeugt, *Jacobs*, wealth by itself never produced anything great. Die Liebe thut dem Nächsten nichts Böses, *B.*, love worketh no ill to his neighbour.

## Notes.

1. Instead of etwas, the abbreviated was is sometimes used; e.g.—Ich will dir was sagen, I'll tell you what. Weißt du was Neues? I'll tell you some news. Zu was Besserm sind wir geboren, *Sch.*, we are born for some better end. In the same manner wer has often, in the familiar style of speaking, the force of Jemand, somebody, wer being an abbreviation for the old High-German *etwer* or *etswer*, meaning 'somebody.' For example:—Es ist wer hier gewesen, some person has been here. Hast du wen getroffen? hast thou met with any person?

2. Etwas, when connected with the name of a material or an abstract noun, assumes the meaning of an indefinite numeral, as in—etwas Geld, some money; etwas Brod, some bread; etwas Verstand, some understanding. Some indefinite numerals, on the other hand, as einige, etliche, mancher, keiner, jeder, can assume the character of substantive pronouns, when the substantive to which they stand in the relation of adjectives is omitted or understood, as in—Einige behaupten, some (people) maintain; Mancher denkt, many a person thinks; Keiner will es glauben, nobody will believe it. But, strictly speaking, these words are not substantive pronouns, like Jermann, Niemand, &c., but adjectives expressing an indefinite numerical relation.

§ 217. There remain to be noticed a number of *Indefinite Pronominal Adverbs*, which denote place, time, and manner in an indefinite way:—

irgend originally denotes the relation of place indefinitely, but is now employed more generally for any other indefinite relation. It is joined to other indefinite pronouns and pronominal adverbs; as—irgend Jemand, any person; irgend ein, any one; irgend etwas, anything; irgend wo, somewhere, anywhere; irgend wie, in some way, in any way, &c.

nirgend, or nirgendß, nowhere, is the opposite of irgend, but can be used with regard to place only.

*je*, ever, at any time, refers to time in its whole unlimited extent.

*nie*, never, is the opposite of *je*.

*immer*, always, at all times. When joined to relative pronouns or relative pronominal adverbs, it makes their signification more indefinite and general. See § 212.

*nimmer*, never, at no time (literally, no more, from the old High-German *niomer*, that is, *nie mehr*) is the opposite of *immer* (old High-German *iomer*, that is, *je mehr*). It is chiefly employed by poets.

*einst*, once, one day, either in the past or in the future (in old High-German *eines*).

*etwa*, perhaps (from *etwaß*).

## EXERCISE XL.

Everybody is entitled<sup>1</sup> to freedom<sup>2</sup> of [the] conscience.<sup>3</sup> He is everybody's friend. He is [being] respected<sup>4</sup> by<sup>5</sup> everybody. I hear somebody knock at the door.<sup>6</sup> We heard somebody call for help.<sup>7</sup> Has anybody inquired<sup>8</sup> for me? Do you wait<sup>9</sup> here for anybody? Nobody shall keep me back.<sup>10</sup> I have not seen anybody. We have spoken with nobody. Nobody rises<sup>11</sup> through<sup>12</sup> vice,<sup>13</sup> nobody falls through virtue. One must speak ill<sup>14</sup> of<sup>15</sup> nobody. One is happy,<sup>16</sup> if one is content.<sup>17</sup> One would be more content, if one had fewer wants.<sup>18</sup> He is derided<sup>19</sup> everywhere<sup>20</sup> (say, One derides him everywhere). Snares<sup>21</sup> are laid<sup>22</sup> for me<sup>23</sup> (say, One lays for me snares). One cannot foresee<sup>24</sup> the hour<sup>25</sup> of one's death. One must help one's neighbour.<sup>26</sup> She has learnt nothing. The papers<sup>27</sup> contain<sup>28</sup> nothing

<sup>1</sup> Entitled, *berechtigt*. <sup>2</sup> To freedom, *zur Freiheit*. <sup>3</sup> Conscience, *Gewissen*.  
<sup>4</sup> To respect, *achten*. <sup>5</sup> By, *von*. <sup>6</sup> To knock at the door, *anklopfen*. <sup>7</sup> To call for help, *Hülfe rufen*. <sup>8</sup> To inquire for, *fragen nach*, with the dative.  
<sup>9</sup> To wait for, *warten auf*, with the accusative. <sup>10</sup> To keep back, *zurückhalten*. <sup>11</sup> To rise, *steigen*. <sup>12</sup> Through, *durch*. <sup>13</sup> Vice, *Last*. <sup>14</sup> To speak ill, *Böses reden*. <sup>15</sup> Of, *von*, with the dative. <sup>16</sup> Happy, *glücklich*.  
<sup>17</sup> Content, *zufrieden*. <sup>18</sup> Fewer wants, *weniger Bedürfnisse*. <sup>19</sup> To deride, *verlachen*. <sup>20</sup> Everywhere, *überall*. <sup>21</sup> Snare, *Schlinge*. <sup>22</sup> To lay, *legen*.  
<sup>23</sup> For me, *mir*. <sup>24</sup> To foresee, *vorhersehen*. <sup>25</sup> Hour, *Stunde*. <sup>26</sup> Neighbour, *Nachste*; use the dative, which is governed by *helfen*. <sup>27</sup> Papers, *Zeitungen*. <sup>28</sup> To contain, *enthalten*.

important.<sup>29</sup> It is something unheard of.<sup>30</sup> Nothing in life<sup>31</sup> is constant.<sup>32</sup> You will find the keys somewhere. I can find them nowhere. Has your friend ever written to you?<sup>33</sup> I shall always do my duty. We shall never swerve<sup>34</sup> from the truth. You will never regret<sup>35</sup> it. One day thou shalt<sup>36</sup> hear all.<sup>37</sup>

<sup>29</sup> Important, wichtig.

<sup>30</sup> Unheard of, unerhört.

<sup>31</sup> In life, im Leben.

<sup>32</sup> Constant, beständig.

<sup>33</sup> To you, an Sie.

<sup>34</sup> To swerve from, abweichen

von, with the dative.

<sup>35</sup> To regret, bereuen; 'it' comes before 'never.'

<sup>36</sup> Thou shalt, sollst du.

<sup>37</sup> All, Alles.

## XIX.

### NUMERALS.

§ 218. Numerals are words which are joined to substantives to denote the number or quantity of objects. They participate to a certain extent in the nature of adjectives, yet do not, like these, express qualities inherent in objects, but merely their outward numerical or quantitative relation. Hence numerals are justly designated *quantitative adjectives*.

Numerals denote either a definite or indefinite number or quantity, and are therefore divided into *definite* and *indefinite* numerals. Of the former class are, for example, drei, three; vier, four; der dritte, the third; der vierte, the fourth: of the latter, jeder, every; einige, some; viel, much; wenig, little. The definite numerals are subdivided as follows:—

#### I. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. ein, one (ein, eine, ein). | 9. neun, nine.                     |
| 2. zwei, two.                 | 10. zehn, ten.                     |
| 3. drei, three.               | 11. elf, eleven.                   |
| 4. vier, four.                | 12. zwölf, twelve.                 |
| 5. fünf, five.                | 13. dreizehn, thirteen.            |
| 6. sechs, six.                | 14. vierzehn, fourteen.            |
| 7. sieben, seven.             | 15. fünfzehn or fünfzehn, fifteen. |
| 8. acht, eight.               | 16. sechzehn, sixteen.             |

17. <i>ſiebzehn</i> , seventeen.	103. <i>hundert (und) drei</i> , one hundred and three.
18. <i>achtzehn</i> , eighteen.	
19. <i>neunzehn</i> , nineteen.	
20. <i>zwanzig</i> , twenty.	130. <i>hundert (und) dreißig</i> , one hundred and thirty.
21. <i>ein und zwanzig</i> , one and twenty.	
22. <i>zwei und zwanzig</i> , two and twenty.	131. <i>hundert ein und dreißig</i> , one hun- dred and thirty- one.
23. <i>drei und zwanzig</i> , three and twenty.	
30. <i>dreißig</i> , thirty.	200. <i>zweihundert</i> , two hundred.
40. <i>vierzig</i> , forty.	
50. <i>funfzig</i> or <i>fünfzig</i> , fifty.	300. <i>dreihundert</i> , three hundred.
60. <i>ſechzig</i> , sixty.	1000. <i>tauſend</i> , a thousand.
70. <i>ſiebzig</i> , seventy.	2000. <i>zweitauſend</i> , two thousand.
80. <i>achtzig</i> , eighty.	
90. <i>neunzig</i> , ninety.	10,000. <i>zehntauſend</i> , ten thousand.
100. <i>hundert</i> , a hundred.	100,000. <i>hunderttauſend</i> , one hundred thousand.
101. <i>hundert (und) einß</i> , one hundred and one.	1,000,000. <i>eine Million</i> , a million.
102. <i>hundert (und) zwei</i> , one hundred and two.	2,000,000. <i>zwei Millionen</i> , two millions.

## Note.

Cardinal numerals, in the strict sense of the word—that is, principal or fundamental numerals—are only those from *einß* up to *zehn*, with *hundert* and *tauſend*. From these all the rest are formed, either by being compounded with one another, as—*dreizehn*, *vierzehn*, or by being compounded with some other words, as—*elf*, *zwölf*, *zwanzig*, *dreißig*, *vierzig*, &c. *Elf* or *elf*, which latter form is obsolete, is in old High-German *einlif*; *zwölf* is in old High-German *zuelif*. The word *lif* is derived from the Gothic *leiban*—that is, *bleiben*, to remain—in Anglo-Saxon *lyfan*, in English ‘leave’; hence *elf* signifies literally ‘one over (ten)’; and *zwölf* (substituted in new High-German for the middle High-German *zweelf*) signifies literally ‘two over (ten).’ The syllable *zig*, which is affixed to the units to form the tens, and which is in *dreißig* softened into *fig*, is derived from the Gothic noun *tigus*, Greek *dekas*, meaning the number ‘ten,’ which in all the compound numerals from twenty up to ninety was changed into *zuc* or *zoc* in old High-German, *zec* in middle High-German, and *zig* in the language of the present day. *Zwanzig* is a corrupt form for *zweinzig*, which was formerly in use. The substantive *Million* is borrowed by the

modern language from the French *million*, which is derived from the Latin *mille*, a thousand.

§ 219. Among all the cardinal numbers, only *ein* has a complete declension. It is declined like an adjective either after the strong or the weak declension, according to circumstances. But when followed by a substantive, and declined after the strong form, it loses, like the indefinite article, its inflectional termination in the nominative of the masculine, and in the nominative and accusative of the neuter gender. In simply counting, *einß* (a contraction for the neuter *eines*) is used, when the object counted is understood. When it stands in connection with another numeral, as in *ein und dreißig*, it is not inflected.

Note.

The plural of *ein*, namely, *die Einen*, occurs only in the signification of 'the one set or party, some people,' in opposition to *die Andern*, 'the other set or party, other people.' *Ein* is also used, like 'one' in English, in the signification of 'the same;' e. g.—*Eine Stadt hat uns geboren, Sch.*, the same (one) town has given birth to us. *Für eine Sache heben wir den Arm, Sch.*, we raise the arm for the same (one) cause.

§ 220. *Zwei* and *drei* have no different forms for the three genders, but can be inflected in the genitive and dative; namely—genitive *zweier, dreier*; dative *zweien, dreien*. These inflected forms are employed only when no substantive follows; but that of the genitive is also used, even before a substantive, if the case of the substantive is not shewn by any article or pronoun preceding the numeral. For example—*die Aussage zweier Zeugen*, the evidence of two witnesses; but *die Aussage dieser zwei Zeugen*, the evidence of these two witnesses. *Ich habe es dreien gesagt*, I have said it to three persons; but *ich habe es den drei Brüdern gesagt*, I have said it to the three brothers.

Notes.

1. *Zwei* had formerly a complete declension for each of the three genders, which was preserved even beyond the middle of last century, but is now quite obsolete. The nominative was *zween* for the masculine gender, *zwo* for the feminine, *zwei* for the neuter.

2. *Beide*, both, does not, like *zwei*, signify a number, but, presupposing the number as known, it expresses that of two persons or things, not the one only but also the other is meant. Being an adjective, it is declined either after the strong or the weak declension. For example:—*Er hat zwei Söhne aber beide sind taub*, he has two sons, but both are deaf. *Der*

Mann hat beide Füße verloren, the man has lost both feet. Die beiden Brüder sind todt, both the brothers are dead. Meine beiden Augen, both my eyes. Beides kann geschehen, both things can happen. 'Both . . . and' cannot be expressed by *beide*, but by the conjunction *sowohl . . . als*.

§ 221. The other cardinal numbers (except those ending in *n*) take the termination *en* in the dative (and rarely *e* in the nominative and accusative), when they are used substantively. For example:—Ich habe es fünfen gesagt, I have said it to five persons. Auf allen vieren kriechen, to crawl upon all-fours. Mit sechsen fahren, to go in a coach and six. Alle neune werfen, to knock down all the nine (at ninepins).

Hundert and tausend are used as substantives of the neuter gender both in the singular and plural; *e.g.*—das erste Hundert, the first hundred. Hunderte waren zugegen, hundreds were present. Zu Tausenden, in thousands. Ein ganzes Tausend, a whole thousand. When they form part of a compound numeral, however, they remain unchanged, as in zweihundert, viertausend.

Million always retains the nature of a substantive. It is of the feminine gender, and is declined accordingly:—mit einer Million Soldaten, with a million of soldiers; einige Millionen, some millions.

Note.

Die Eins, die Zwei, die Drei, the one, the two, the three, &c., upon dice, cards, or the like, are substantives, and follow the weak declension. By means of the suffixes *er* and *ling*, masculine substantives are formed from cardinal numerals with various significations; as—ein Vierziger, a man of forty years of age; ein Achtziger, a man of eighty years of age (*octogenarian*). Ein Dreier, ein Sechser, names of small coins. Elfer, Sechß und vierziger, wine of the vintage of the year eleven, forty-six. Zwilling, twin; Drilling, one of three children born at a birth.

§ 222. *Distributive Numerals*—that is, numerals answering to the question, 'How many each time?'—have no special form in German. The cardinal numbers are used for the purpose, the adverb *je* being prefixed; as—*je zwei*, two at a time; *je drei*, three at a time; or the cardinal number is put twice, with *und* between, as—*zwei und zwei*, two and two; *drei und drei*, three and three.



## II. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

§ 223. The ordinal numerals, from *zwei* to *neunzehn* inclusive, are formed from the cardinal numerals by adding *t*, and from *zwanzig* upwards by adding *st*. They are declined like adjectives. For 'the first' there is used the superlative *der erste* (from *erh*, early), and for 'the third' *der dritte* (from the old High-German *dritto*). In compound numerals, the last only takes the termination of the ordinal. The following table contains some of the ordinal numerals, according to which all the others may be formed :—

1.	der, die, das erste, the first.
2.	" " " zweite, the second.
3.	" " " dritte, the third.
4.	" " " vierte, the fourth.
5.	" " " fünfte, the fifth.
6.	" " " sechste, the sixth.
7.	" " " siebente, the seventh.
8.	" " " achte, the eighth.
9.	" " " neunte, the ninth.
10.	" " " zehnte, the tenth.
11.	" " " elfte, the eleventh.
12.	" " " zwölfte, the twelfth.
13.	" " " dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
14.	" " " vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
15.	" " " funfzehnte, the fifteenth, &c.
20.	" " " zwanzigste, the twentieth.
21.	" " " ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-first.
22.	" " " zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty-second.
30.	" " " dreißigste, the thirtieth.
31.	" " " ein und dreißigste, the thirty-first.
40.	" " " vierzigste, the fortieth.
100.	" " " hundertste, the hundredth.
101.	" " " hundert und erste, the hundred and first.
200.	" " " zweihundertste, the two hundredth.
1000.	" " " tausendste, the thousandth.

## Note.

The ordinal *der zweite*, the second, is a word of modern formation. The older language, even down to the time of Luther, employed *der andere*, the other, which has now lost the force of a numeral. When 'another' is

used in English in the sense of 'one more,' it is expressed in German by noch ein; *e. g.*—Darf ich Ihnen noch ein Glas Wein anbieten? may I offer you another glass of wine? 'The other day' is expressed by neulich; 'the other evening' by neulich Abends; 'the other morning' by neulich Morgens.

§ 224. When an ordinal number is used, for the sake of distinction, in conjunction with the proper name of a person, it is placed after the name, as in English; *e. g.*—Friedrich der Zweite, Frederick the Second. Ludwig der Sechzehnte, Louis the Sixteenth.

In stating the date of the month, the ordinal number is employed adjectively; as—der erste Januar, the first of January; den (or am) sechsten December, on the sixth of December.

§ 225. *Distinctive Numerals*—that is, adverbs expressing succession—are formed from the ordinal numerals by adding *ens*; as—

erstens (or erstlich), firstly, or in the first place.

zweitens, secondly, or in the second place.

drittens, thirdly, or in the third place.

viertens, fourthly, or in the fourth place, &c.

### III. NUMERALS FORMED BY COMPOSITION.

§ 226. *Variative Numerals* answer to the question, 'How many kinds?' and are formed from cardinal numerals by adding to the genitive in *er* the old feminine substantive *lei*, which signifies, 'way, manner, or kind,' but is no longer in use as a separate word. They are used adjectively, but cannot be declined. For example:—

einerlei, of one kind.

zweierlei, of two kinds.

dreierlei, of three kinds.

viererlei, of four kinds, &c.

In the same manner are formed—vielerlei, of many kinds; mancherlei, of various kinds; mehrerlei, of several kinds; allerlei, of all kinds.

§ 227. *Multiplicative Numerals*, answering to the question, 'How many fold?' are formed by adding *fach* or *fältig*

to cardinal numerals. They are used and declined like adjectives. For example :—

einfach, simple.  
 zweifach or zwiefach, twofold.  
 dreifach, threefold.  
 vierfach, fourfold.  
 hundertfach, a hundredfold, &c.

Or zweifältig, dreifältig, vierfältig, hundertfältig, &c. The latter forms are less common. The word einfältig is only used in a figurative sense, meaning 'simple, artless, or silly.' The indefinite multiplicatives vielfach or vielfältig, mehrfach or mehrfältig, mannigfach or mannigfältig (not mannigfältig), are formed in the same way.

§ 228. *Reiterative Numerals*, answering to the question, 'How often?' are formed from cardinal numerals by adding the noun *Mal*, time; as—

einmal, once.  
 zweimal, twice.  
 dreimal, thrice.  
 viermal, four times, &c.

And in the same manner allemal, manchmal, jedesmal, &c. Being adverbs, they are indeclinable; but adjectives are formed from them by adding the syllable *ig*; e.g.—sein dreimaliger Besuch, his thrice-repeated visit.

Note.

From the adverbial numeral einmal (with the accent on ein) must be distinguished the adverb of time einmal (with the accent on mal), meaning 'once, once upon a time.' For instance:—Ich habe ihn nur einmal gesehen, I have only seen him once. Es war einmal ein König, there was once a king.

§ 229. *Fractional Numbers* are formed by compounding the ordinals with *tel*, which is a contraction for *Theil*, part; as—

ein Drittel, a third (part).  
 " Viertel, a fourth.  
 " Fünftel, a fifth.  
 " Sechstel, a sixth, &c.

These are declined like substantives of the neuter gender. Instead of Zweitel is used the adjective halb, half, which is

declined like every other adjective; *e.g.*—ein halbes Stück Tuch, half a piece of cloth; der halbe Tag, half the day; eine halbe Stunde, half an hour. But before names of towns and countries without the definite article, halb remains unchanged; as—halb Paris, half Paris; halb Frankreich, half France (§ 175, 4).

By compounding the ordinal numerals with halb, the following indeclinable fractionals are formed:—

anderthalb, one and a half (used for zweitehalb).

drittehalb, two and a half.

viertehalb, three and a half.

fünftehalb, four and a half, &c.

Examples:—Zwei Drittel, two-thirds; drei Fünftel, three-fifths; anderthalb Zoll, one inch and a half; drittehalb Meilen, two miles and a half; viertehalb Stunden, three hours and a half; vier und drei Viertel Pfund, four pounds and three quarters; neun und ein Viertel Ellen, nine yards and a quarter.

§ 230. The *hours of the day* are indicated in the following manner:—

es ist fünf Uhr, it is five o'clock.

" " ein Viertel auf sechs, it is a quarter past five.

" " halb sechs, it is half-past five.

" " drei Viertel auf sechs, it is a quarter to six.

" " in zehn Minuten sechs, it is ten minutes to six.

" " fünf Minuten nach or über sechs, it is five minutes past six.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

A year has twelve months.<sup>1</sup> A day has twenty-four hours. Mrs L. is forty-seven years old. The comedy has three acts.<sup>2</sup> The tragedy has five acts. The work consists<sup>3</sup> of ten volumes. This chest<sup>4</sup> contains<sup>5</sup> sixteen pounds<sup>6</sup> of tea. I have two sisters, and both are married.<sup>7</sup> Both his (say, his both)

<sup>1</sup> Month, Monat. <sup>2</sup> Act, Aufzug. <sup>3</sup> To consist of, bestehen aus, with the dative. <sup>4</sup> Chest, Kiste. <sup>5</sup> To contain, enthalten. <sup>6</sup> Pound, Pfund; use the singular. <sup>7</sup> Married, verheirathet.

brothers are merchants. We have heard it from three eye-witnesses.<sup>8</sup> It is the evidence<sup>9</sup> of three witnesses.<sup>10</sup> I have said it to four *persons*. The king goes<sup>11</sup> in a carriage and six (say, with six). The people<sup>12</sup> flocked near<sup>13</sup> in thousands. Hundreds were present.<sup>14</sup> Two hundred guests<sup>15</sup> are invited.<sup>16</sup> They walked<sup>17</sup> four and four. I have read the first twenty pages.<sup>18</sup> Berlin, the 3d<sup>19</sup> of May 1852. Luther was born<sup>20</sup> on the 21<sup>st</sup> 10th of November 1483, and died on the 18th of February<sup>22</sup> 1546. Goethe was born on the 28th of August 1749, and died on the 22d of March<sup>23</sup> 1832. Schiller was born on the 10th of November<sup>24</sup> 1759, and died on the 9th of May<sup>25</sup> 1805. Frederick the Second ascended<sup>26</sup> the Prussian<sup>27</sup> throne<sup>28</sup> in the year<sup>29</sup> 1740. This tree bears apples of three kinds. That is tenfold profit.<sup>30</sup> I have been twice in the country of the Rhine.<sup>31</sup> Two-thirds are wanting.<sup>32</sup> A franc<sup>33</sup> is five-sixths of an English shilling.<sup>34</sup> I have waited more than half an hour (say, an half hour). We reached<sup>35</sup> the town in three hours and a half. The lecture<sup>36</sup> does not last<sup>37</sup> above<sup>38</sup> one hour and a half. The place<sup>39</sup> is two miles<sup>40</sup> and a half from here. The parcel weighs<sup>41</sup> six pounds and three quarters (say, six and three quarters pound). It is three o'clock. It is a quarter to eight. It is half-past eleven. It is a quarter past one. It is ten minutes after nine. It is five minutes to ten. We arrived at<sup>42</sup> four o'clock. The steam-boat<sup>43</sup> starts<sup>44</sup> at half-past six o'clock. I shall get up<sup>45</sup> at half-past five. We breakfast<sup>46</sup> at a quarter to nine. The letters are [being] delivered<sup>47</sup> at a quarter past seven.

<sup>8</sup> Eye-witness, Augenzeuge. <sup>9</sup> Evidence, Aussage. <sup>10</sup> Witness, Zeuge. <sup>11</sup> To go, here fahren. <sup>12</sup> People, Volk. <sup>13</sup> Flocked near, strömte . . . herzu. <sup>14</sup> Present, zugegen. <sup>15</sup> Guest, Gast. <sup>16</sup> To invite, einladen. <sup>17</sup> To walk, gehen. <sup>18</sup> Page, Seite. <sup>19</sup> Use the accusative. <sup>20</sup> Was born, wurde geboren. <sup>21</sup> On the, am (a contraction for an dem). <sup>22</sup> February, Februar. <sup>23</sup> March, März. <sup>24</sup> November, November. <sup>25</sup> May, Mai. <sup>26</sup> To ascend, besteigen. <sup>27</sup> Prussian, Preussisch. <sup>28</sup> Throne, Thron. <sup>29</sup> In the year, im Jahre. <sup>30</sup> Profit, Gewinn. <sup>31</sup> Country of the Rhine, Rheingegend; use the dative, which is governed by in. <sup>32</sup> To be wanting, fehlen. <sup>33</sup> A franc, ein Franc. <sup>34</sup> Shilling, Schilling. <sup>35</sup> To reach, erreichen. <sup>36</sup> Lecture, Vorlesung. <sup>37</sup> To last, dauern. <sup>38</sup> Above, über. <sup>39</sup> Place, Ort. <sup>40</sup> Mile, Meile. <sup>41</sup> To weigh, wiegen. <sup>42</sup> At, um. <sup>43</sup> Steam-boat, Dampfboot. <sup>44</sup> To start, abfahren. <sup>45</sup> To get up, aufstehen. <sup>46</sup> To breakfast, frühstücken. <sup>47</sup> To deliver, abliefern.

## INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

§ 231. The following words are comprised under the class of indefinite numerals :—

kein, keine, kein, no, not any.	
jeder, e, eß,	} every, each.
jeglicher, e, eß,	
jedweder, e, eß,	
aller, e, eß, all.	
mancher, e, eß, many a, some.	
einige, }	} some.
etliche, }	
viel, much.	
wenig, little, few.	

These are all declined as adjectives, under certain restrictions in some particular cases, which will be noticed in their proper places.

§ 232. *Kein, keine, kein, no, none, not any*, is declined exactly as the definite numeral *ein, eine, ein* (on which see § 219). For example :—*Wir haben keine Waffen, Sch.*, we have no weapons. *Dir schreckt kein Sturm, Sch.*, no storm terrifies thee. *Ist unter allen meinen Dienern keiner, der die verhasste Wahl mir spart? Sch.*, is there not one among all my servants who spares me the hated choice? *Es scheint ein Räthsel, und doch ist es keines, G.*, it seems a riddle, and yet it is none. *Keiner* is also used substantively for *Niemand*, nobody, no person. (See § 213, and § 216, note 2.)

§ 233. *Jeder, jede, jedes*, or with the indefinite article, *ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes*, is used both adjectively ('every, each') and substantively ('everybody'). It can only be employed in the singular number. *Jeglicher, e, eß*, or *ein jeglicher, eine jegliche, ein jegliches*, and *jedweder, e, eß*, have the same meaning as *jeder*, and are likewise used substantively as well as adjectively, but, generally speaking, occur only in poetry. Examples :—*Seinen Lauf hat jeder Bach, jeder Strom hat seine Sphäre, Rückert*, every brook has its course, every stream its sphere. *Ein jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied, Prov.*, everybody is the artificer of his own fortune. *Ein jeglicher*

denkt nur sich selbst zu befriedigen, *G.*, every one thinks only how he will satisfy himself. Jedwede Tugend, Königin, hast du auf deinem Thron verherrlicht, *Sch.*, queen, thou hast glorified every virtue on thy throne.

§ 234. *Alle*, *alle*, *alles*, *all*, denotes number as well as quantity, and is used both adjectively and substantively. For example:—*Willkommen waren alle Gäste, Sch.*, all guests were welcome. *Alle sind krank*, all are ill. *Alles Geld ist ausgegeben*, all money has been spent. *Er weiß Alles*, he knows everything. The definite article, which in English is often placed between 'all' and the substantive, is not expressed in German, except when it has the force of a demonstrative pronoun. *Alle Einwohner der Stadt begleiteten seine Leiche*, all *the* inhabitants of the town attended his funeral. *Al* sometimes remains uninflected before a possessive or demonstrative pronoun joined to a substantive in the singular number, as in *all mein Erbtheil, Sch.*, all my inheritance; *all dieser Glanz*, all this splendour.

The neuter *Alles*, everything, is also applied to persons, in order to bring out with greater force the collective meaning; *e.g.*—*Alles war entzückt*, all (without exception) were enraptured. *Alles rath ihm ein milderer Klima zu suchen, Sch.*, all advise him to go to a warmer climate. *Alles fliehet mich, Sch.*, all flee from me.

The English 'every' is expressed by *alle* in the following and similar phrases:—*alle Jahre*, every year; *alle Tage*, every day; *alle drei Monate*, every three months; *alle zwanzig Schritte*, every twenty paces.

#### Notes.

1. *Ganz*, whole, differs from *all*, inasmuch as it expresses the complete and undivided state of an object, or of a unity consisting of parts, without in the least referring to the number of individual parts constituting the whole. The English employ 'all' as well as 'whole' in this sense. For example:—*das ganze Haus*, the whole house; *ein ganzes Jahr*, a whole year; *mein ganzer Körper*, my whole body; *die ganze Familie*, all the family; *den ganzen Tag*, all day. Before proper names of countries and places, when used without the definite article, *ganz* is not declined, *e.g.*—*ganz Griechenland*, all Greece; *in ganz Wien*, in all Vienna. (See § 175, 4.)

2. *Sämmtlich*, all together, and *gesammt*, whole, united, total, are stronger expressions for *all* and *ganz*. Both have a collective meaning, but in *sämmtlich* the numerical sense is predominant, whilst *gesammt*

generally conveys the notion of an undivided mass or body; *e. g.*—*sämmtliche Anwesende*, all present; *seine sämtlichen Freunde*, all his friends; *die gesammte Familie*, the whole family; *der gesammte Nachlaß*, the whole bequest.

§ 235. *Mancher*, *manche*, *manches*, many a, some, signifies an indefinite plurality. It is used both in the singular and plural, with or without a substantive. For instance:—*Mancher Mensch glaubt*, or *Mancher glaubt*, many a one believes. *Manche Menschen behaupten*, or *Manche behaupten*, many or some people assert. *Er hat manches Unglück erfahren*, he has met with many a misfortune.

§ 236. *Einige*, some, a few, signifies a small number of persons or things indefinitely, and is generally used in the plural, either with or without a substantive; as—*einige Menschen* or *Einige behaupten*, some people, or some assert. *Sie machte einige scherzhafte Anmerkungen*, *G.*, she made some jocular remarks. When employed in the singular before names of materials and abstract nouns, it denotes an indefinite small quantity; as—*einiges Holz*, some wood; *einiges Obst*, some fruit; *einige Hoffnung*, some hope. The indefinite pronoun *etwas* can also be used in this case; as—*etwas Geld*, some money; *etwas Obst*, some fruit; *etwas Glück*, some luck. (See § 216, note 2.)

*Etliche* has much the same meaning as *einige*, but is less common.

## Notes.

1. In familiar conversation, the word *welcher*, *c*, *es*, is not unfrequently employed for the English 'some,' in reference to an object previously mentioned. It is a contraction for the old word *etwelcher*, the use of which has now become obsolete. For example:—*Es war kein Schießpulver im Hause, und in der Nähe liegt kein Ort, wo ich welches hätte bekommen können*, *Jacobs*, there was no gunpowder in the house, and in the neighbourhood there is no place where I might have got some.

2. When the English 'some' denotes neither an indefinite small number nor an indefinite small quantity, but an individual, although indefinite, person or thing, it must be translated by *ein* or *irgend ein*. For instance:—*Some friend has told me*, *ein Freund hat es mir gesagt*. *I have read of it in some book*, *ich habe davon in irgend einem Buche gelesen*.

§ 237. *Viel*, much, many, and *wenig*, little, few, denote, the former a large, and the latter a small number or quantity. When they refer to quantity, they are generally not declined;



as in—*er trinkt viel Wasser, aber wenig Wein*, he drinks much water, but little wine. When, on the contrary, they point out a number, they are always declined if used substantively; as in—*Viele waren eingeladen worden, aber Wenige waren gekommen*, many had been invited, but few had come. But if used adjectively, they are sometimes declined, sometimes left unchanged; *e.g.*—*er hat viele Freunde*, he has many friends. *Maria hat noch viel verborgne Freunde, Sch.*, Mary still has many secret friends. *Wenige Jahre können Vieles ändern*, a few years can change many things. *In wenig Stunden kann die Nachricht da sein, Sch.*, in a few hours the news can be here.

The comparatives *mehr*, more, and *weniger*, less, fewer, are not declined. *Mehrere* has the meaning of 'several;' as in—*mehrere Monate*, several months. The superlatives *der, die, das meiste*, most, and *der, die, das wenigste*, least, fewest, are declined, and, contrary to the custom of the English language, cannot be used without the definite article; *e.g.*—*die meisten Städte Deutschlands*, most towns of Germany. *Die wenigsten Leute hatten davon gehört*, fewest people had heard of it.

§ 238. If a number is to be stated by approximation only, the following adverbs and prepositions are employed:—*etwa*, *ungefähr*, *an*, *gegen*, about; *beinahe*, *fast*, nearly; *kaum*, scarcely; *über*, above; *unter*, under; *bis*, to (as *dreißig bis vierzig*, from thirty to forty). 'Thirty and odd, forty and odd,' &c., is expressed by *dreißig und einige*, *vierzig und einige*.

## EXERCISE XLII.

No time is to be lost.<sup>1</sup> I have no money about<sup>2</sup> me. She has no children. No pen can describe<sup>3</sup> our condition.<sup>4</sup> No person is guiltless<sup>5</sup> before God.<sup>6</sup> Every moment<sup>7</sup> is precious.<sup>8</sup> Every season<sup>9</sup> has its peculiar<sup>10</sup> charms.<sup>11</sup> Every country has its peculiar customs.<sup>12</sup> The grave covers<sup>13</sup> every fault.<sup>14</sup> Joy beamed<sup>15</sup> from<sup>16</sup> every eye. Our impatience<sup>17</sup> grows

<sup>1</sup> Is to be lost, *ist zu verlieren*. <sup>2</sup> About, here *bei*, with the dative. <sup>3</sup> To describe, *beschreiben*. <sup>4</sup> Condition, *lage*. <sup>5</sup> Guiltless, *schuldlos*. <sup>6</sup> Before God, *vor Gott*. <sup>7</sup> Moment, *Augenblick*. <sup>8</sup> Precious, *kostbar*. <sup>9</sup> Season, *Jahreszeit*. <sup>10</sup> Peculiar, *besonder*. <sup>11</sup> Charm, *Reiz*. <sup>12</sup> Custom, *Gebrauch*. <sup>13</sup> To cover, *bedecken*. <sup>14</sup> Fault, *Fehler*. <sup>15</sup> To beam, *strahlen*. <sup>16</sup> From, *aus*, with the dative. <sup>17</sup> Impatience, *Ungebulb*.

with every hour. Every one praises his own country.<sup>18</sup> All are busy,<sup>19</sup> each in his own way.<sup>20</sup> All rivers run towards the sea.<sup>21</sup> All *the* passengers<sup>22</sup> were sea-sick.<sup>23</sup> Everything is in the best order.<sup>24</sup> All earthly<sup>25</sup> things are (say, everything earthly is) perishable.<sup>26</sup> All were (say, all was) astonished at the news.<sup>27</sup> A whole village is burnt.<sup>28</sup> He has been fishing<sup>29</sup> all day (say, the whole day). We receive letters from<sup>30</sup> India<sup>31</sup> every (say, all) four weeks, and from America every fortnight (say, all fourteen days). Many a one would think differently.<sup>32</sup> You will find many an old friend at<sup>33</sup> my house. I met<sup>34</sup> some friends of my youth.<sup>35</sup> Write [to] me soon a few words. We have eaten some fruit. I am seeking *for* some paper, but I cannot find any. Here is beer; will you have some?<sup>36</sup> I thank [to] you, I have already had some. The guests have drunk little wine. I drink little beer, but much water. Much ado<sup>37</sup> about<sup>38</sup> nothing. We have lost much time. Not many know the secret.<sup>39</sup> Few *people* estimate<sup>40</sup> the value<sup>41</sup> of [the] time. We shall stay<sup>42</sup> several months in Vienna. The merchant has sent several samples,<sup>43</sup> but none answers<sup>44</sup> my expectation.<sup>45</sup> [The] most historians<sup>46</sup> relate<sup>47</sup> the event.<sup>48</sup>

<sup>18</sup> His own country, sein Vaterland. <sup>19</sup> Busy, geschäftig. <sup>20</sup> In his own way, auf seine Weise. <sup>21</sup> Towards the sea, dem Meere zu. <sup>22</sup> Passenger, Passagier. <sup>23</sup> Sea-sick, seefrank. <sup>24</sup> Order, Ordnung; use the dative after in. <sup>25</sup> Earthly, irdisch. <sup>26</sup> Perishable, vergänglich. <sup>27</sup> Astonished at the news, über die Nachricht erstaunt. <sup>28</sup> Burnt, abgebrannt. <sup>29</sup> To fish, fischen. <sup>30</sup> From, aus. <sup>31</sup> India, Indien. <sup>32</sup> Differently, anders. <sup>33</sup> At, in, with the dative. <sup>34</sup> To meet, treffen. <sup>35</sup> Friends of my youth, Jugendfreunde. <sup>36</sup> See § 236, note 1. <sup>37</sup> Ado, Lärmen. <sup>38</sup> About, um. <sup>39</sup> Secret, Geheimniß. <sup>40</sup> To estimate, schätzen. <sup>41</sup> Value, Werth. <sup>42</sup> To stay, sich aufhalten. <sup>43</sup> Sample, Probe. <sup>44</sup> To answer, entsprechen, with the dative. <sup>45</sup> Expectation, Erwartung. <sup>46</sup> Historian, Geschichtschreiber. <sup>47</sup> To relate, erzählen. <sup>48</sup> Event, Begebenheit.

## XX.

### ADVERBS.

§ 239. Adverbs are words which modify the ideas expressed by verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; as in *ſie ſingt ſchön*, she sings beautifully; *er iſt gefährlich krank*, he is dangerously ill; *wir ſchreiten ſehr langſam vorwärts*, we advance very slowly. Adverbs express relations of place, time, manner, intensity, and mood. They are indeclinable.

§ 240. With regard to their form, the adverbs may be divided into three classes; namely—

1. Primitive adverbs, as—*nun*, *noch*, *je*, *jezt*, *doch*, *ja*; also most prepositions, as *in*, *an*, *auf*, *vor*, &c., which, when compounded with verbs, assume the force of adverbs.

2. Adverbs derived from other words, more especially—

a. Such as are derived from demonstrative and interrogative pronouns, as—*da*, *dann*, *hier*, *wo*, *wann*, *wie*, &c. (See § 211.)

b. Adverbs formed from adjectives. Almost all adjectives are used also as adverbs, without undergoing any change. Some adjectives, however, and also a few substantives, are changed into adverbs by means of the suffix *lich* or *ling*, especially the following:—

*bitterlich*, bitterly.  
*ewiglich*, eternally.  
*freilich*, indeed, it is true.  
*gänzlich*, entirely.  
*gewißlich*, certainly.  
*höchlich*, highly.  
*kürzlich*, recently.

*lediglich*, merely.  
*neulich*, lately.  
*ſchwerlich*, hardly.  
*ſicherlich*, surely.  
*treulich*, faithfully.  
*wahrlich*, verily.  
*weißlich*, wisely, &c.

From substantives—

*eidlich*, upon oath.  
*jährlich*, yearly.  
*künſtlich*, artificially.  
*mündlich*, orally.

*ſchriftlich*, by writing.  
*ſtündlich*, hourly.  
*täglich*, daily.  
*vorzüglich*, preferably, &c.

With the suffix *lingē*—

*blindlingē*, blindly.  
*jählingē*, precipitously.

*föpplingē*, headlong.  
*rüdlingē*, backward, &c.

It must here be observed, however, that in the older language the suffix *lich* (*lih*) was used only to form adjectives. It was not till a later period that the custom was introduced of forming adverbs by adding *lich* to the adjective; most adverbs thus formed have since either assumed the force of adjectives, especially those derived from substantives, or have thrown off their characteristic termination; whence, at the present time, only very few have preserved their purely adverbial nature. The greater number of these are mentioned above.

Adverbs formed from participles by means of the suffix *lich* occur very rarely; *e.g.*—

*flehentlich*, suppliantly.  
*gesöffentlich*, deliberately.  
*gelegentlich*, by and by.

*hoffentlich*, it is to be hoped.  
*wiffentlich*, wilfully.

c. Adverbs derived from substantives, adjectives, and participles, by means of the termination *ē*, or *enē*; as—(*deē*) *Morgens*, in the morning; (*deē*) *Abends*, in the evening; *flügē*, quickly; *theilē*, partly; *ringē*, in a circle; *anfangē*, in the beginning; *linfē*, on the left; *rechtē*, on the right; *bereitē*, already; *stetē*, continually; *besonders*, separately, particularly; *anders*, otherwise; *eilenē*, in haste; *zufehenē*, visibly; *übrigenē*, for the rest; *erstē*, in the first place; *zweitenē*, in the second place, &c.; and the superlatives *höchstenē*, *schönstenē*, *meistenē*, &c., on which see § 241, c, note.

3. Adverbs formed by composition; as—*herbor*, forth; *hienieden*, here below; *vorbei*, past; *bergauf*, up-hill; *bergab*, down-hill; *bezeiten*, betimes, early; *fürwahr*, in truth; *überall*, everywhere; *überhaupt*, generally; *zuweilen*, sometimes; *zollweise*, by inches, &c. In adverbs compounded of substantives and adjectives, or adjective pronouns, the genitive form is of very frequent occurrence; as in—*glücklicherweise*, luckily; *natürlicherweise*, naturally; *keineswegs*, by no means; *jedenfalls*, at all events; *größtentheils*, for a great part; *meistentheils*, for the most part; *mittlerweile*, in the meantime; *einigermassen*, in some measure; *einerseits*, on

the one hand ; andrerseits, on the other hand ; allerbings, certainly ; unterwegs, on the way ; and others.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

Are you still here ? It is already evening. It will soon strike seven. We visit each other very seldom. Have you often been in Scotland ?<sup>1</sup> It rained yesterday and the day before yesterday.<sup>2</sup> Shall<sup>3</sup> we take a drive<sup>4</sup> to-day ? Will you take a ride<sup>5</sup> to-morrow ? The day after to-morrow<sup>6</sup> is Julia's<sup>7</sup> birthday.<sup>8</sup> You walk<sup>9</sup> fast.<sup>10</sup> She writes distinctly.<sup>11</sup> They have fought bravely.<sup>12</sup> He is severely<sup>13</sup> wounded.<sup>14</sup> She wept bitterly. Have you recently been in Dublin ? I have lately been in Brussels.<sup>15</sup> He came indeed, but too late. The Lord has ordained<sup>16</sup> all things<sup>17</sup> wisely. I see him daily. We shall inform<sup>18</sup> you by writing. He rushes<sup>19</sup> blindly into<sup>20</sup> every danger. We study in the morning, in the evening we amuse<sup>21</sup> ourselves (say, amuse we ourselves). On the left is the dining-room,<sup>22</sup> on the right, a study.<sup>23</sup> The drawing-room<sup>24</sup> is up-stairs.<sup>25</sup> We went up-hill and down-hill. Come betimes. He has been everywhere. I was luckily from home.<sup>26</sup> At all events you must (say, must you) visit us once more.<sup>27</sup> He has by no means acted<sup>28</sup> as<sup>29</sup> he ought to have done.

<sup>1</sup> Scotland, Schottland. <sup>2</sup> The day before yesterday, vorgestern, or vorgestern. <sup>3</sup> Shall, sollen. <sup>4</sup> To take a drive, spazieren fahren. <sup>5</sup> To take a ride, einen Spazierritt machen. <sup>6</sup> The day after to-morrow, übermorgen. <sup>7</sup> Julia, Julie. <sup>8</sup> Birthday, Geburtstag. <sup>9</sup> To walk, gehen. <sup>10</sup> Fast, schnell. <sup>11</sup> Distinctly, deutlich. <sup>12</sup> Bravely, tapfer. <sup>13</sup> Severely, schwer. <sup>14</sup> To wound, verwunden. <sup>15</sup> Brussels, Brüssel. <sup>16</sup> To ordain, ordnen. <sup>17</sup> All things, Alles. <sup>18</sup> To inform, benachrichtigen. <sup>19</sup> To rush, sich stürzen. <sup>20</sup> Into, in, with the accusative. <sup>21</sup> To amuse one's self, sich belustigen. <sup>22</sup> Dining-room, Speisezimmer. <sup>23</sup> Study, Studierstube. <sup>24</sup> Drawing-room, Gesellschaftszimmer. <sup>25</sup> Up-stairs, oben. <sup>26</sup> From home, nicht zu Hause. <sup>27</sup> Once more, noch einmal. <sup>28</sup> To act, handeln. <sup>29</sup> As he ought to have done, wie er hätte handeln sollen.

§ 241. Some adverbs are capable of comparison—that is, may have a comparative and superlative—namely, all adverbs which denote manner ; e.g.—schnell, quickly ; leicht, lightly ; schön, beautifully ; also a few which express a relative determination of place or time, as—nahe, near ; fern or weit, far ;

früh, early ; spät, late ; oft, often ; häufig, frequently ; selten, rarely.

1. The comparative of such adverbs is formed in the same manner as the comparative of adjectives, namely, by affixing *er* ; as—*schneller*, more quickly ; *schöner*, more beautifully ; *näher*, nearer ; *länger*, longer ; *öfter*, oftener. The modification of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the formation both of the comparative and superlative, is subject to the same restrictions as in the comparison of adjectives. (See § 181.)

2. The relative superlative (or superlative of comparison) is formed by prefixing *am*, 'at the . . .,' and adding *sten* to the simple adverb ; as—*am schnellsten*, (at the) quickest ; *am schönsten*, (at the) finest ; *am längsten*, (at the) longest. Examples :—*Wer kann am schnellsten laufen?* who can run quickest ? *Er schreibt am schönsten von allen*, he writes best of all. *Die Urner sind es, die am längsten säumen*, *Sch.*, it is the men of Uri who tarry longest.

Note.

In some particular cases, the relative superlative is formed by prefixing *zu* to the simple form of the superlative in *st*, as in *zuerst*, (at the) first ; *zuletzt*, (at the) last ; *zunächst*, next, in the next place ; *zuvorberst*, first of all ; *zuoberst*, uppermost ; *zuunterst*, lowest.

3. The absolute superlative (or superlative of eminence) can be expressed in various ways :—

*a.* The adverb can be joined to another adverb denoting a high degree, such as *sehr*, *recht*, *höchst*, *äußerst*, *außerordentlich*, *ungemein*. For example :—*Sie tanzt sehr schön*, she dances very beautifully. *Die Anführer kannten die Natur des Volkes recht wohl*, *Leo*, the leaders knew the character of the people right well. *Seine Gesundheit stellte sich wieder her, aber äußerst langsam*, his health improved again, but exceedingly slowly.

*b.* The simple form of the superlative in *st* without inflection is exclusively employed in the sense of the absolute superlative, but its use is limited to those adverbs which end in *ig*, *lich*, *sam*, *bar*, besides a few monosyllables, as—*längst*, long ago ; *höchst*, in a very high degree ; *jüngst*, recently. For example :—*Sie wurde innigst geliebt*, she was most intensely loved. *Er läßt freundlichst grüßen*, he desires to be most kindly remembered. *Die Theilung war längst geschehen*, *Sch.*, the division had long ago taken place. \*

c. The neuter of the attributive form of the superlative with the preposition *auf* preceding it, is employed for the same end ; as—*auf das grausamste*, or contracted *auf's grausamste*, most cruelly, in a most cruel manner. Examples :—*Ich wurde auf das freundlichste begrüßt, Jacobs*, I was most kindly received. *Die Bauern waren auf das elendeste bewaffnet, Ranke*, the peasants were most miserably armed. *Laß meine Leute dir auf's beste empfohlen sein, G.*, let my attendants be commended to thy best care. *Er besorgt seine Geschäfte auf's gewissenhafteste*, he attends to his business most conscientiously.

## Note.

A few adverbs form a superlative by the termination *stens*, that is, *ens* being affixed to the simple superlative in *st*. But superlatives of this kind are used only in peculiar significations, as will be seen from the following list :—

<i>höchstens</i> , at the most.	<i>längstens</i> , at the longest.
<i>meistens</i> , for the most part.	<i>nächstens</i> , shortly, very soon.
<i>wenigstens</i> , } <i>mindestens</i> , } at least.	<i>erstens</i> , in the first place.
<i>ehestens</i> , at the soonest.	<i>lestens</i> , in the last place.
<i>frühestens</i> , not before.	<i>bestens</i> , in the best manner.
<i>spätestens</i> , at the latest.	<i>schönstens</i> , in the finest manner.

The last two are only used in some complimentary phrases ; as—*ich empfehle mich bestens* ; *er dankt schönstens*.

§ 242. The following adverbs make their comparative and superlative from other stems :—

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>wohl</i> or <i>gut</i> , well ;	<i>besser</i> , better ;	<i>am besten</i> , best.
<i>balb</i> , soon ;	<i>eher</i> , sooner ;	<i>am ehesten</i> , soonest.
<i>gern</i> , willingly,	<i>lieber</i> , more wil-	<i>am liebsten</i> , most
<i>gladly</i> ;	<i>lingly</i> ;	<i>willingly</i> .

## EXERCISE XLIV.

Speak louder.<sup>1</sup> Please<sup>2</sup> walk a little<sup>3</sup> slower. You must write more distinctly. Mary<sup>4</sup> speaks English more fluently<sup>5</sup> than Anne.<sup>6</sup> Which of the sisters speaks most correctly ?<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Loud, laut. <sup>2</sup> Please, bitte. <sup>3</sup> A little, ein wenig. <sup>4</sup> Mary, Marie.  
<sup>5</sup> Fluently, gelauffig. <sup>6</sup> Anne, Anna. <sup>7</sup> Correctly, richtig.

Which of the regiments<sup>8</sup> has fought most bravely? He behaves<sup>9</sup> very improperly.<sup>10</sup> He has been paid<sup>11</sup> very handsomely.<sup>12</sup> She was most intensely<sup>13</sup> loved by<sup>14</sup> all who knew her. My brothers and sisters<sup>15</sup> desire<sup>16</sup> to be most kindly<sup>17</sup> remembered to you. Write if you please<sup>18</sup> by return of post.<sup>19</sup> Will you be so good<sup>20</sup> as to wait a moment? He performs<sup>21</sup> his duties most conscientiously.<sup>22</sup> My lawyer<sup>23</sup> has examined<sup>24</sup> the documents<sup>25</sup> most minutely.<sup>26</sup> Mr N.'s house is most splendidly<sup>27</sup> furnished.<sup>28</sup> The hall<sup>29</sup> was most tastefully<sup>30</sup> decorated.<sup>31</sup> We shall stay<sup>32</sup> at the most four weeks in the country. I shall set out<sup>33</sup> at the latest<sup>34</sup> on Monday evening,<sup>35</sup> and not return before<sup>36</sup> Thursday morning.<sup>37</sup> I have read the work at least<sup>38</sup> three times. Mr A. sends his best compliments.<sup>39</sup> My mother returns her kindest thanks<sup>40</sup> for your valuable present. My aunt<sup>41</sup> is in better health now (say, finds<sup>42</sup> herself now better) than last winter.<sup>43</sup> Who reads best, John or Edward? Which horse do you like<sup>44</sup> best? The<sup>45</sup> sooner you come the better. We will rather (say, more willingly) lose the small sum than go to law.<sup>46</sup> I should like best to stay (say, I should most willingly stay) at home.

<sup>8</sup> Regiments, Regimenter. <sup>9</sup> To behave, sich betragen. <sup>10</sup> Improperly, unschicklich. <sup>11</sup> To pay, bezahlen. <sup>12</sup> Handsomely, anständig. <sup>13</sup> Intensely, innig. <sup>14</sup> By, von, with the dative. <sup>15</sup> Brothers and sisters, Geschwister. <sup>16</sup> Desire to be remembered to you, lassen sich Ihnen . . . empfehlen. <sup>17</sup> Kindly, freundlich. <sup>18</sup> If you please, gefälligst. <sup>19</sup> By return of post, mit umgehender Post. <sup>20</sup> Will you be so good as to wait? wollen Sie gütigst . . . warten? <sup>21</sup> To perform, erfüllen. <sup>22</sup> Conscientiously, gewissenhaft. <sup>23</sup> Lawyer, Advokat. <sup>24</sup> To examine, prüfen. <sup>25</sup> Documents, Dokumente. <sup>26</sup> Minutely, genau. <sup>27</sup> Splendidly, prachtvoll. <sup>28</sup> To furnish, ausmöbliren. <sup>29</sup> Hall, Saal. <sup>30</sup> Tastefully, geschmackvoll. <sup>31</sup> To decorate, decoriren. <sup>32</sup> To stay, bleiben. <sup>33</sup> To set out, abreisen. <sup>34</sup> At the latest, spätestens. <sup>35</sup> On Monday evening, am Montag Abend. <sup>36</sup> Not before, frühestens. <sup>37</sup> Thursday morning, am Donnerstag Morgen. <sup>38</sup> At least, wenigstens. <sup>39</sup> Sends his best compliments, empfiehlt sich bestens. <sup>40</sup> Returns her kindest thanks, dankt schönstens. <sup>41</sup> Aunt, Tante. <sup>42</sup> To find one's self, sich befinden. <sup>43</sup> Last winter, vorigen Winter. <sup>44</sup> Do you like, gefällt Ihnen. <sup>45</sup> The . . . the . . . , je . . . desto . . . <sup>46</sup> To go to law, vor Gericht gehen.



§ 243. The peculiar use of some adverbs is shewn in the following examples:—

1. jetzt, nun.

Wir sind jetzt in Trauer,	we are <i>at present</i> in mourning.
Wir haben es gesehen, nun sind wir überzeugt,	we have seen it, <i>now</i> (that is, in consequence of that, or under these circumstances) we are convinced.
Nun, ich habe nichts dawider,	<i>well</i> , I have no objection.
Nun, das ist sehr natürlich,	<i>why</i> , that is very natural.

2. eben.

Es ist eben derselbe Ort,	it is <i>exactly</i> the same (or the <i>very</i> same) place.
Wir wollten es (so) eben ver- suchen,	we were <i>just</i> going to try it.
So eben (or jetzt eben) habe ich die Nachricht empfangen,	<i>just now</i> I received the news.
Er ist eben so alt wie ich,	he is <i>just</i> as old as I.
Das ist es eben, was wir fürch- ten,	that is <i>just</i> the thing we are afraid of.
Eben die Gefahr ist es, die den Alpenjäger reizt,	it is the <i>very</i> danger that charms the Alpine hunter.
Das kann ich eben nicht sagen,	I cannot <i>exactly</i> say that.

3. gern, lieber, am liebsten.

Ich thue es gern,	I do it <i>with pleasure</i> .
Ich werde es recht gern thun,	I shall do it <i>with much plea-</i> <i>sure</i> .
Ich habe es nicht gern gethan,	I have not done it <i>inten-</i> <i>tionally</i> .
Ich möchte gern wissen,	I should <i>like</i> to know.
Ich hätte ihn gern gefragt,	I would <i>fain</i> have asked him.
Essen Sie dieses Gericht gern?	Do you <i>like</i> this dish?
Sie spricht gern,	she is <i>fond</i> of talking.
Ich trinke rothen Wein lieber als weißen,	I <i>like</i> red wine <i>better</i> than white.
Welche Sprache mögen Sie am liebsten?	Which language do you <i>like</i> <i>best</i> ?

## 4. erst.

Man muß erst denken, dann sprechen,	one must think <i>first</i> , and then speak.
Das Dampfsschiff wird erst übermorgen anlangen,	the steam-boat will <i>not</i> arrive <i>till</i> the day after to-morrow.
Ich werde ihn erst morgen sehen,	I shall <i>not</i> see him <i>before</i> to-morrow.
Wir sind erst am Fuße des Berges,	we are <i>only</i> (that is, no further than) at the foot of the hill.
Der Knabe ist erst zehn Jahre alt,	the boy is <i>only</i> (that is, not more than) ten years old.

## 5. schon.

Haben Sie schon das neue Lustspiel gesehen?	have you seen the new comedy <i>already</i> ?
Sind Sie schon in Deutschland gewesen?	have you <i>ever</i> been in Germany?
Ich bin schon zwei Monate hier,	I have been here for two months <i>past</i> .
Die Briefe sind schon gestern Abend angekommen,	the letters arrived ( <i>as early as</i> ) last night.
Sie werden mich schon verstehen,	<i>I daresay</i> you will understand me.
Wir werden uns schon vergleichen,	<i>I doubt not</i> but that we shall come to an agreement.

## 6. noch.

Er ist noch am Leben,	he is <i>still</i> alive.
Ich habe das Buch noch nicht gelesen,	I have not <i>yet</i> read the book.
Er geht noch heute weg,	he goes away <i>even</i> to-day (that is, not later than to-day).
Ich sah ihn noch vor wenig Tagen,	I saw him <i>but</i> a few days ago.
Sagen Sie es noch einmal,	say it once <i>more</i> .
Wollen Sie noch ein Glas Wein annehmen?	will you take <i>another</i> glass of wine?
Es sei auch noch so wenig,	be it <i>ever</i> so little.

## 7. wohl.

- Wir haben es wohl gehört, we have heard it *indeed*, but  
 aber nicht verstanden, we have not understood it.  
 Ja, wohl ist's besser die Gletscherberge im Rücken haben, yes, *indeed* it is better to have  
 als die bösen Menschen, *Sch.*, the glaciers at your back  
 Sie haben mich wohl nicht than false men.  
 verstanden? *perhaps* you have not under-  
 stood me.  
 Sie haben wohl in Paris *I presume* you have some  
 Geschäfte abzumachen? business to transact in  
 Paris?

## 8. doch.

- Die Treue ist doch kein leerer fidelity is *certainly* no vain  
 Wahn, *Sch.*, illusion.  
 Sie glauben doch nicht im *surely* you do not seriously  
 Ernste, daß ich dem Worte believe that I dislike the  
 Freundschaft gram sei, *Sch.*, word 'friendship.'  
 Mich verlangt doch nach der I am *really* anxious for the  
 Entwicklung dieser Komödie, dénouement of this comedy.  
 Sie haben doch über nichts zu you have nothing to com-  
 klagen? plain of, *I hope*?  
 Sie können doch den Namen you can read the name, *I*  
 lesen? *suppose*?  
 Zeigen Sie mir doch Ihre *pray* shew me your paintings.  
 Gemälde (after an imper.)  
 Ist aus dem Innern doch der *since* the enemy is driven  
 Feind verjagt, out of the interior (of the  
 Dem Feind von außen wollen country), we will (not fear  
 wir begegnen, *Sch.*, to) meet the enemy from  
 without.  
 Wär' ich selbst doch noch der- *would* that I myself were  
 selbe! *Platen*, still the same!

## 9. auch.

- Wanken auch die Berge selbst? do *even* the very mountains  
*Sch.*, shake?  
 Es spart der Krieg auch nicht war does not spare *even* the  
 das Kindlein in der Wiege, infant in the cradle.  
 Hast du auch wohl bedacht, *are you sure* you have con-  
 was du mir rättest? *Sch.*, sidered well what you  
 advise me?

## 10. ja.

Kommen Sie ja,	<i>be sure to come.</i>
Bergeffen Sie es ja nicht,	<i>be sure not to forget it.</i>
Wenn sie es ja leugnen sollte,	<i>if she should indeed deny it.</i>
Er hat ja seine Einwilligung gegeben, <i>Sch.</i> ,	<i>he has given his consent, you know.</i>

## EXERCISE XLV.

I have at present no money to spare.<sup>1</sup> What is now (that is, under these circumstances) to be done?<sup>2</sup> Well, I agree to it.<sup>3</sup> We have taken<sup>4</sup> the very same house which you occupied<sup>5</sup> last summer.<sup>6</sup> Mr N. has (say, is) just arrived. I am just now writing to<sup>7</sup> my cousin. He has just as much right<sup>8</sup> as thou. That is just the thing I wished to know.<sup>9</sup> Do you like pudding?<sup>10</sup> I like fish<sup>11</sup> very much. Which wine do you like best? I like Spanish wines better than French. She is fond of dancing. I should like to know if we may expect you.<sup>12</sup> I cannot give you a definite<sup>13</sup> answer till the day after to-morrow. We have only gone over<sup>14</sup> fifty miles *yet*. The girl is only sixteen years old. Have you ever been on the continent?<sup>15</sup> The letters have [already] been delivered<sup>16</sup> an hour ago.<sup>17</sup> I doubt not but that they will come to an agreement.<sup>18</sup> I have not seen the new comedy yet. Read the whole passage<sup>19</sup> once more. May I offer<sup>20</sup> [to] you another piece *of* cake.<sup>21</sup> I thank<sup>22</sup> you for another cup *of* tea. I have read the book indeed, but I have not understood it. Perhaps you have misunderstood<sup>23</sup> him. I presume you have often<sup>24</sup> been in London before? You surely do not mean<sup>25</sup> that<sup>26</sup> I am to believe

<sup>1</sup> To spare, übrig. <sup>2</sup> To be done, zu thun. <sup>3</sup> I agree to it, ich bin es zufrieden. <sup>4</sup> To take, here miethen. <sup>5</sup> To occupy, bewohnen. <sup>6</sup> Use the accusative. <sup>7</sup> To, an with the accusative. <sup>8</sup> Right, Recht. <sup>9</sup> I wished to know, was ich zu wissen wünschte. <sup>10</sup> Pudding, Pudding. <sup>11</sup> Fish, Fisch. <sup>12</sup> If we may expect you, ob wir Sie erwarten dürfen. <sup>13</sup> Definite, bestimmt. <sup>14</sup> To go over, zurücklegen. <sup>15</sup> On the continent, auf dem Continent, or auf dem Festlande. <sup>16</sup> To deliver, abliefern. <sup>17</sup> An hour ago, vor einer Stunde. <sup>18</sup> To come to an agreement, sich vergleichen. <sup>19</sup> Passage, Stelle. <sup>20</sup> May I offer, darf ich . . . anbieten? <sup>21</sup> Cake, Kuchen. <sup>22</sup> I thank you for . . . , ich bitte mir . . . aus. <sup>23</sup> To misunderstand, mißverstehen. <sup>24</sup> Often before, schon öfter. <sup>25</sup> To mean, meinen. <sup>26</sup> That I am to believe all, daß ich Alles glauben soll.

all that<sup>27</sup> you are saying. You are not unwell, I hope. You have no objection,<sup>28</sup> I hope. You can read the handwriting,<sup>29</sup> I suppose. Pray tell [to] me what o'clock it is.<sup>30</sup> Do even my best friends deceive<sup>31</sup> me? Are you sure you have considered<sup>32</sup> what you are going to do?<sup>33</sup> Be sure to keep<sup>34</sup> yourself warm. Be sure to write as soon as possible.<sup>35</sup> He has given his word, you know. You have said it yourself,<sup>36</sup> you know.

<sup>27</sup> That, *was*. (See § 209.) <sup>28</sup> No objection, *nichts dawider*. <sup>29</sup> Hand-writing, *Handschrift*. <sup>30</sup> What o'clock it is, *was es geschlagen hat*. <sup>31</sup> To deceive, *hintergehen*; arrange—'Deceive me even my best friends?' <sup>32</sup> To consider, *bedenken*. <sup>33</sup> What you are going to do, *was Sie thun wollen*. <sup>34</sup> To keep, *halten*. <sup>35</sup> As soon as possible, *so bald wie möglich*. <sup>36</sup> See § 195, note.

## XXI.

### PREPOSITIONS.

§ 244. Prepositions indicate the relation which a person or thing bears to an action, or to another person or thing. Such a relation, however, is often expressed by the mere cases of the substantive or substantive pronoun. Prepositions are, as the term implies, generally put *before* the noun or pronoun, with the exception of a few which are sometimes, and a few others which are always placed *after* it. Whilst prepositions are themselves indeclinable, they exercise an influence upon the noun with which they are connected, by causing it to be put in a particular case; in other words, prepositions govern certain cases.

#### Note.

Prepositions are also joined to verbs in the capacity of prefixes, mostly of a separable nature. They are in such a connection to be considered as adverbs, pointing out the direction of a motion in a general way; *as*—*aufstehen*, to stand up; *umkehren*, to turn about; *nachfolgen*, to follow *after*.

§ 245. As to their origin, the prepositions are either *genuine* or *spurious*. The former class comprises all original prepositions, the latter all those which are derived from other

kinds of words—such as substantives, adverbs, adjectives, participles—and compound expressions which have assumed the power of prepositions. Among the genuine prepositions, some govern the dative, others the accusative, others sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative. Most spurious prepositions, on the other hand, govern the genitive, a few the dative, still fewer the accusative, and only two sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative. The prepositions, especially those of the first-named kind, principally denote relations of place, but, besides these, they also express relations of time, manner, cause, object, and attribute.

## I. GENUINE PREPOSITIONS.

§ 246. The following seven govern the dative :—

aus, out of, from (motion).

außer, out of, without (rest) ; except, besides.

bei, at, by, near, with (nearness).

mit, with (company, and instrumentality).

nach, to (motion to a place) ; after ; according to.

von, of, from.

zu, to (motion to a person) ; at, in ; for (purpose).

## Note.

Außer occurs with the genitive in the phrase außer Landes, out of the country, abroad.—The preposition ob, over, is obsolete, its place being supplied by über. Ob in its primary signification governs the dative, in the signification 'on account of,' the genitive also.

## EXAMPLES : aus—

Er kam aus dem Hause,	he came <i>out of</i> the house.
Es ist aus Unbedacht geschehen,	it has been done <i>from</i> thoughtlessness.

## außer—

Wir waren außer dem Hause,	we were <i>out of</i> the house, or <i>from</i> home.
Dein Bruder ist außer Gefahr,	thy brother is <i>out of</i> danger.
Außer uns beiden war Niemand zugegen,	<i>besides</i> (or <i>except</i> ) us two, there was no person present.

## bei—

Bleibe bei mir,	<i>stay with</i> me.
-----------------	----------------------

Bei mir zu Steinen halt' ich ihn verborgen, <i>Sch.</i> ,	<i>with</i> me (that is, at my house) in Steinen I hold him in concealment.
Er hat eine Stelle bei Hofe,	he holds an appointment <i>at</i> court.
Ich habe kein Geld bei mir, Gewaltherrschaft ward nie bei uns geduldet, <i>Sch.</i> ,	I have no money <i>about</i> me. despotism was never tolerated <i>with</i> (or <i>amongst</i> ) us.
Beim Eintritt in das Haus,	<i>on</i> entering the house.
Bei Annäherung des Früh- lings,	<i>on</i> the approach of spring.
Bei dieser Gelegenheit,	<i>on</i> this occasion.

mit—

Ich ging mit einem Freunde spazieren,	I took a walk <i>with</i> a friend.
Schreiben Sie mit Stahlfe- dern?	Do you write <i>with</i> steel-pens?
Er wurde mit Grausamkeit behandelt,	he was treated <i>with</i> cruelty.

nach—

Ich werde nach Deutschland reisen,	I shall go <i>to</i> Germany.
Ich schiffte mich nach Frank- reich ein,	I embarked <i>for</i> France.
Wir gingen nach Hause,	we went home.
Nach dem Mittagessen,	<i>after</i> dinner.
Er strebt nach Ruhm,	he strives <i>after</i> fame.
Nach meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung nach,	<i>according to</i> my opinion.

von—

Mein Freund ist gestern von Stettin gekommen,	my friend came <i>from</i> Stettin yesterday.
Von den Wänden langten sie die rost'gen Schwerter, <i>Sch.</i> ,	they took the rusty swords <i>from</i> the walls.
Von der Wiege bis zum Grabe,	<i>from</i> the cradle to the grave.
Sie redeten von den alten Dichtern,	they spoke <i>of</i> the ancient poets.
Dieses Lied ist von Schubart in Musik gesetzt,	this song is set to music <i>by</i> Schubart.

## zu—

Ich gehe zu meinem Oheim,	I go to my uncle.
Er studirt zu Heidelberg,	he studies at Heidelberg.
Wir werden zu Hause bleiben,	we shall stay at home.
Er reist zu seinem Vergnügen,	he travels for his pleasure.
Ich gehe zu Bette, zu Tische,	I go to bed, to dinner, to
zur Schule,	school.
Ich reise zu Lande, zur See,	I travel by land, by sea, on
zu Pferde, zu Wagen, zu	horseback, in a conveyance,
Fuß,	on foot.

## EXERCISE XLVI.

He pulled his watch out of his (say, the) pocket.<sup>1</sup> The knight<sup>2</sup> drew the sword out of the scabbard.<sup>3</sup> We came from church<sup>4</sup> (say, out of the church). I know it from (say, out of) long experience.<sup>5</sup> I perceive<sup>6</sup> from (say, out of) your letter that you are going<sup>7</sup> to visit us. The patient<sup>8</sup> is out of danger. Except him and me, *there* was no person present. Stay with us as long as<sup>9</sup> you please. We dwell near the church. An appointment at court has been promised<sup>10</sup> to him. We were sitting at table.<sup>11</sup> I had only a few dollars<sup>12</sup> about me. Have you a pencil<sup>13</sup> about you (say, yourself)? That is not customary<sup>14</sup> with (or, among) us. On the approach of [the] winter we shall (say, shall we) return<sup>15</sup> to London. Two gentlemen have (say, are) come with my father from England. Cut<sup>16</sup> the paper with a pair of scissors.<sup>17</sup> We were [being] received<sup>18</sup> with the greatest kindness.<sup>19</sup> My sisters will go (say, travel) next summer<sup>20</sup> to Germany. Our brother has (say, is) emigrated<sup>21</sup> to Australia.<sup>22</sup> Are you going home? After [the] breakfast<sup>23</sup> I will (say, will I) learn my French lesson.<sup>24</sup> According to

<sup>1</sup> Pocket, Tasche. <sup>2</sup> Knight, Ritter. <sup>3</sup> Scabbard, Scheide. <sup>4</sup> Church, Kirche. <sup>5</sup> Experience, Erfahrung. <sup>6</sup> To perceive, erkennen. <sup>7</sup> That you are going to visit us, daß Sie uns besuchen wollen. <sup>8</sup> The patient, der Kranke. <sup>9</sup> As long as you please, so lange es Ihnen beliebt. <sup>10</sup> To promise, versprechen. <sup>11</sup> At table, bei Tische. <sup>12</sup> Dollar, Thaler. <sup>13</sup> Pencil, Bleistift. <sup>14</sup> Customary, Sitte (literally, custom). <sup>15</sup> To return, zurückkehren. <sup>16</sup> To cut, zerschneiden. <sup>17</sup> A pair of scissors, eine Schere. <sup>18</sup> To receive, aufnehmen. <sup>19</sup> Kindness, Freundlichkeit. <sup>20</sup> Use the accusative. <sup>21</sup> To emigrate, auswandern. <sup>22</sup> Australia, Australien. <sup>23</sup> Breakfast, Frühstück. <sup>24</sup> Lesson, Section.



your description<sup>25</sup> he must (say, must he) be a foreigner.<sup>26</sup> He comes from Leipzig. We have often spoken of you. By whom are the dances<sup>27</sup> composed<sup>28</sup> which you are playing? Come to me. You will find me at home. He studies at Bonn. Did (say, are) you come on foot or on horseback? We shall travel by land. I must go to bed. My brother has (say, is) gone to school.

<sup>25</sup> Description, Beschreibung. <sup>26</sup> Foreigner, Ausländer. <sup>27</sup> Dance, Tanz.

<sup>28</sup> To compose (music) componiren.

§ 247. Five genuine prepositions govern the accusative, namely—

durch, through.

für, for (in the place of, for the benefit of a person).

gegen, towards, against (denoting an amicable as well as hostile relation); compared with.

miter, against (denoting a hostile relation only).

um, round, about; for (in exchange for).

Note.

Gen is used for gegen in poetry, and commonly in the phrase gen Himmel, towards heaven. The orthographical difference between the preposition miter, against, and the adverb wieder, again, was introduced only in modern times; originally both are the same word.

EXAMPLES: durch—

Wir ritten durch den Wald,	we rode <i>through</i> the forest.
Durch ihn sind alle Dinge,	<i>through</i> him are all things.

für—

Ich will für dich bezahlen,	I will pay <i>for</i> thee.
Dieses Buch ist für die Jugend geschrieben,	this book is written <i>for</i> the young.
Ich halte ihn für einen ehr- lichen Mann,	I take him <i>for</i> an honest man.
Tag für Tag,	day <i>by</i> day.

gegen—

Das Haus liegt gegen Mor- gen,	the house lies <i>towards</i> (that is, faces) the east.
Ich werde Sie gegen Abend besuchen,	I shall visit you <i>towards</i> even- ing.

Es geschah aus Achtung gegen ihn, it was done out of respect to him.  
 Sie haben sich gegen mich verbunden, they have conspired against me.  
 Er ist gegen dich ein Riese, he is, compared with thee, a giant.

wider—

Er schwimmt wider den Strom, he swims against the stream.  
 Ich erbrach den Brief wider Willen, I opened the letter against my will.

um—

Wir wollen um die Stadt gehen, we will go round the town.  
 Es geschah um Ostern, it happened about Easter.  
 Das Theater wird um sieben Uhr geöffnet, the theatre is opened at seven o'clock.  
 Auge um Auge, Zahn um Zahn, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.  
 Einen Tag um den andern, every other day.  
 Ein Bettler bittet um ein Almosen, a beggar asks for an alms.

#### EXERCISE XLVII.

The sun breaks through the clouds. A footpath<sup>1</sup> leads<sup>2</sup> through the meadow.<sup>3</sup> Allow<sup>4</sup> [to] me the pleasure<sup>5</sup> to pay<sup>6</sup> for you. For which firm<sup>7</sup> does Mr N. travel? What have you done for your fellow-creatures?<sup>8</sup> She cares<sup>9</sup> only for her own<sup>10</sup> interest.<sup>11</sup> She was [being] taken<sup>12</sup> for her sister. The clouds move<sup>13</sup> towards the west.<sup>14</sup> We shall expect you towards the end of this week. The enemy advanced<sup>15</sup> towards the bridge.<sup>16</sup> He is just<sup>17</sup> towards friends and enemies. What art thou in comparison with him? We

<sup>1</sup> Footpath, Fußpfad. <sup>2</sup> To lead, führen. <sup>3</sup> Meadow, Wiese. <sup>4</sup> To allow, erlauben. <sup>5</sup> Pleasure, Vergnügen, n. <sup>6</sup> Use the supine, and arrange—'for you to pay.' <sup>7</sup> Firm, Firma, f. <sup>8</sup> Fellow-creature, Mitmenschen. <sup>9</sup> To care, sorgen. <sup>10</sup> Own, eigen. <sup>11</sup> Interest, Interesse, n. <sup>12</sup> To take, halten. <sup>13</sup> To move, ziehen. <sup>14</sup> West, Westen or Abend. <sup>15</sup> To advance, vorrücken. <sup>16</sup> Bridge, Brücke. <sup>17</sup> Just, gerecht.

were sailing<sup>18</sup> against the wind. He offended<sup>19</sup> against the rules<sup>20</sup> of [the] good society. We drove<sup>21</sup> round the lake.<sup>22</sup> They seated<sup>23</sup> themselves round the fire. It happened about Christmas.<sup>24</sup> The ball<sup>25</sup> begins at nine o'clock. They play for money. We must ask for delay.<sup>26</sup> May<sup>27</sup> I crave (say, ask for) your name? My German teacher<sup>28</sup> comes every other day.

<sup>18</sup> To sail, segeln. <sup>19</sup> To offend, verstoßen. <sup>20</sup> Rule, Regel. <sup>21</sup> To drive, fahren. <sup>22</sup> Lake, See. <sup>23</sup> To seat one's self, sich setzen. <sup>24</sup> Christmas, Weihnachten. <sup>25</sup> Ball, Ball. <sup>26</sup> Delay, Aufschub. <sup>27</sup> May, darf. <sup>28</sup> Teacher, Lehrer.

§ 248. The following seven genuine prepositions sometimes govern the dative, and sometimes the accusative: the former, when they denote rest, or being in a place; and the latter, when they denote motion:—

an, on, at.  
 auf, upon (on the surface).  
 hinter, behind.  
 in, in, into.  
 über, over, above, beyond; about, concerning.  
 unter, under, below, beneath; among.  
 vor, before, ago.

#### EXAMPLES: an—

Das Bild hängt an der Wand,	the picture hangs <i>on</i> the wall.
Ich hänge das Bild an die Wand,	I hang the picture up <i>on</i> the wall.
Er ist am Gerichte, am Theater, an der Schule angestellt,	he holds an appointment <i>in</i> the courts of law, <i>at</i> the theatre, <i>at</i> the school.
Am ersten Januar,	<i>on</i> the first of January.
Die Reihe ist an mir,	it is my turn.
Es liegt an dir,	it is thy fault.
Ich werde an ihn schreiben,	I shall write <i>to</i> him.
Hast du an mich gedacht?	hast thou thought <i>of</i> me?

#### auf—

Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische,	the book lies <i>upon</i> the table.
Ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch.	I put the book <i>upon</i> the table.

Wir wohnen auf dem Lande,	we live <i>in</i> the country.
Wir gehen auf das Land,	we go <i>to</i> the country.
Ich bin auf dem Markte, auf der Messe, auf der hohen Schule, auf der Börse, auf dem Balle gewesen,	I have been <i>at</i> the market, <i>at</i> the fair, <i>at</i> the high school, <i>at</i> the exchange, <i>at</i> the ball.
Er geht auf die Börse, auf die Jagd, auf die Hochzeit, auf den Ball,	he goes <i>to</i> the exchange, the chase, the marriage, the ball.
Er geht auf die Schule, auf die Universität,	he attends school, the uni- versity.
Er kam auf die Minute,	he came <i>to</i> the minute.
Er weiß es auf ein Haar,	he knows it <i>to</i> a hair.
Auf etwas hoffen. warten, rechnen,	to hope for, wait for, reckon upon something.

## hinter—

Der Garten liegt hinter dem Hause,	the garden lies <i>behind</i> the house.
Ich gehe hinter das Haus,	I go <i>behind</i> the house.

## in—

Ich bin in dem Hause gewesen,	I have been <i>in</i> the house.
Ich ging in das Haus,	I went <i>into</i> the house.
Er befindet sich in großer Ge- fahr,	he is <i>in</i> great danger.
Er stürzt sich kühn in die größ- ten Gefahren,	he plunges boldly <i>into</i> the greatest dangers.

## über—

Die Wolke schwebt über dem Berge,	the cloud hovers <i>over</i> the hill.
Die Wolke zieht über den Berg,	the cloud moves <i>over</i> the hill.
Ueber zwanzig,	<i>above</i> twenty.
Es geht über alle Erwar- tungen,	it exceeds all expectations.
Wir werden über Ostende nach Brüssel reisen,	we shall go <i>by</i> Ostend to Brussels.
Ich habe mit ihm über unsere Reise gesprochen,	I have spoken with him <i>about</i> our journey.

Ueber etwas lachen, weinen, to laugh, weep *at* something.  
 Sich über etwas freuen, wundern, to rejoice, wonder *at* something.

unter—

Der Hund liegt unter dem Tische, the dog lies *under* the table.  
 Der Hund kriecht unter den Tisch, the dog creeps *under* the table.  
 Ein König ist unter uns, a king is *among* us.  
 Ein Wolf unter den Schafen, a wolf *among* the sheep.

vor—

Ich stand vor der Thür, I stood *before* the door.  
 Stelle dich vor die Thür, place yourself *before* the door.  
 Vor zwei Uhr, *before* two o'clock.  
 Vor drei Jahren, three years *ago*.  
 Ein Mantel schützt vor dem Regen, a cloak protects *from* the rain.  
 Der Mann schäumte vor Wuth, the man foamed *with* rage.  
 Ich werde vor Freude springen, I shall spring *for* joy.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

The portraits<sup>1</sup> of the whole family hang on the walls.<sup>2</sup> Push<sup>3</sup> the table to (say, on) the wall. Dresden lies on the Elbe, Vienna on the Danube,<sup>4</sup> and Berlin on the Spree. He is waiting for an appointment<sup>5</sup> in the courts of law. I wrote on the twenty-first of February.<sup>6</sup> The accident<sup>7</sup> occurred<sup>8</sup> on a Sunday.<sup>9</sup> I shall write to-day to my agent<sup>10</sup> in Liverpool. To whom is the letter addressed?<sup>11</sup> It is your turn. The knives and forks lie upon the table. Put<sup>12</sup> the plates<sup>13</sup> upon the table. I sit upon a chair.<sup>14</sup> Sit down<sup>15</sup> upon that chair. The family lives in the country. We shall soon go

<sup>1</sup> Portrait, Porträt. (See § 153.) <sup>2</sup> Wall, Wand. <sup>3</sup> To push, schieben.  
<sup>4</sup> Danube, Donau. <sup>5</sup> Appointment, Anstellung. <sup>6</sup> February, Februar.  
<sup>7</sup> Accident, Unfall. <sup>8</sup> To occur, sich ereignen. <sup>9</sup> Sunday, Sonntag.  
<sup>10</sup> Agent, Agent. <sup>11</sup> To address, adressiren. <sup>12</sup> To put, setzen. <sup>13</sup> Plate, Teller. <sup>14</sup> Chair, Stuhl. <sup>15</sup> To sit down, sich setzen.

to the country. Have you been at the ball? I could not go to the ball. You will find the letters upon my writing-table.<sup>16</sup> Mr M. has been at the Leipzig fair.<sup>17</sup> My brother Francis<sup>18</sup> attends the university. Has he been at a university? You must come at the stroke of the bell.<sup>19</sup> I count<sup>20</sup> upon your assistance.<sup>21</sup> We shall wait for you. He stood behind me. Place<sup>22</sup> yourself behind me. Shut<sup>23</sup> the door behind you (say, yourself). Let us go into the garden. We shall go to (say, into) the opera.<sup>24</sup> I shall stay in the house. We have been in the palace,<sup>25</sup> in the royal museum,<sup>26</sup> in the picture-gallery,<sup>27</sup> and in the botanical<sup>28</sup> garden. The man is (say, finds<sup>29</sup> himself) in great distress.<sup>30</sup> How has (say, is) he come into this pitiable<sup>31</sup> condition?<sup>32</sup> The picture hangs over the mantle-piece.<sup>33</sup> The bird flew over the house. He spends<sup>34</sup> annually<sup>35</sup> above a thousand pounds.<sup>36</sup> I am delighted<sup>37</sup> at the news. What do you laugh at (say, Whereat<sup>38</sup> do you laugh)? We spoke about various<sup>39</sup> subjects.<sup>40</sup> We shall go (say, travel) by Dresden to Prague.<sup>41</sup> The pocket-handkerchief lies under the table. It has (say, is) fallen under the table. We stood under a tree. Let us step<sup>42</sup> under a tree. The goods<sup>43</sup> have been sold under their value.<sup>44</sup> I found him among his friends. I stood long<sup>45</sup> before the picture. He stepped before the throne.<sup>46</sup> The bridge was [being] built four years ago. I saw him three weeks ago. He trembled<sup>47</sup> with cold.<sup>48</sup> I could not eat for disgust.<sup>49</sup>

<sup>16</sup> Writing-table, Schreibtisch. <sup>17</sup> See § 176. <sup>18</sup> Francis, Franz. <sup>19</sup> Stroke of the bell, Glockenschlag. <sup>20</sup> To count, zählen. <sup>21</sup> Assistance, Beistand. <sup>22</sup> To place, stellen. <sup>23</sup> To shut, zumachen. <sup>24</sup> Opera, Oper, f. <sup>25</sup> Palace, Palast, m. <sup>26</sup> The royal museum, das königliche Museum. <sup>27</sup> Picture-gallery, Gemäldegallerie. <sup>28</sup> Botanical, botanisch. <sup>29</sup> To find one's self, sich befinden. <sup>30</sup> Distress, Noth. <sup>31</sup> Pitiable, elend. <sup>32</sup> Condition, Lage. <sup>33</sup> Mantle-piece, Kaminfims. <sup>34</sup> To spend, ausgeben. <sup>35</sup> Annually, jährlich. <sup>36</sup> Use the singular. <sup>37</sup> Delighted, sehr erfreut. <sup>38</sup> See § 205. <sup>39</sup> Various, verschieden. <sup>40</sup> Subject, Gegenstand. <sup>41</sup> Prague, Prag. <sup>42</sup> To step, treten. <sup>43</sup> Goods, Güter. <sup>44</sup> Value, Werth. <sup>45</sup> Long, lange. <sup>46</sup> Throne, Thron. <sup>47</sup> To tremble, zittern. <sup>48</sup> Cold, Kälte. <sup>49</sup> Disgust, Ekel.

## II. SPURIOUS PREPOSITIONS.

§ 249. The following govern the genitive :—

statt, or anstatt, instead of.

außerhalb, without, on the outside of.

innerhalb, within.

oberhalb, above.

unterhalb, below.

diesseit or diesseits, on this side of.

jenseit or jenseits, on the other side of.

halben or halber, on account of (follows the case).

wegen, on account of (preceding or following the case).

um . . . willen, for the sake of (the case being inserted between um and willen).

kraft, by virtue of.

vermöge, by virtue of.

laut, conformably to.

vermittelft, by means of.

ungeachtet, notwithstanding (preceding or following the case).

troß, in spite of.

unweit or unfern, not far from.

während, during.

längs, along.

zufolge, according to (either precedes or follows the noun ; in the latter case it governs the dative).

## Notes.

1. Troß and längs are used also with the dative. Halben, wegen, and um . . . willen, are contracted with the genitive of personal pronouns ; as—meinethalben, on my account ; deinetwegen, on thy account ; um seinetwillen, for his sake ; unserthalben, on our account, &c. Halber is commonly used instead of halben after names of materials and abstract substantives without the article ; as—Geldes halber, for the sake of money ; Ehren halber, for the sake of honour ; Alters halber, on account of old age.

2. The following adverbs also occur with the genitive, and therefore partake of the nature of prepositions, although they are not generally recognised as such ; namely—hinsichts, hinsichtlich, rücksichtlich, with regard to ; angeichts, in face of, in the presence of ; behufs, in behalf of ; inmitten, in the midst of ; unbeschadet, without prejudice.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

I shall come instead of my brother. The mill<sup>1</sup> lies outside the village. The water rose<sup>2</sup> within an hour upwards of<sup>3</sup> two feet.<sup>4</sup> One part<sup>5</sup> of the town lies on this side, the other on the other side of the river. He travels on account of his health.<sup>6</sup> On account of his advanced<sup>7</sup> age he has (say, has he) resigned<sup>8</sup> his office.<sup>9</sup> One esteems<sup>10</sup> him on account of his merits.<sup>11</sup> He does everything for the sake of [the] gain.<sup>12</sup> Heavy<sup>13</sup> loads<sup>14</sup> can be moved forward<sup>15</sup> by means of locomotives.<sup>16</sup> We reached<sup>17</sup> the shore by means of a boat. Notwithstanding the strictest<sup>18</sup> investigation<sup>19</sup> the truth has (say, has the truth) not yet been brought out.<sup>20</sup> In spite of the difficulties<sup>21</sup> with which we are threatened,<sup>22</sup> we shall (say, shall we) make the attempt.<sup>23</sup> The gentleman after whom you inquire<sup>24</sup> resides during the summer months<sup>25</sup> at his country-house<sup>26</sup> not far from the town. A row<sup>27</sup> of trees shades<sup>28</sup> the way along the brook.<sup>29</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Mill, Mühle. <sup>2</sup> To rise, steigen. <sup>3</sup> Upwards of, über. <sup>4</sup> Use the singular. <sup>5</sup> Part, Theil. <sup>6</sup> Health, Gesundheit. <sup>7</sup> Advanced, vorgerückt. <sup>8</sup> To resign, niederlegen. <sup>9</sup> Office, Amt. <sup>10</sup> To esteem, schätzen. <sup>11</sup> Merit, Verdienst, n. <sup>12</sup> Gain, Gewinn. <sup>13</sup> Heavy, schwer. <sup>14</sup> Load, Last. <sup>15</sup> To move forward, fortbewegen. <sup>16</sup> Locomotive, Lokomotive. <sup>17</sup> To reach, erreichen. <sup>18</sup> Strict, streng. <sup>19</sup> Investigation, Untersuchung. <sup>20</sup> To bring out, herausbringen. <sup>21</sup> Difficulty, Schwierigkeit. <sup>22</sup> To threaten, bedrohen. <sup>23</sup> Attempt, Versuch, m. <sup>24</sup> To inquire, sich erkundigen. <sup>25</sup> Summer month, Sommermonat. <sup>26</sup> Country-house, Landhaus. <sup>27</sup> A row of trees, eine Reihe Bäume. <sup>28</sup> To shade, beschatten. <sup>29</sup> Brook, Bach.

§ 250. The following spurious prepositions govern the dative:—

binnen, within (in regard to time only).  
 gegenüber, opposite (is put after the case).  
 gemäß, according to, agreeably to (either precedes or follows the case).  
 nächst, next to.  
 nebst, along with.  
 sammt, together with.  
 seit, since.  
 zuwider, contrary to (is put after the case).



## Note.

Regarding the difference between *nebst* and *sammt*, it must be observed that *nebst*, being derived from *neben*, by the side of, beside, indicates an accidental joining of things in the mind, and may therefore be compared with the conjunction *und*; whilst *sammt*, being of the same origin as *sammeln*, to collect, denotes the joining of objects which, even in themselves, are conceived as allied or belonging to one another.

§ 251. The following three govern the accusative:—

*bis*, till, as far as (is used both with regard to place and time).

*entlang*, along (generally follows the noun).

*ohne*, without (is the opposite of *mit*).

## Note.

*Bis* is frequently joined to another preposition; as—*bis zu Thränen gerührt*, moved even to tears; *bis auf diesen Tag*, up to this day; *bis in den Tod*, or *bis zum Tode*, even to death; *bis zum Ende des Kapitels*, down to the end of the chapter; *bis an die Stadtthore*, as far as the gates of the town; *Alle bis auf einen*, all except one.—*Entlang*, when preceding the noun, governs the genitive.—*Senfter*, a synonym of *ohne*, has now become obsolete. Phrases like *senfter Zweifel*, without doubt; *senfter Zahl*, without number; *senfter Gleichen*, without equal; *senfter Klang*, without sound; *senfter Wanken*, without wavering, occur only in poetry.

§ 252. Two derivative prepositions govern sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative, according as they denote rest or motion; namely—

*neben*, beside.

*zwischen*, between, betwixt (is generally used in regard to two objects only).

For example:—*Der König saß neben der Königin*, the king sat beside the queen. *Er setzte sich neben die Königin*, he took his seat beside the queen. *Zwischen dir und mir ist kein Geheimniß*, between thee and me there is no secret. *Er stellte sich zwischen uns beide*, he placed himself between us two.

## Note.

*Zwischen* is sometimes, though improperly, used in regard to more than two objects; e. g.—*Kein Fremder soll mir zwischen meinen Weizen Unkraut streun*, *Rückert*, I will permit no stranger to sow tares *among* my wheat. *Unsre Nachtigallen verkünden zwischen grünen Zweigen das Lob der verjüngten Natur*, *Kr.*, our nightingales proclaim *amidst* green boughs the praises of renewed nature.

## EXERCISE L.

The bill<sup>1</sup> must be paid within thirty days. Our friend lives opposite the theatre.<sup>2</sup> According to her promise<sup>3</sup> she must (say, must she) arrive this evening.<sup>4</sup> Agreeably to your desire<sup>5</sup> I answer (say, answer I) without delay.<sup>6</sup> He has sold the house along with the garden. The ship has (say, is) gone down<sup>7</sup> together with the crew.<sup>8</sup> Since my arrival<sup>9</sup> I have (say, have I) felt<sup>10</sup> very well. That is contrary to my principles.<sup>11</sup> Can you not stay till next Friday?<sup>12</sup> I will accompany<sup>13</sup> you as far as Berlin. The play<sup>14</sup> lasted from eight till eleven o'clock. We sailed along the coast.<sup>15</sup> They travel without a real<sup>16</sup> object.<sup>17</sup> Sit down<sup>18</sup> beside me. The prince sat beside the princess. The garden lies between two houses. Sit down between him and me.

<sup>1</sup> Bill, Wechsel. <sup>2</sup> Theatre, Schauspielhaus. <sup>3</sup> Promise, Versprechen, n.  
<sup>4</sup> This evening, heute Abend. <sup>5</sup> Desire, Wunsch. <sup>6</sup> Without delay, unverzüglich. <sup>7</sup> To go down, untergehen. <sup>8</sup> Crew, Mannschaft. <sup>9</sup> Arrival, Ankunft, f. <sup>10</sup> To feel, sich befinden. <sup>11</sup> Principle, Grundsatz. <sup>12</sup> Friday, Freitag. <sup>13</sup> To accompany, begleiten. <sup>14</sup> Play, Schauspiel. <sup>15</sup> Coast, Küste.  
<sup>16</sup> Real, eigentlich. <sup>17</sup> Object, Zweck. <sup>18</sup> To sit down, sich setzen.

§ 253. Some prepositions can be joined to adverbs of place and time, as in English; e. g.—*Er warf es von oben herunter*, he threw it down from above. *Ich sah ihn von fern*, I saw him from afar. *Es ist weit von hier*, it is far from here. *Wir sind auf heute versagt*, we are engaged for to-day. *Für jetzt mag dies genug sein*, let this be enough for the present. *Ich habe ihn seit gestern erwartet*, I have expected him since yesterday.

§ 254. Sometimes a preposition is accompanied by an adverb, or another preposition used in the sense of an adverb, to express the direction or course of a motion, or the commencement or extent of a space of time. For example:—*Ein Schiff! Es kommt von Fluelen her*, *Sch.*, a ship! it comes from Fluelen. *Von Rom aus*, proceeding from Rome. *Wir gehen nach dem Walde zu*, we go towards, or in the direction of the wood. *Er kam auf mich zu*, he came up to me. *Nach dem Meere hin*, towards the sea. *Er sprang zum Fenster hinaus*, he jumped out of the window. *Er kommt*

zur Thür herein, he comes in by the door. Der Weg führt am Abgrund hin, the road leads along the brink of a precipice. Schiller war vom frühesten Alter an ein zartes Kind, Schiller was up from his earliest years a delicate child. Von Kindheit an, up from childhood. Von Jugend auf, up from the age of youth. Von nun an, henceforward.

---

## XXII.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 255. Conjunctions are words which connect clauses or sentences, and shew the relation in which they stand to one another. They are indeclinable. As to form, conjunctions are either primitive words, as—und, denn, als, doch, wenn, weil, daß, &c.; or derivatives, as—nämlich, übrigens, ferner, während, bevor, &c.; or compounds, as—jedoch, dennoch, nachdem, indem, seitdem, obgleich, damit, daher, deshalb, somit, befeunungecht, &c.

§ 256. When two or more clauses are put in connection with one another, one is, in regard both to matter and form, either dependent on or independent of the other. In the former case, the one clause is subordinate to the other; in the latter case, they are co-ordinate. Hence those conjunctions which introduce a dependent clause are termed *subordinative conjunctions*, whilst those which place clauses side by side as independent of one another, are termed *co-ordinative conjunctions*.

#### I. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 257. A dependent clause stands to its principal clause in the relation either of a substantive, or of an adjective, or of an adverb. A dependent clause, therefore, is either a dependent substantive clause, or a dependent adjective clause, or a dependent adverbial clause.

1. A dependent substantive clause is introduced by the conjunction daß, that, or ob, if, whether.

2. A dependent adjective clause is not introduced by any conjunction, but by a relative pronoun.

3. A dependent adverbial clause is introduced by various conjunctions, according as it expresses a relation of place, time, manner, cause, purpose, condition, or concession.

a. The relation of place is expressed by the pronominal adverbs *wo*, where; *woher*, whence; *wohin*, whither.

b. Time is expressed by the conjunctions *als*, *da*, when, as; *wenn*, when, whenever; *während*, *indess*, *indessen*, *indem*, whilst; *so lange*, as long as; *nachdem*, after; *ehe*, before; *seit*, *seitdem*, since; *bis*, till; *so bald* (*als*), *so wie*, as soon as.

Note.

*Wann* is commonly used only in the sense of a pronominal adverb, meaning 'at, what time,' but occurs also as a conjunction in the place of *wenn*. *Weil*, in the signification of 'while,' is gradually going out of use.

c. Manner is expressed by the conjunctions *wie*, as (comparing); *als ob*, *als wenn*, as if; (*so*) *daß*, (so) that.

d. Cause is expressed by the conjunctions *weil*, because; *da*, as, since; *nun*, now.

e. Purpose is expressed by the conjunctions *daß*, that; *damit*, in order that.

f. Condition is expressed by the conjunctions *wenn*, if; *falls*, *wo*, *wofern*, in case; *wenn anders*, provided; *wenn nicht*, *wo nicht*, if not. The use of *so* for 'if' is obsolete.

g. Concession is expressed by the conjunctions *obgleich*, *obschon*, *obwohl*, *ob auch*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn schon*, *wenn auch*, *vielleicht*, although, even though; *wie ... auch*, *so ... auch*, however ...; *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding.

## II. CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 258. The co-ordinative conjunctions may be divided into four classes:—

a. *Copulative Conjunctions* serve to put clauses in the relation of equality to one another, by placing one thought side by side with another. Of this description are—*und*, and; *auch*, also; *zudem*, *außerdem*, besides; *überdies*, moreover; *sowohl ... als* as well as, both ... and; *weber ... noch*,

neither . . . nor ; nicht nur, or nicht allein, or nicht bloß . . . sondern auch, not only . . . but also ; theils . . . theils, partly . . . partly ; bald . . . bald, now . . . then, sometimes . . . sometimes. To these may be added the adverbs erstens or erstlich, firstly ; zweitens, secondly, &c. ; dann, then ; ferner, farther ; endlich, finally, and others ; and also the explanatory particles nämlich, namely ; wie, als, as.

b. *Adversative Conjunctions* denote an opposition, in which two thoughts stand to each other in such a manner that the one thought either entirely denies, or merely limits the other. Negation is expressed by nicht . . . sondern, not . . . but ; nicht . . . vielmehr, not . . . but rather ; entweder . . . oder, either . . . or ; sonst, else, otherwise (a contraction for the old *so ne ist*, if it is not). Limitation is expressed by aber, allein, but, however ; doch, jedoch, dennoch, yet, still ; indessen, however ; gleichwohl, dessemungeachtet, notwithstanding ; nichtsdestoweniger, nevertheless ; hingegen, dagegen, on the contrary.

c. *Concessive Conjunctions* introduce a fact which is limited in a correlative clause by the adversative conjunction doch or aber. Of this kind are—zwar, it is true (in old High-German *zi ware*, in truth) ; freilich, wohl, indeed.

d. *Causative Conjunctions* indicate a cause or reason. Denn, for, introduces the reason of a thought contained in a preceding sentence. The explanatory particle nämlich often has the same force as denn. The following conjunctions, on the other hand, are employed to draw an inference from a preceding statement :—daher, therefore ; deswegen, deshalb, darum, on that account, for that reason ; also, folglich, consequently ; mithin, demnach, somit, accordingly.

§ 259. Most co-ordinative conjunctions have the nature of adverbs, and therefore usually affect the structure of a sentence in the same manner as adverbs. But the 'pure' conjunctions und, aber, allein, sondern, oder, denn, exercise no influence whatever upon the arrangement of a sentence.

## EXERCISE LI.\*

Do<sup>1</sup> *what is* right, and dread<sup>2</sup> no one. He carries on<sup>3</sup> a lucrative<sup>4</sup> business,<sup>5</sup> moreover he has (say, has he) a rich wife.<sup>6</sup> He is both active<sup>7</sup> and clever. I have not only seen him, but also spoken with him. Some people can neither read nor write. Neither gold nor jewels<sup>8</sup> can purchase<sup>9</sup> immortality.<sup>10</sup> The journey is partly expensive,<sup>11</sup> partly attended<sup>12</sup> with dangers. Our friend is a German, namely, a Hanoverian.<sup>13</sup> He speaks English, but not fluently.<sup>14</sup> My brother looks<sup>15</sup> younger than I, and yet I am (say, am I) three years younger than he. The horse is already old, and yet it has (say, has it) been sold at a good price.<sup>16</sup> He is very rich; nevertheless he spends<sup>17</sup> (say, spends he) very little. These soldiers<sup>18</sup> have not served<sup>19</sup> in the infantry,<sup>20</sup> but in the cavalry.<sup>21</sup> I never drink (say, drink never) wine, but water. The medicine<sup>22</sup> will be of no use<sup>23</sup> to me; I shall take<sup>24</sup> it however. He is either an impostor<sup>25</sup> or himself imposed upon.<sup>26</sup> She must be ill, otherwise she would (say, would she) not have (say, be) stayed away.<sup>27</sup> It is true she is (say, she is, it is true) young, but she has had much experience.<sup>28</sup> He is indeed a poor man, but he is honest.<sup>29</sup> It is cold, for the windows are frozen. This wood does not burn, for it is damp.<sup>30</sup> Miss B. intends<sup>31</sup> to go to Germany, therefore she learns (say, learns she) German. My physician has advised [to] me to keep<sup>32</sup> the room; on that account I must (say, must I) defer<sup>33</sup> my visit<sup>34</sup> till next

<sup>1</sup> Use the second person singular. <sup>2</sup> To dread, scheuen. <sup>3</sup> To carry on, treiben. <sup>4</sup> Lucrative, einträglich. <sup>5</sup> Business, Geschäft. <sup>6</sup> Wife, Frau. <sup>7</sup> Active, thätig. <sup>8</sup> Jewels, Juwelen. <sup>9</sup> To purchase, erkaufen. <sup>10</sup> Immortality, Unsterblichkeit. <sup>11</sup> Expensive, kostspielig. <sup>12</sup> Attended, verbunden. <sup>13</sup> Hanoverian, Hannoveraner. <sup>14</sup> Fluently, geläufig. <sup>15</sup> To look, aussehen. <sup>16</sup> At a good price, theuer. <sup>17</sup> To spend, ausgeben. <sup>18</sup> Soldiers, Soldaten. <sup>19</sup> To serve, dienen. <sup>20</sup> Infantry, Infanterie. <sup>21</sup> Cavalry, Cavalerie. <sup>22</sup> Medicine, Arznei. <sup>23</sup> Be of no use, nichts nützen. <sup>24</sup> To take, einnehmen. <sup>25</sup> Impostor, Betrüger. <sup>26</sup> To impose upon, betrügen. <sup>27</sup> To stay away, ausbleiben. <sup>28</sup> Experience, Erfahrung. <sup>29</sup> Honest, ehrlich. <sup>30</sup> Damp, feucht. <sup>31</sup> To intend, beabsichtigen, with the supine. <sup>32</sup> To keep the room, das Zimmer zu hüten. <sup>33</sup> To defer, verschieben. <sup>34</sup> Visit, Besuch.

\* This exercise refers to co-ordinative conjunctions only; sentences illustrating the use of subordinative conjunctions are given in the Syntax.

week. I think, consequently I am (say, am I). [The] man has free-will, consequently he can (say, can he) do the good and avoid the evil.<sup>35</sup> The physician visits him daily, accordingly he must (say, must he) be very ill.

<sup>35</sup> The evil, das Böse.

### XXIII.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

§ 260. Interjections are words or sounds expressing momentary feelings of joy, pain, wonder, abhorrence, &c. They are called interjections, because they are *thrown in* between the parts of a sentence, without being essential to it, and without exercising the least influence upon its construction. Joy, for instance, is expressed by ah! ha! heifa! juchhe! hurra!—pain or sorrow by ach! o!—wonder by ei! ah! ha! oh!—abhorrence by pfui! fi!—doubt by hni! hem! &c. The following are used for calling out to a person:—he! heba! ho!la! pft!—for bidding silence: sch! ft! pft!—for agreeing to a proposal: topp! To these may be added the imitations of various sounds; as—baug! knack! puff! husch! plump! &c.

§ 261. From the genuine interjections must be distinguished such expressions as—weh! o weh! wo is me!—leider! alas!—heil! hail!—gottlob! God be praised!—wohlan! well!—wohlauf! cheer up!—getroßt! be of good cheer! &c. These partake of the nature of interjections, being thrown in between the parts of a sentence, but they originally belong to other parts of speech, or, in the case of some, must be regarded as elliptical sentences.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

---

### XXIV.

#### DERIVATION.

##### I. ROOTS.

§ 262. The first germs from which words are sprung are called *roots*. All roots are monosyllabic. A root by itself has no distinct signification, but contains an idea which, in being developed, becomes the main idea of a family of kindred words. The first stage in this process of development is the idea of action or condition; hence a root appears first in the form of a verb. All verbs, therefore, which come from a root by direct derivation, are called *radical verbs*. The number of such verbs is very great; for not only do all verbs of the strong (or ancient) conjugation belong to this class, but a great many verbs which have now assumed the weak (or modern) conjugation, are likewise radical verbs.

##### Note.

Many radical verbs are no longer used in new High-German, but are to be found in the older language, or in particular dialects still spoken in many provinces of Germany, or in other languages belonging to the Germanic family. It lies in the nature of the origin of radical verbs that their signification is in most instances less definite than that of derivative verbs, a variety of meanings being frequently attached to the same word. The verb *ſcheren*, for example, which now means 'to shear,' had originally a more general signification, namely, 'to cut, divide, separate;' hence *Abſugſchar*, ploughshare; *beſcherten*, to distribute presents; and the English words 'short' and 'share.'

§ 263. A root usually passes through two other stages of development. The general idea conveyed by a root, after



having assumed a certain, though still general, meaning in the radical verb, becomes more individualised in the second stage—that of *primary derivatives* or *stems* (Stämme); and still more so in the third stage—that of *secondary derivatives* or *branches* (Sproßformen).

The following general laws are commonly adhered to in the process of derivation :—1. A primary derivative is formed out of the root of a radical verb ; a secondary derivative is usually formed from a primary derivative, sometimes from a root, and sometimes from another secondary derivative. The modes of this process will be more fully explained hereafter. 2. From one word is usually derived a word of a different kind—that is, from a verb there is formed a substantive or an adjective, from a substantive a verb or an adjective, from an adjective a verb or a substantive ; and from the name of a thing the name of a person, or, *vice versa*, from the name of a person the name of a thing. For example, the substantives Flug and Flucht, flight, as well as the adjective flüch, fledged, spring from the radical verb fliegen, to fly ; the derivative verb flüchten, to take to flight, and the adjective flüchtig, fugitive, come from the substantive Flucht, flight. The verb stärken, to strengthen, and the substantive Stärke, strength, come from the adjective stark, strong. The name of a person, as Bürger, citizen, is derived from the name of a thing, namely, Burg, castle ; and, *vice versa*, Bürgerſchaft, community, from Bürger, citizen.

## II. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES.

§ 264. A primary derivative is formed out of the root of a radical verb, in the first place, simply by a change of the radical vowel. In not a few instances, however, the vowel remains unchanged, especially if it be a or au. Examples :—1. Substantives—Trank and Trunk, a drink, from trinken, to drink ; Band, ribbon, and Bund, band, from binden, to bind ; Schluß, close, and Schloß, lock, from schließen, to close ; Ritt, a ride, from reiten, to ride ; Schlag, stroke, from schlagen, to strike ; Schlaf, sleep, from schlafen, to sleep ; Laut, sound, from lauten, to sound. 2. Adjectives—fröh, glad, from (ſich) freuen, to rejoice ; gram, averse, from grimmen, to be in wrath ; treu, faithful, true, from trauen, to trust ; wach, awake, from

wachen, to be awake ; schön, beautiful, from scheinen, to shine ; blank, polished, bright, from blinken, to glitter.

Many substantives and adjectives of this description take one of what are commonly termed the *insignificant terminations*, namely, er, el, en. Examples :—1. Substantives—Fehler, fault, from fehlen, to fail ; Flügel, wing, from fliegen, to fly ; Deckel, cover, from decken, to cover ; Bissen, bit, from beißen, to bite ; Bogen, bow, from biegen, to bend ; Graben, ditch, from graben, to dig. 2. Adjectives—bitter, bitter, from beißen, to bite ; wacker, brave, from wachen, to be awake ; eitel, vain, from the old High-German *itan*, to shine.

Note.

The terminations termed *insignificant*, er, el, en (and in one or two words em) differ in their nature from *derivative* terminations—that is, suffixes added to stems for the purpose of producing secondary derivatives. For instance, the primary derivative Fehler, fault, has the same meaning as the monosyllable Fehl, which is now obsolete ; but the signification of the secondary derivative Schäfer, shepherd, differs from that of the stem Schaf, sheep. The minor value of these terminations becomes very obvious from the circumstance that many words which were formerly monosyllables have now assumed one of the insignificant syllables ; as—Hammer, wether ; Schenkel, thigh ; Bissen, bit ; Garten, garden ; Knochen, bone ;ummer, sorrow ;—formerly Ham, Schank, Biß, Kart, Knoch, Kumm. The termination en, moreover, is thrown off when a derivative suffix is added, as in Bißchen, a little bit ; Gärtchen, a little garden ; knöchig, bony. (See § 269.)

§ 265. Many primary derivatives are formed from radical verbs, not by a change of the vowel only, but at the same time by the addition either of the vowel e (which is a substitute for the old High-German *a* or *i*), or of one of the following lingual sounds :—t, te, b, be, or, after a liquid, ft. If the last consonant of the root is g or h, the adding of the letter t is always attended by the change of the soft mute into the corresponding aspirate, namely, ch in the former case, and f in the latter. It deserves notice, that most substantives of this class are of the feminine gender. Examples :—1. Substantives—Grube, pit, from graben, to dig ; Sprache, language, from sprechen, to speak ; Saat, seed, from säen, to sow ; That, deed, from thun, to do ; Bucht, bay, from biegen, to bend ; Schlacht, battle, from schlagen, to beat ; Schrift, writing, from schreiben, to write ; Gruft, grave, from graben, to dig ; Blüthe (or Blüte), blossom, from blühen, to bloom ;

Jagd, chase, from *jagen*, to hunt ; Kunde, information, from *kennen*, to know ; Bürde, burden, from the old High-German *beran*, to bear ; Brunst, conflagration, from *brennen*, to burn ; Kunst, art, from *können*, to be able, &c. (See also § 132, 1, note 2.) 2. Adjectives—träge, lazy ; weise, wise ; schlecht, bad ; recht, right ; dicht, dense.

§ 266. The augment *ge* is prefixed to many primary derivatives, without affecting their signification. Among the verbs from which they are derived, only few have preserved the augment. Examples:—1. Substantives—Gebot, command ; Gewinn, gain ; Gebrauch, usage ; Genuß, enjoyment ; Geruch, smell ; Gesang, song ; Glück (contracted for *Gelück*), luck ; Gefahr, danger ; Geburt, birth ; Gebärde, mien ; Geschichte, history. 2. Adjectives—gesund, sound ; gewiß, certain ; getreu, faithful ; gerecht, just ; genehm, agreeable.

### III. SECONDARY DERIVATIVES.

§ 267. The formation of secondary derivatives consists in the adding of suffixes to the word from which they are derived. Most secondary derivatives are formed from primary derivatives ; as—Schlosser, locksmith, from *Schloß*, lock ; mächtig, mighty, from *Macht*, might. Some are formed from radical verbs ; as—Schneider, tailor, from *schneiden*, to cut ; eßbar, eatable, from *essen*, to eat ; some from other secondary derivatives ; as—Dankebarkeit, gratitude, from *dankebar*, grateful ; ritterlich, knightly, from *Ritter*, knight.

§ 268. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au* of the stem usually become modified, if the derivative suffix have the vowel *i* or *e*, as in the following :—*ig*, *ich*, *iſch*, *ing*, *in*, *lein*, *chen*, *lich*, *niß*, *en*, *ern*, *el*, *ſel*, *e*. For example :—Gräfin, countess, from *Graf*, count ; närrisch, foolish, from *Narr*, fool ; tödten, to kill, from *tödt*, dead ; Güte, goodness, from *gut*, good ; Häuptling, chieftain, from *Haupt*, head. Many words which formerly had the suffix *e*, have retained the modified vowel, although they have thrown off the suffix ; as—Gespräch, talk ; Gespött, mockery ; Gemüth, mind.

§ 269. A derivative suffix is generally joined immediately to the last consonant of the stem. If the stem ends in *e* or

en, these terminations are thrown out; as in *Weisheit*, wisdom, from *weise*, wise; *gütig*, kind, from *Güte*, kindness; *Tröpfchen*, small drop, from *Tropfen*, drop; *knottig*, knotty, from *Knotten*, knot. But, on the other hand, a suffix is often joined to a stem by means of some euphonic letter or syllable, which comes in between the two, without in any way affecting the meaning of the word; as in *les=er=lich*, legible; *fürcht=er=lich*, fearful; *fenn=t=lich*, recognisable; *wesen=t=lich*, essential; *Glock=n=er*, bell-ringer; *Süß=ig=heit*, sweetness; *rein=ig=en*, to clean; *befried=ig=en*, to satisfy.

#### a. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

§ 270. Derivative verbs are generally formed from substantives and adjectives by merely adding the termination of the infinitive *en*, and in many instances also modifying the vowel of the stem. For example:—*tränken*, to give to drink, from *Trank*, drink; *fällen*, to fell, from *Fall*, fall; *trösten*, to console, from *Trost*, consolation; *satteln*, to saddle, from *Sattel*, saddle; *stärken*, to strengthen, from *stark*, strong; *schwächen*, to weaken, from *schwach*, weak; *töten*, to kill, from *tot*, dead; *leeren*, to empty, from *leer*, empty; *würdigen*, to hold worthy, from *würdig*, worthy; *trocknen*, to dry, from *trocken*, dry. Most verbs of this description have a transitive meaning.

Some transitive verbs, however, are derived directly from intransitive radical verbs by a mere change of the radical vowel; as—*setzen*, to set, from *sitzen*, to sit; *legen*, to lay, from *liegen*, to lie; *senken*, to cause to sink, from *sinken*, to sink; *sprengen*, to burst, from *springen*, to spring; *schwemmen*, to water, make swim (cattle), from *schwimmen*, to swim; *verschwenden*, to squander, from *verschwinden*, to vanish; *hängen*, to hang or suspend, from *hängen*, to hang or be suspended; *fäugen*, to suckle, from *saugen*, to suck; and a few others.

§ 271. Some derivative verbs are formed by means of the suffixes *eln* and *ern*, which give the sense of diminution, repetition, or contempt; *e.g.*—*lächeln*, to smile; *fränkeln*, to be sickly; *frösteln*, to feel chilly; *minckeln*, to moan; *lispeln*, to lisp, whisper; *fäufeln*, to rustle; *frömmeln*, to affect piety; *wigeln*, to affect wit; *näseln*, to snuffle; *tänzeln*, to trip; *fräufeln*, to curl; *tändeln*, to trifle; *flüstern*, to whisper;

zittern, to tremble ; wimmern, to whine ; plätschern, to splash ; schläfern, to feel drowsy.

A few verbs having the suffix *zen* or *sen*, denote repetition of a sound ; as—ächzen, to groan ; schluchzen, to sob ; frächzen, to croak ; summsen, to buzz.

Verbs ending in *iren* are, for the most part, of foreign origin ; a few only are derived from German words.

#### b. DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 272. The following suffixes are employed to form concrete substantives :—

1. The suffix *er*, English *er*, *or*, is used to form appellations of male persons, chiefly from substantive stems, but also from radical verbs. Such substantives generally denote a person performing the action implied in the stem or the verb. For example :—Sänger, singer ; Käufer, buyer ; Räuber, robber ; Schneider, tailor ; Reiter, rider ; Leser, reader.

Appellations of male persons are also derived from names of countries and places by means of the suffix *er* ; as—Engländer, Englishman ; Irländer, Irishman ; Schweizer, Swiss ; Römer, Roman ; Londoner, Hamburger, Wiener, &c., inhabitant of London, Hamburg, Vienna, &c. In Afrikaner, Amerikaner, Spartaner, Mexikaner, Neapolitaner, and in Italiäner, the foreign termination has been adapted to the analogy of German words.

#### Note.

It must be observed, however, that not all names of nations are formed in this manner, for in some the name of the country is derived from the name of the nation ; as, der Deutsche, the German ; der Schotte, the Scotsman ; der Däne, the Dane ; der Russe, the Russian ; der Schwede, the Swede ; der Preusse, the Prussian ; der Sächse, the Saxon, and others.

The suffix *er* occurs also in a few names of things ; as—Bohrer, gimlet ; Zeiger, hand of a clock ; Wecker, alarm, &c. It indicates the male of an animal in Kater, tom-cat ; and Tauber, male pigeon.

2. The suffix *in*, English *ess*, *ine*, changes appellations of male persons and also of some male animals into appellations of females ; e.g.—Gräfin, countess ; Kaiserin, empress ; Königin, queen ; Heldin, heroine ; Wirthin, hostess ; Freundin, female friend ; Löwin, lioness ; Hündin, bitch.

## Note.

The use of the feminine of Mann—namely, Männin for Frau—is quite obsolete, except in a few compound substantives, as Landsmännin, country-woman. In three substantives the foreign suffix *ess* and the German suffix *in* are combined, namely, Prinzessin, princess; Abtissin, abbess; Nonnissin, canoness.

3. By the termination *ling*, English *ling*, some appellations of persons are formed from substantives and adjectives, rarely from verbs; as—Flüchtling, fugitive; Günstling, favourite; Häuptling, chieftain; Jüngling, youth; Frembling, stranger; Liebling, darling; Findling, foundling; Lehrling, apprentice. A few substantives of this kind express contempt; as—Mietling, hireling; Weichling, weakling; Dichterling, poetaster.

4. By the terminations *chen* and *lein*, English *kin*, *et*, or *let* (as in 'lambkin, islet, streamlet') diminutives are formed from other substantives. Diminutives are employed also as terms of endearment. It depends in every instance on the laws of euphony and on usage whether the one or the other of these terminations should be employed. For example:—Blümchen, floweret; Bändchen, little ribbon; Söhnchen, little son; Mütterchen, dear mother; Bächlein, little brook; Büchlein, little book; Knäblein, little boy; Vöglein, little bird; Fräulein, young (unmarried) lady.

5. The following terminations occur only in a few substantives:—

ing in Pfennig or Pfennig, half a farthing; Schilling, shilling; Hering, herring.

ig in König, king; Essig, vinegar; Rettig, radish.

rich in a few names of male persons and animals; as—Wütherich, tyrant; Fähnrich, ensign; Gänserich, gander; Enterich, drake.

ich and icht in a few names of animals and in a few collectives; as—Kranich, crane; Habicht, hawk; Rehrich(t), sweepings; Dickicht, thicket.

§ 273. The following suffixes are employed to form abstract substantives:—

1. Substantives in *ung*, English *ing*, *ion*, are chiefly formed from derivative and compound verbs of a transitive or reflective signification, and a few from simple radical verbs.

They express either simply an action, as—*Stärkung*, strengthening; *Befreiung*, liberation; *Erinnerung*, recollection; *Neigung*, inclination; or, at the same time, the result of an action or an effected state or condition, as—*Erfindung*, invention; *Erfahrung*, experience; *Mischung*, mixture—that is, that which has been invented, experienced, mixed; *Verbindung*, alliance; *Trennung*, separation; *Ordnung*, order—that is, the condition of being allied, separated, in order. To a few substantives *ung* imparts a collective meaning; as—*Waldung*, forest; *Holzung*, woods; *Stallung*, stabling; *Kleidung*, clothing.

2. Substantives in *niß*, English *ness*, are derived from substantives and verbs, very rarely from adjectives. Some express abstract, others concrete notions. For example:—*Beforgniß*, apprehension; *Verhältniß*, relation, proportion; *Finsterniß*, darkness; *Begräbniß*, funeral; *Erlaubniß*, permission; *Gefängniß*, prison; *Verzeichniß*, catalogue; *Bildniß*, portrait.

3. By the suffixes *ſel* and *ſal*, substantives are formed from other substantives, and also from verbs. Some have an abstract, others a concrete meaning. For instance:—*Räthſel*, riddle; *Ueberbleibſel*, remainder; *Labſal*, refreshment; *Schickſal*, fate.

4. Substantives in *ei*, English *y*, are formed from verbs, others from names of persons. The former denote an action, “mostly in a bad sense, as—*Heuchelei*, hypocrisy; *Schmeichelei*, flattery; *Spielerei*, trifling; *Biererei*, affectation; the latter denote the employment, condition, residence, or place of business, or a collective notion of persons; as—*Fischerei*, fishery; *Sklaverei*, slavery; *Färberei*, dyer’s workshop; *Druckerei*, printing-office; *Reiterei*, cavalry.

5. By means of the terminations *e* and *heit*, abstract substantives denoting a quality are formed from primary adjectives, and by means of *ſeit* from derivative adjectives; as—*Länge*, length; *Breite*, breadth; *Wärme*, warmth; *Kälte*, cold. *Freiheit*, freedom; *Schönheit*, beauty; *Seltenheit*, rarity; *Gesundheit*, health. *Heiligkeit*, holiness; *Dankbarkeit*, gratitude; *Ehrlichkeit*, honesty; *Betriebsamkeit*, industry. Some primary adjectives, however, take the termination *ſeit*, the syllable *ig* being inserted for the sake of euphony; as—*Süßigkeit*, sweetness; *Frömmigkeit*, piety; *Müdigkeit*, weariness.

ness. (See § 269.) A few ending in *er* or *el* also take *heit*; as—*Bitterkeit*, bitterness; *Eitelkeit*, vanity.

In the older language, abstract substantives in *heit* were also formed from names of persons. The following only are preserved:—*Kindheit*, childhood; *Gottheit*, Godhead; *Thorheit* and *Narrheit*, folly; and with a collective sense, *Menschheit*, mankind; *Christenheit*, Christendom.

6. By *schaft*, English *ship*, and *thum*, English *dom*, abstract and collective substantives are formed from names of persons, a few from adjectives and verbs. For example:—*Freundschaft*, friendship; *Feindschaft*, enmity; *Herrschaft*, lordship, dominion; *Knechtschaft*, slavery; *Eigenschaft*, quality; *Wissenschaft*, science; *Ritterschaft*, knighthood; *Brüderschaft*, brotherhood. *Heidenthum*, heathenism; *Königthum*, royalty; *Priesterthum*, priesthood; *Reichthum*, wealth; *Irrthum*, error.

7. A very few substantives have the suffixes *ut*, *at*, *end*; *e. g.*—*Armut*, poverty. *Bierat*, ornament; *Heimat*, home. *Tugend*, virtue; *Jugend*, youth.

§ 274. A great number of substantives are formed by prefixing to a stem the syllable *ge*, commonly termed the augment, and, in most instances, by modifying at the same time the vowel of the stem. They are derived from substantives as well as from verbs. The greater number of substantives of this kind have either a collective or frequentative signification. For example:—*Gebüsch*, bushes; *Geräth*, implements; *Gesinde*, domestics; *Geflügel*, birds, poultry; *Gefieder*, plumage; *Gebirge*, range of mountains; *Gewölk*, collection of clouds; *Gedränge*, crowd; *Geheul*, howling; *Gespräch*, conversation; *Gelaufe*, running to and fro; *Geläut*, ringing of bells; *Geschnäp*, chattering. Some denote persons, implying at the same time the idea of companionship; as—*Gespieler*, playmate; *Gefährte*, comrade; *Gehülfe*, assistant; *Geschwister*, brothers and sisters. Others have various other meanings.

#### C. DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 275. Adjectives are derived from substantives and verbs, a few from other adjectives. The following suffixes are employed for this purpose:—

1. *ig*, English *y*, added to the stem of substantives and a



few verbs, simply denotes the quality or condition implied in the stem ; as—würdig, worthy, from Würde, worth, dignity ; mächtig, mighty ; zornig, angry ; fleißig, diligent ; säumig, tardy, from säumen, to tarry. If the substantive from which an adjective is thus formed has a concrete signification, the vowel of the stem does not undergo modification ; as in blumig, flowery ; waldig, woody ; sandig, sandy ; luftig, airy, &c. ; excepting wässerig, watery ; and körnig, granulous.

By means of the termination ig, adjectives are also formed from adverbs of time and place ; as—heutig from heute, to-day ; gestrig from gestern, yesterday ; jetztig from jetzt, now ; baldig from bald, soon ; hiesig from hier, here ; dortig from dort, there ; bissherig from bisher, hitherto ; nachherig from nachher, afterwards ; damalig from damals, at that time ; sonstig from sonst, formerly, else, &c. But for morgen, to-morrow, the adjective is morgend. The possessive pronouns der meinige, deinige, seinige, &c., are formed in the same way.

**Note.**

The word *selig*, which occurs as a derivative suffix in several adjectives, has arisen from the suffix *sal*, by which a few derivative substantives are formed (§ 273, 3), the syllable *ig* having been added to change them into adjectives ; as—mühselig, toilsome ; trübselig, woful ; from Mühsal, Trübsal. But afterwards it has been more generally employed, without any regard to its origin, to denote a fulness or abundance of what the stem implies ; as in glücklich, exceedingly happy ; feindselig, hostile ; leutselig, affable ; friedselig, peaceful ; armselig, needy ; heilselig, most kind ; redselig, loquacious, and others.

2. *isch*, English *ish*, added to names of persons, nations, places, and countries, produces adjectives which denote belonging, or relating, or being similar to, a person or place ; as in himmlisch, heavenly ; irdisch, earthly ; englisch, English ; spanisch, Spanish ; lutherisch, Lutheran ; berlinisch, of Berlin ; diebisch, thievish ; dichterisch, poetical ; kindisch, childish ; närrisch, foolish ; weibisch, effeminate. In several adjectives derived from stems of an abstract meaning, it signifies an inclination to the action implied in the stem ; as in mürrisch, morose ; neidisch, envious ; zänfisch, quarrelsome ; abergläubisch, superstitious. The suffix *isch* is also generally employed to form adjectives from foreign words, as the English *ical*, for the Latin *icus* ; e.g.—physisch, physical ; kritisch, critical ;

poetisch, poetical; historisch, historical; politisch, political; lyrisch, lyrical.

## Notes.

1. The adjectives hübsch (höflich), pretty; welsh (wälsch), Welsh; deutsch (old High-German *diutisc*), German; and the adjective-substantive Mensch (old High-German *mennisco*), man, are formed in the same way.

2. From names of places of a compound form, such as Heidelberg, Magdeburg, the substantive form in *er* is generally used for the sake of euphony instead of the adjective form in *isch*, as in das Heidelberger Faß, the Heidelberg tun; der Magdeburger Dom, the cathedral of Magdeburg. But in simple names of places the form in *isch* is commonly preferred, as in kölnisches Wasser, eau de Cologne; das hallische Waisenhaus, the Orphan Hospital of Halle. (See § 176.)

3. lich, English *ly*, when added to substantives, denotes manner or resemblance; as in freundlich, friendly; brüderlich, brotherly; fürstlich, princely; männlich, manly; weiblich, womanly; kindlich, childlike; künstlich, artificial; natürlich, natural; gefährlich, dangerous. When added to adjectives, it gives a diminutive signification, like the English *ish* or *ly*; e.g.—ältlich, elderly; rötlich, reddish; grünlich, greenish; süßlich, sweetish; säuerlich, sourish. When added to the root of a verb, it denotes a possibility, which is conceived either in an active or passive sense, according as the verb is intransitive or transitive. It shares this signification with the suffix *bar*. For example:—dienlich, serviceable; nützlich, useful; sterblich, mortal; vergänglich, perishable; begreiflich, conceivable; glaublich, credible; löblich, laudable; unsäglich, unspeakable; thunlich, feasible.

4. *bar*, English *able* or *ible*, and *sam*, which may be compared to the English *some*, when added to abstract substantives and verbs, produce adjectives denoting a possibility or inclination; as—sichtbar, visible; denkbar, imaginable; essbar, eatable, edible; lenksam, manageable; dankbar, grateful; fruchtbar, fertile; arbeitssam, industrious; furchtsam, timid; schweigsam, taciturn; sparsam, saving. A few adjectives in *sam* are made from other adjectives, namely—einsam, lonely; gemeinsam, common, mutual; genugsam and sattsam, sufficient; but though used as adjectives, they have, strictly speaking, the force of adverbs.

5. *haft* is likewise used to form adjectives from abstract substantives and from verbs, and chiefly denotes a propensity to an action; as in zankhaft, quarrelsome; schwatzhaft, talkative;

tugendhaft, virtuous ; laſterhaft, vicious ; zaghaft, timid. Some are derived from names of persons, and expreſs a reſemblance ; as—meiſterhaft, maſterly ; rieſenhaft, gigantic ; ſchalkhaft, waggish. A few formed from adjectives, and alſo a few formed from ſubſtantives, ſignify the manner of an action ; as—boßhaft, malicious ; krankhaft, morbid ; wahrhaft, true ; ſchmerzhaft, painful ; herzhaft, courageous ; kramphhaft, ſpasmodic.

6. en, Engliſh *en*, is uſed to form adjectives from names of materials ; as—golden, golden ; ſilbern, of ſilver ; ſeiden, ſilken ; irden, earthen. If the ſtem ends in n, ſ, z, l, or a vowel, ern is generally uſed inſtead ; as—ſteinern, of ſtone ; gläſern, of glaſs ; hölzern, of wood ; ſtählern, of ſteel ; bleiern, leaden.

7. icht, Engliſh *y*, is added only to ſubſtantives of a concrete ſignification, eſpecially to names of materials, and denotes a reſemblance ; as—ſteinicht, ſtony ; hölzicht, wood-like ; ſalzigicht, ſalty ; blumicht, flower-like, flowery. Only thöricht, fooliſh, is formed from the appellation of a perſon.

## XXV.

### FORMATION OF COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 276. When two words are ſo joined into one that they expreſs but one idea, the word obtained is called a *compound word*. Every compound word conſiſts of only two components or members. The principal member—that is, that component which determines the other—generally has the principal accent ; while the ſubordinate member, or the component which is determined, has a ſubordinate accent. For example, in Weinglaſ, wine-glaſs, Wein determines Glaſ ; in hellblau, light blue, hell determines blau ; in ausgehen, to go out, auß determines gehen. Each component may be a compound word in itſelf. In that caſe, the principal member of the determinative component has the principal accent, as for inſtance Schuh in Schuhmacherhandwerk, ſhoemaker's trade ; or Buch in Buchhändlerladen, bookſeller's ſhop.

## I. COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 277. Substantives are compounded with other substantives, as—*Schulstube*, school-room ; or with adjectives, as—*Vollmond*, full moon ; or with verbs, as—*Singstunde*, singing-lesson ; or with particles, as—*Abgrund*, abyss.

1. When the two component parts are substantives, they are very often simply joined together without any connecting link, as in *Hauſhund*, house-dog ; *Seeman*, seaman ; *Briefträger*, letter-carrier ; *Kunſtwerk*, work of art ; *Regenbogen*, rainbow. When the first component ends in *e*, it sometimes drops the vowel, as in *Schulſtube*, school-room ; *Erdbeere*, strawberry ; *Augapfel*, eyeball.

Frequently the first component takes a termination—namely, *s*, *cſ*, or *n*, *en*, *enſ*—according as it belongs to the one or other of the declensions ; *e.g.*—*Wirthſchauſ*, tavern ; *Königſkrone*, king's crown ; *Frühlingſzeit*, season of spring ; *Gottesfürcht*, fear of God ; *Tageſlicht*, daylight ;—*Sonnenſtrahl*, sunbeam ; *Ehrentitel*, honorary title ; *Bärenfell*, bear's skin ; *Heldenmuth*, heroism ;—*Willenſfreiheit*, freedom of will ; *Glaubensartikel*, article of faith. But sometimes the termination *s* or *cſ* is added, for the sake of euphony, even to substantives of the feminine gender, as in *Liebeſdienſt*, act of kindness ; *Geburtſtag*, birthday ; *Hülfsſtruppen*, auxiliary forces. This takes place especially if the first component is in itself a compound word, or if it has one of the derivative suffixes, *heit*, *feit*, *ing*, *ling*, *ſchaft*, *thum*, *ung*, and in foreign words, *ion*, *at*, *tät* ; *e.g.*—*Hochzeitſtag*, wedding-day ; *Handwerkſzeug*, workman's tools ; *Zufluchtſort*, place of refuge ; *Weisheitſzahn*, wisdom-tooth ; *Heriſgſfang*, herring-fishing ; *Ordnungſliebe*, love of order ; *Erziehungſanſtalt*, educational establishment ; *Religionſfreiheit*, religious liberty ; *Univerſitätſkirche*, college-church.

The euphonic letters *e*, *i*, *er*, are but very rarely inserted between the two components, as in *Tagewerk*, day's work ; *Mauſefalle*, mouse-trap ; *Heidelbeere*, bilberry ; *Aſchermittwoch*, Ash-Wednesday.

## Nota.

In *Bräutigam*, bridegroom, and *Nachtigall*, nightingale, the vowel *i* is also euphonic. *Bräutigam*, being compounded of *Braut*, bride, and the

old High-German *gomo*, man, hero, means literally 'man of the bride.' *Nachtigall* is compounded of *Nacht*, night, and the old High-German *galan*, to sing, and therefore means literally 'singer of the night.'

The first component is commonly in the singular number; the plural occurs only in a few words; *e.g.*—*Wörterbuch*, dictionary; *Kindermädchen*, nursery-maid; *Götterlehre*, mythology; *Bilderbuch*, picture-book; *Kleiderschrank*, wardrobe, &c., along with others compounded with *Kind*, *Götter*, *Bilder*, *Kleider*.

2. When the first component is an adjective, it is joined to the substantive without any connecting link; *e.g.*—*Großvater*, grandfather; *Weißdorn*, hawthorn; *Gleichmuth*, equanimity; *Edelstein*, precious stone.

3. When the first component is the root of a verb, it is either simply joined to the substantive, or, if euphony require it, the vowel *e* is inserted; *e.g.*—*Reitpferd*, riding-horse; *Freibhaus*, hothouse, literally forcing-house; *Waschhaus*, wash-house; *Wohnort*, dwelling-place;—*Reisewagen*, travelling-carriage; *Lesebuch*, reading-book; *Labetrank*, refreshing drink; *Zeigefinger*, forefinger; *Badewanne*, bathing-tub.

4. Particles of whatever kind are joined to substantives without any connecting link. All the prefixes which are used in the composition of verbs, occur also in substantives derived from them. Respecting the accent of such substantives, see § 29, 3 and 4. Some particles, however, are chiefly peculiar to substantives, a few to adjectives also. With substantives they always have the principal accent.

*un*, English *un*, *in*, *im*, *dis*, *mis*, usually denotes negation, as in *Unglück*, misfortune; *Unfall*, disaster; *Unrecht*, wrong; *Unsinn*, nonsense. In some words it indicates more particularly that an object has departed from its natural condition, and that it is bad, repulsive, or injurious; as in *Unmensch*, an inhuman person; *Unthier*, a monstrous animal, a brute; *Unkraut*, weeds; *Ungeſtalt*, deformity; *Unthat*, misdeed; *Unwetter*, tempest.

*ur* (as a verbal prefix *ex*) is originally the same as the preposition *auss* (Gothic *us*, old High-German *ur*), and accordingly signifies a proceeding from or originating; as in *Ursprung*, origin; *Urheber*, originator; *Urquell*, fountain-head; *Ursilb*, prototype, and a few more. In some adjectives,

it merely strengthens the fundamental idea; as in *uralt*, very old; *urplötzlich*, very sudden.

*ant* (as a verbal prefix *ent*) from the Gothic *and*, which means 'towards,' or 'against,' is preserved in *Antwort*, answer; and *Antlig*, face.

*aber*, meaning originally 'again' (as in *abermalß*, once again), conveys the idea of 'false' in *Abervitz*, false wit, craziness, and *Aberglaube*, superstition.

*after* signifies that which is behind or follows, as well as that which is false, inferior, or spurious; *e. g.*—*Aftergeburt*, after-birth; *Afterpacht*, under-tenure;—*Afterkönig*, mock-king; *Afterrede*, slander.

*erz*, English *arch*, denotes the first or most distinguished in its kind, either with regard to dignity or inner condition; *e. g.*—*Erzengel*, archangel; *Erzherzog*, archduke; *Erzfeind*, archfiend; *Erzbösewicht*, arrant villain; *Erzdieb*, arrant thief.

*miß*, English *mis*, expresses the defectiveness or entire want of a thing, as in *Mißgriff*, mistake; *Mißbrauch*, abuse; *Mißton*, dissonance; *Mißtrauen*, mistrust; *Missethat*, misdeed; *Mißgunst*, ill-will; *Mißvergnügen*, displeasure. It is also used as a verbal prefix.

## II. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

§ 278. Adjectives are compounded with other adjectives, as—*dunkelblau*, dark blue; or with substantives, as—*steinhart*, hard as stone; *seefrank*, sea-sick; *völkreich*, populous; *geschmackvoll*, tasteful; *hoffnungsvoll*, hopeful; *treulos*, faithless; *gedankenlos*, thoughtless; or with verbs, as—*merkwürdig*, remarkable; *glauwürdig*, credible; or with particles, as—*überevoll*, overfull; *außerordentlich*, extraordinary; *mitschuldig*, accessory to a crime; *unrecht*, wrong; *ursprünglich*, original; *erzbumm*, extremely stupid. In the composition of adjectives, the same rules are observed as in the composition of substantives.

### Note.

Some adjectives with the prefix *un* have the principal accent on the prefix, but others on the stem. The accent is given to the stem when the idea conveyed by the adjective is simply negated, as in *unsterblich*, immortal; *untröstlich*, inconsolable; *unendlich*, infinite; *unglaublich*, incredible; *unmöglich*, impossible; *unfehlbar*, infallible; *unschätzbar*, inestimable, and others. But the accent is laid on the prefix *un* when the

negation of the idea is to be rendered emphatic, or when the idea is not only negated, but a positive idea is expressed through the negation of the simple adjective, as in *un'gleich*, unequal; *un'ächt*, not genuine; *un'edel*, ignoble; *un'fruchtbar*, sterile; *un'schuldig*, innocent; *un'nöthig*, unnecessary; *un'gesund*, ill; *un'gezogen*, ill-bred; *un'ver'schäm't*, impudent.

### III. COMPOUND VERBS.

§ 279. Verbs are compounded with nouns—that is, substantives and adjectives; or with adverbs and prepositions (the latter assuming the nature of adverbs); or with syllables which are only used as prefixes, and have no meaning by themselves. The grammatical use of compound verbs of every kind, as well as their accentuation, has been fully explained in chapter XI. It only remains to give a short account of the syllables employed as inseparable prefixes.

1. *be* (which has sprung from the preposition *bei*) usually gives the action expressed by an intransitive verb a direction to an object conceived as suffering the action—in other words, it changes an intransitive verb into a transitive one; *e. g.*—*bewachen*, to guard, from *wachen*, to watch; *beweinen*, to bewail, from *weinen*, to weep; *belachen*, to laugh at, from *lachen*, to laugh; *besitzen*, to possess, from *sitzen*, to sit; *befommen*, to come by, obtain, from *kommen*, to come. Sometimes it gives a transitive verb a direction towards another object, as in *bebauen*, to cultivate (land), from *bauen*, to build (a house); *bemalen*, to paint on (a wall), from *malen*, to paint (a picture); *besäen*, to sow (a field), from *säen*, to sow (seed); *bepflanzen*, to plant (a garden), from *pflanzen*, to plant (a tree). There are also many transitive verbs formed from substantives and adjectives by means of the prefix *be*; as—*bemühen*, to trouble; *beneiden*, to envy; *befreunden*, to befriend; *befreien*, to free; *betäuben*, to deafen, from *Mühe*, *Reib*, *Freund*, *frei*, *taub*; sometimes with the insertion of a euphonic syllable between the stem and the termination, as in *begnadigen*, to pardon; *befänftigen*, to appease; *begeistern*, to inspire, from *Gnade*, *sanft*, *Geist*. With intransitive verbs the prefix *be* occurs very seldom; *e. g.*—*beharren*, to persevere; *beruhen*, to rest upon; *be'hagen*, to please; *bewachsen*, to overgrow with, and a few others.

2. *ent* chiefly denotes privation or separation. It is joined

either to verbs, as in *entbinben*, to absolve; *entfliehen*, to escape; *entlaufen*, to run away; *entwenden*, to steal; *entziehen*, to withdraw; or to substantives and adjectives, changing them into verbs, as in *enthaupten*, to behead; *entkräften*, to weaken; *enterben*, to disinherit; *entvölkern*, to depopulate; *entschuldigen*, to excuse; *entleiben*, to release from. In *entsprechen*, to correspond; *entbieten*, to bid; *enthalten*, to contain, *ent* stands in the place of *an*.

3. *emp* occurs only in three verbs; namely—*empfehlen*, to recommend; *empfangen*, to receive; *empfinden*, to feel.

4. *er* has, like the prefix *ur*, sprung from the preposition *auss* (see § 277, 4). This original signification is still to be traced in words like *erretten*, to save from; *erschaffen*, to produce, create; *erschöpfen*, to exhaust; *ergießen*, to pour out; *erziehen*, to educate, and others. The prefix *er* is joined to verbs and adjectives, and chiefly denotes a growing, making, or passing into another condition; or an obtaining. For example:—*erwachsen*, to grow up; *erbauen*, to build up; *erwachen*, to awake; *erklären*, to explain; *erstarben*, to grow strong; *ermärmen*, to warm; *erröthen*, to blush; *erfrischen*, to refresh; *erneuen*, to renew; *erhalten*, to obtain; *erzwingen*, to obtain by force; *erbetteln*, to obtain by begging; *erkaufen*, to obtain by purchase.

5. *ver* has sprung from *für* or *vor*, and generally denotes a turning away. It occurs, therefore, in verbs which signify perishing or destroying, as in *vergehen*, to pass away; *verwelken*, to wither; *verblühen*, to fade; *verschallen*, to die away (said of sounds); *verbrennen*, to burn;—or losing, as in *verlieren*, to lose; *verlernen*, to forget; *verspielen*, to lose by playing; *vertrinken*, to spend in drinking;—or erring, as in *verfeunnen*, to mistake; *verziehen*, to spoil (a child); *verlegen*, to mislay. In verbs formed from substantives and adjectives, especially from the comparative of adjectives, the prefix *ver* indicates a change of condition; *e. g.*—*versteinern*, to petrify; *vergolden*, to gild; *verwüsten*, to lay waste; *verjungen*, to make young; *veralten*, to become antiquated; *verarmen*, to become poor; *verbittern*, to imbitter; *vergrößern*, to enlarge; *verlängern*, to make longer; *verschönern*, to embellish; *verfeinern*, to refine.

6. *zer* denotes a dissolution or destruction, as in *zergehen*



to dissolve ; zerfallen, to crumble to pieces ; zerspringen, to burst ; zerfließen, to melt away ; zerstören, to destroy ; zerreißen, to tear to pieces ; zerbrechen, to break to pieces.

7. *miß* denotes doing the contrary of what is expressed by the simple verb, or doing it in a wrong way ; *e. g.*—*mißgönnen*, to grudge ; *mißglücken*, to succeed ill ; *mißleiten*, to mislead ; *mißbrauchen*, to abuse.

8. The augment *ge* occurs only in a few verbs, in most instances without exercising any distinct or material influence on their signification ; *e. g.*—*gewinnen*, to win ; *genießen*, to enjoy ; *genesen*, to recover ; *gebrauchen*, to use.

## S Y N T A X.

---

### XXVI.

#### SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 280. Every simple sentence contains either an assertion, or a question, or a command; *e. g.*—Die Schwester schreibt einen Brief, the sister writes a letter. Schreibt die Schwester einen Brief? does the sister write a letter? Schreibe (du) einen Brief, write (thou) a letter. The leading principles of the construction of simple sentences have been explained in Chapter III.

§ 281. A simple sentence necessarily consists of a subject—that is, a thing or person spoken of—and of a predicate—that is, what that thing or person is asserted to be or to do; as—die Schwester schreibt, the sister writes. Der Fluß ist tief, the river is deep. All the rules of syntax which bear upon the connection of the subject and predicate, are here comprised under the head ‘Predicative Combination.’

A substantive, whether it fill the place of the subject or of any other member of a sentence, can be qualified or individualised; as—der Brief der Schwester, the sister's letter. Ein tiefer Fluß, a deep river. The various modes in which this is done will be considered under the head ‘Attributive Combination.’

The predicate of a sentence can be completed or individualised by being referred to some particular object or objects, or to some particular place, time, manner, or cause; as—die Schwester wird heute einen Brief schreiben, the sister will write a letter to-day. Der Gärtner pflanzt einen

Baum in dem Garten, the gardener plants a tree in the garden. This relation will come to be considered under the head 'Objective Combination,' which admits of the two subdivisions, 'Completing Object,' as in the above examples, einen Brief, einen Baum; and 'Adverbial Expression,' as heute, in dem Garten.

§ 282. When two or more clauses are joined together, they are either independent of each other, and hence *co-ordinate*, or one is made to depend on or to be *subordinate* to the other.

Co-ordinate clauses are sometimes placed side by side without any connecting link, as—der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt, man proposes, God disposes; but more commonly they are joined by means of one of the co-ordinative conjunctions, as und, aber, doch, oder, denn, &c., which have come under consideration in § 258, sq. For example:—Wir sehen mit den Augen, und wir hören mit den Ohren, we see with our eyes, and we hear with our ears. Die Fürsten der Erde sind mächtig, aber Gott ist mächtiger als alle Fürsten der Erde, the princes of the earth are mighty, but God is mightier than all the princes of the earth. Verschiebe nicht auf morgen, was du heute thun kannst, denn die Zukunft ist ungewiß, delay not till to-morrow what thou canst do to-day, for the future is uncertain.

§ 283. When a clause is made to depend on another, it is called a *dependent clause*, whilst the clause to which it is subordinated is called a *principal clause*. A dependent clause, the peculiar structure of which has been explained in § 49, generally cannot be understood by itself, but becomes intelligible only when put in connection with a leading clause. Its object is either to explain the whole thought contained in the principal clause, or to supply the place of, or qualify, one of its members. Hence a dependent clause stands to the leading one in the relation either of a substantive, or of an adjective, or of an adverb, and is called respectively a *dependent substantive*, or *adjective*, or *adverbial clause*. Several subordinate clauses are often ranged under the same principal clause. Two or more clauses thus united form a *compound sentence*. Subordinate clauses are commonly joined with their principal clause by subordinative conjunctions (§ 257), or by relative pronouns or relative adverbs.

**Examples:—**Daß er todt ist, ist mir bekannt, that he is dead (or his death) is known to me. Here daß er todt ist is the subject of ist mir bekannt, accordingly it is a dependent substantive clause.—Er weiß, daß sein Leben auf dem Spiele steht, he knows that his life lies at stake (that is, the danger of life). Here daß sein Leben auf dem Spiele steht is the object of er weiß, and hence a dependent substantive clause.—Ein Baum, welcher keine Frucht trägt, wird umgehauen, a tree which bears no fruit (that is, an unfruitful tree) is cut down. Here the words welcher keine Frucht trägt qualify ein Baum, and therefore make a dependent adjective clause.—Ich werde ihn besuchen, wenn ich Zeit übrig habe, I shall go to see him if I have time to spare. Here the clause wenn ich Zeit übrig habe, expressing the condition on which the visit is promised, is a dependent adverbial clause.—Er hat sich unwohl befunden, seitdem er von Amerika zurückgekehrt ist, he has been unwell, since he returned from America. Here the words seitdem er von Amerika zurückgekehrt ist express a relation of time of the principal clause, and accordingly make a dependent adverbial clause.

§ 284. A dependent clause follows, precedes, or is inserted in the principal clause. When it precedes the principal clause, it is termed the *protasis* (antecedent, Vorder Satz), and the other the *apodosis* (consequent, Nach Satz); but these terms are usually employed only when the dependent clause is adverbial, denoting time, cause, concession, or a condition. The apodosis always takes an inverted form. For example:—Seitdem er von Amerika zurückgekehrt ist, hat er sich unwohl befunden, since he returned from America, he has been unwell. Wenn ich Zeit übrig habe, werde ich ihn besuchen, if I have time to spare, I shall go to see him.

§ 285. When a dependent clause is arranged in the usual way, the auxiliary verb of tense which contains the assertion is often omitted; *e.g.*—Es leben Viele, die das nicht gesehen, *Sch.* (understand haben), many live who have not seen that. Tell soll mir's zeugen, ob die Fahrt zu wagen, *Sch.* (understand ist), Tell shall be my witness, whether the passage is to be ventured. Mein, ich verlor nicht Alles, da solcher Freund im Unglück mir geblieben, *Sch.* (understand ist), no, I did not lose all, since such a friend has been left to me in misfortune.

## I. PREDICATIVE COMBINATION.

### XXVII.

#### AGREEMENT BETWEEN SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 286. The subject of a sentence is always in the nominative case. It is generally a substantive, or a pronoun representing a substantive, or an adjective used substantively; as for instance—*der Mensch denkt*, man thinks. *Er denkt*, he thinks. *Das Alte vergeht*, old things pass away. But any word which is used in the sense of a substantive, may also be made the subject of a sentence; *e. g.*—*daß Wenn* ist ein bedeutendes Wort, the 'if' is a significant word. *Irren* ist menschlich, to err is human. *Lange leben* heißt viele überleben, *G.*, to live long is to survive many. Sometimes a whole clause stands in the place of the subject; *e. g.*—*Wer flug* ist, *lerne* schweigen und gehorchen, *Sch.*, let him who is wise learn to be silent and obey. *Wann er kommen wird*, ist noch ungewiß, when he will come, is still uncertain.

#### Notes.

1. In imperative sentences, the subject is omitted when a person is addressed in the second person; *as*—*komme*, come; *geht hinaus*, go out; *niemals* the pronoun requires to be made emphatic for the sake of contrast. In the first and third persons, however, the subject is always expressed; *as* in *gehe er*, let him go; *gehen wir*, let us go; *gehen sie*, let them go; *gehen Sie*, go (you). (See § 316.)

2. When a substantive pronoun is the subject of a sentence, it agrees in gender and number with the substantive it represents. But when the substantive is a neuter diminutive of the name of a person, it is not unusual to make the pronoun agree with the natural gender of that person; *e. g.*—*Was giebt's?* *das Fräulein!* *Sie* will sterben, *Sch.*, What is the matter? the lady! she is dying.

§ 287. The predicate is generally a verb, or a substantive, or an adjective. A verb is referred to the subject by means of its inflectional changes, or by an auxiliary verb; a substantive or adjective is joined to the subject by means of the verb *sein*, to be—hence called the 'copula,' or 'link'—or by similar verbs, such as *werden*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *scheinen*, to seem. A substantive, when employed as a

predicate, is, like the subject, in the nominative case. A predicative adjective remains uninflected. Examples:—Die Rose blühet, the rose blooms. Sie hat geblühet, it has bloomed. Der Vogel kann fliegen, the bird can fly. Die Rose ist roth, the rose is red. Der Weg wird eben, the road becomes even. Nero war ein Tyrann, Nero was a tyrant. Wir bleiben Freunde, we remain friends. Das Urtheil scheint gerecht, the sentence seems just.

1. Sometimes the predicate consists of an adverb, or of the genitive of a substantive with or without an adjective to qualify it, or of a substantive preceded by a preposition, as von, in, ohne, &c. For example:—Der Sturm ist verüber, the storm is over. Der Sommer ist hin, *Sch.*, the summer is gone. Alles war vergebens, all was in vain. Ich bin ganz Ihrer Meinung, I am quite of your opinion. Sei gutes Muths, be of good cheer. Er ist von Adel, he is of noble birth. Die Sache ist von großer Wichtigkeit, the matter is of great importance. Er war in Wuth, he was in rage. Sei ohne Furcht, be without fear.

2. Some adjectives are not employed in a predicative sense, namely—1. Derivatives in en or ern; as—golden, golden; seiden, silken; hölzern, wooden; gläsern, of glass (§ 275, 6). 2. Many derivatives in ich and lich; as—diebisch, thievish; heuchlerisch, hypocritical; räuberisch, rapacious; nördlich, northern; täglich, daily; nächtlich, nightly; jährlich, annual; mündlich, oral; wörtlich, literal, &c. 3. All adjectives in ig derived from adverbs of time and place; as—heutig, of to-day; gestern, of yesterday; hierig, of this place, &c. (§ 275, 1).

3. A considerable number of adjectives, on the contrary, can be used only in a predicative connection, some of them under particular restrictions; namely—1. The following stems: bereit, ready; brach, fallow, ~~ready~~, hostile; gar, ready (boiled); gänge und gebe, current; getrost, confident; genau, sensible, aware; gram, averse; irre, wrong; funt, known; leid, sorry; nüt, of use; quer, oblique; quitt, quit. 2. The following derivatives and compounds: abhold, disinclined; abspenstig, alienated; abwesig, estranged; ansehtig, getting a sight of a thing; eingedenk, mindful; habhaft, getting possession of a thing; theilhaft, partaking; unpaß, unwell; verlustig, forfeiting, and a few more. Regarding the use of participles as predicates, see § 177.

§ 288. The verb agrees with the subject in number and person:—ich bin zufrieden, I am content. Du schläfst, thou sleepest. Der Mensch ist frei, man is free. Wir müssen sterben, we must die. Ihr sprecht, you speak. Häuser werden gebaut, houses are being built.

§ 289. When there are to the same predicate several subjects of different persons, one of which is the first person, the

verb is put in the first person plural; when there is no subject of the first person, but one of the second and one of the third, the verb is put in the second person plural. For example:—*Ich und du sind immer Freunde gewesen*, I and thou have always been friends. *Du und dein Vater seid derselben Meinung*, thou and thy father are of the same opinion. It is usual, however, to add a personal pronoun in the plural number comprehending both subjects:—*Ich und du, wir sind immer Freunde gewesen*. *Du und dein Vater, ihr seid derselben Meinung*.

§ 290. When there are several subjects in the third person, the verb is put in the third person plural; *e.g.*—*Schönheit und Jugend vergehen*, beauty and youth pass away. *Da hängen Helm und Schild*, *Sch.*, there hang helmet and shield. *Gesundheit, Ehre, Glück und Pracht sind nicht das Glück der Seele*, *Gellert*, health, honour, wealth, and pomp, are not the happiness of the soul. This rule, however, is often departed from, the third person singular being employed, when the several subjects may be conceived as forming one general idea, provided they are all in the singular; *e.g.*—*Auf blut'ge Schlachten folgt Gesang und Tanz*, *Sch.*, after bloody battles follow song and dance. *Verrath und Argwohn lauscht in allen Ecken*, *Sch.*, treachery and suspicion lurk in every corner. *Verschwört sich Haß und Liebe mich zu schrecken?* *Sch.*, do hatred and love conspire to terrify me?

§ 291. When two subjects are connected by *oder*, or; or by *entweder . . . oder*, either . . . or; *weder . . . noch*, neither . . . nor; *nicht nur . . . sondern auch*, not only . . . but also, the predicate agrees with the subject nearest to it; as—*ich oder du mußt weichen*, I or thou must yield. *Ich muß weichen, oder du*, I must yield, or thou. *Ich will dich führen lassen und verwahren, wo weder Mond noch Sonne dich bescheint*, *Sch.*, I shall have thee led and kept, where neither moon nor sun shines upon thee.

§ 292. When the subject is a collective in the singular, the verb likewise stands in the singular; as—*das Volk hat sich verlaufen*, the people have dispersed. *Der Rath war in seiner Meinung getheilt*, the council were divided in their opinions. But the collectives *ein Paar*, a pair, a couple, a few; *eine Menge*, a number; *ein Duzend*, a dozen, and some

others of a similar kind, are considered as indefinite numerals, and the verb agrees in number with the substantive joined to them ; as—ein Paar Bücher sind mir zugesandt, a couple of books, or some books have been sent to me. Eine Menge Rebhühner sind geschossen worden, a great number of partridges have been shot.

§ 293. When the predicate conveys the idea of an action or condition which is conceived without a distinct subject, the place of the latter is supplied by the neuter pronoun *es*, which is then termed the *grammatical subject*. It is chiefly used with impersonal verbs, as—*es* regnet, it rains ; *es* schneit, it snows ; and with phrases which assume an impersonal form, as—*es* hungert mich, I feel hungry ; *es* dünkt mich, methinks ; also with the passive of intransitive verbs, as—*es* wird gelaufen, there is running (taking place).

When, for the sake of emphasis, or merely to give variety to the mode of expression, the real subject of a sentence follows after the inflected part of the verb, its place before the verb is supplied by the grammatical subject, provided it be not filled by an adverbial expression. The verb, however, agrees in number with the real subject. For example :—*Es* lächelt der See, *Sch.*, the lake smiles, or there smiles the lake. *Es* rauschet das Wasser, *G.*, the water rushes. *Es* eilen die Stunden, *Sch.*, the hours hasten. *Es* reden und träumen die Menschen viel von künftigen besseren Tagen, *Sch.*, men talk and dream much of future better days.

The grammatical subject is also used when the real subject, following after the predicate, is expressed by a supine, or by a complete clause. For example :—*Es* ist eine Wollust, einen großen Mann zu sehen, *G.*, it is a delight to see a great man. *Es* ist der Wille meiner Königin, daß euch nichts Billiges verweigert werde, *Sch.*, it is the will of my queen that no just request shall be denied to you.

§ 294. The English usage of making the subject (or any other part of the sentence) emphatic by ‘it is,’ ‘it was,’ &c., is not quite foreign to the German language, but is not so fully carried out as in the English. The verb *sein*, in such cases, agrees with the substantive which is to be made emphatic ; e. g.—*Es* ist die Sorge eures treuen Herzens, die euch vergebne Schrecknisse erschafft, *Sch.*, it is the anxiety of



your faithful heart which causes you vain terrors. Die Richter sind es nur, die ich verwerfe, *Sch.*, it is only the judges that I reject. Die Urner sind es, die am längsten säumen, *Sch.*, it is the men of Uri who tarry longest.

Nota.

Another mode of rendering the subject (or also an object) of a sentence emphatic, is to make it precede the sentence, and then refer to it in the sentence itself by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. For example:—Die Tugend, sie ist kein leerer Schall, *Sch.*, virtue (it) is no empty sound. Und diese Wolken, die nach Mittag jagen, sie suchen Frankreichs fernen Ocean, *Sch.*, and these clouds which fly towards the south (they) seek the distant ocean of France. Die Mauern, die sind so dicht, *Schwab*, the walls (they) are so close. Dieses Blatt, ich leg's in eure Hände, *Sch.*, this paper, I put it into your hands. Diese Weisheit, ich hasse sie in meiner tiefsten Seele, this wisdom, I hate it in my deepest soul. In the first three examples the subject is made emphatic, in the last two the object.

EXERCISE LII.

The ice<sup>1</sup> breaks. The lion roars.<sup>2</sup> The birds sing. Who comes? That is incorrect.<sup>3</sup> The soul is immortal.<sup>4</sup> He is a painter.<sup>5</sup> Hunger<sup>6</sup> is the best sauce (say, the best cook<sup>7</sup>). The workmen<sup>8</sup> have not been industrious. Gold and silver are precious metals.<sup>9</sup> The good are often hated by the world. To err is human, to forgive<sup>10</sup> divine.<sup>11</sup> What he said, was a riddle<sup>12</sup> to me. Whether<sup>13</sup> she will recover again, is still doubtful.<sup>14</sup> That he is a spendthrift,<sup>15</sup> is known<sup>16</sup> to every one. We were playmates<sup>17</sup> in our childhood,<sup>18</sup> and have always remained true friends. It seems almost impossible. Is the messenger back?<sup>19</sup> The dance is over.<sup>20</sup> My peace<sup>21</sup> is gone.<sup>22</sup> I am of the same opinion. We are all of one mind.<sup>23</sup> The lady is of noble birth.<sup>24</sup> I am without fear. Thou and I, [we] are inseparable<sup>25</sup> friends. He and thou, [you] will travel together. War, fire, and famine<sup>26</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ice, Eis. <sup>2</sup> To roar, brüllen. <sup>3</sup> Incorrect, falsch. <sup>4</sup> Immortal, unsterblich. <sup>5</sup> Painter, Maler. <sup>6</sup> Hunger, Hunger. <sup>7</sup> Cook, Koch. <sup>8</sup> Workmen, Arbeitsleute. <sup>9</sup> Precious metals, edle Metalle. <sup>10</sup> To forgive, vergeben. <sup>11</sup> Divine, göttlich. <sup>12</sup> Riddle, Räthsel. <sup>13</sup> Whether, ob. <sup>14</sup> Doubtful, zweifelhaft. <sup>15</sup> Spendthrift, Verschwenker. <sup>16</sup> Known, bekannt. <sup>17</sup> Playmate, Gespieler. <sup>18</sup> Childhood, Kindheit. <sup>19</sup> Back, zurück. <sup>20</sup> Over, aus. <sup>21</sup> Peace, Ruhe. <sup>22</sup> Gone, hin. <sup>23</sup> Mind, Sinn. <sup>24</sup> Of noble birth, von Adel. <sup>25</sup> Inseparable, unzertrennlich. <sup>26</sup> Famine, Hungersnoth.

wasted<sup>27</sup> the country. Either you, or I am to be blamed.<sup>28</sup> Neither kindness, nor severity<sup>29</sup> has produced<sup>30</sup> any change<sup>31</sup> in his conduct.<sup>32</sup> Not only the engine-driver,<sup>33</sup> but also some passengers<sup>34</sup> have been injured.<sup>35</sup> The people<sup>36</sup> have certain rights. Have the council<sup>37</sup> come to a decision?<sup>38</sup> A dozen of bottles remain over.<sup>39</sup> A great number<sup>40</sup> of ships lie in the docks.<sup>41</sup> There arose<sup>42</sup> a great famine in the land. There were many people<sup>43</sup> present. There howls<sup>44</sup> the storm; there roars<sup>45</sup> the sea. There smiles the lake. It is dangerous<sup>46</sup> to bathe in this river. It is uncertain, when the king will arrive. It is the enemy's life for which he lies in wait.<sup>47</sup> It is the two strongholds,<sup>48</sup> Rossberg and Sarnen, which the countryman<sup>49</sup> fears.

<sup>27</sup> To waste, verwüsten. <sup>28</sup> To be blamed, zu tadeln. <sup>29</sup> Severity, Strenge.  
<sup>30</sup> To produce, hervorbringen. <sup>31</sup> Change, Aenderung. <sup>32</sup> Conduct, Betragen.  
<sup>33</sup> Engine-driver, Locomotivenführer. <sup>34</sup> Passengers, Reisende. <sup>35</sup> To injure, verletzen. <sup>36</sup> People, Volk. <sup>37</sup> Council, Rath. <sup>38</sup> Decision, Entschluß.  
<sup>39</sup> Remain over, sind übrig geblieben. <sup>40</sup> Great number, Menge. <sup>41</sup> Dock, Dock.  
<sup>42</sup> To arise, entstehen. <sup>43</sup> People, Leute. <sup>44</sup> To howl, heulen.  
<sup>45</sup> To roar, brausen. <sup>46</sup> Dangerous, gefährlich. <sup>47</sup> For which he lies in wait, worauf er lauert. <sup>48</sup> Stronghold, Feste. <sup>49</sup> Countryman, Landmann.

## XXVIII.

### THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

§ 295. The active voice represents a person or thing (the subject of the sentence) as being in a state or as performing an action:—*das Kind schläft*, the child sleeps; *der Lehrer lobt den Schüler*, the teacher praises the pupil. The passive voice represents the object which is affected by an action as the subject in a state of suffering that action:—*der Schüler wird von dem Lehrer gelobt*, the pupil is praised by the teacher.

§ 296. Only transitive verbs—that is, verbs which have their object in the accusative—admit of a complete passive voice. An active sentence which has a transitive verb for its predicate, can be turned into a passive sentence by

changing the accusative into the nominative—that is, the object into the subject—and at the same time changing the nominative into the dative, with the preposition *von* before it, as in the above example—*der Schüler wird von dem Lehrer gelobt*.

Note.

It must be remarked that, when a transitive verb governs not only a direct object in the accusative, but at the same time an indirect object in the dative, the English sometimes change the dative of the active sentence into the nominative of the passive one; *e. g.*—They have promised *him* assistance—he has been promised assistance; people have told *me*—I have been told. In such cases the general rule, as given above, is strictly adhered to, unless an active construction with the indefinite pronoun *man* for its subject be preferred. The latter mode of expression is generally used, when the active subject is not definitely expressed:—*Es ist ihm Hilfe versprochen worden, or man hat ihm Hilfe versprochen; es ist mir gesagt worden, or man hat mir gesagt.*

§ 297. Intransitive verbs—that is, verbs denoting a state or an action the object of which is not expressed by the accusative case, but by the dative or genitive, or in some other way—have, properly speaking, no passive voice. For the only mode in which the passive of such verbs can be used is strictly impersonal, whilst the object, in whatever form it appears in the active, remains the same in the passive. For example:—*Es wird auf Sie gewartet*, you are waited for. *Auf Tod und Leben wird gekämpft, Sch.*, there is fighting for life and death. *Es ward mir hart begegnet, Sch.*, I was harshly treated. *Mir wird nachgesetzt, Sch.*, I am pursued. *Ihrer wurde oft gedacht*, you were often mentioned. *Es wurde heftig über diesen Gegenstand gestritten, Sch.*, this matter was warmly debated.

Note.

Sentences like those here given as specimens are sufficiently simple, but generally there is a want of ease attending this mode of expression, which prevents it from being much employed. It can easily be avoided, either by using active sentences in the place of passive, or by having recourse to equivalent transitive verbs; as—*erwarten* for *warten auf*, to wait for; *lachen über* for *lachen über*, to laugh at, &c.

## EXERCISE LIII.

The enemy besieged<sup>1</sup> the town—The town was besieged by the enemy. He is erecting<sup>2</sup> a pavilion<sup>3</sup>—A pavilion is being erected by him. The prince has promised secrecy<sup>4</sup>—Secrecy has been promised by the prince. One shewed<sup>5</sup> us into a brilliant<sup>6</sup> apartment—We were shewn into a brilliant apartment. Rasselas visited sometimes the artist—The artist was sometimes visited by Rasselas. We shall embrace<sup>7</sup> the first opportunity—The first opportunity will be embraced by us. What have they been promised? (say, What has been promised to them?—and, What has one promised to them?) The order<sup>8</sup> has not been obeyed<sup>9</sup> (say, To the order has not been obeyed—and, One has not obeyed to the order). I have been advised<sup>10</sup> to address<sup>11</sup> myself to the king (say, To me has been advised, &c.—and, One has advised to me, &c.) The occurrence<sup>12</sup> was no longer<sup>13</sup> thought<sup>14</sup> of (say, Of the occurrence was no longer thought—and, One thought no longer of the occurrence). Your assistance<sup>15</sup> is counted<sup>16</sup> upon (say, It is counted upon your assistance—and, One counts upon your assistance). A physician<sup>17</sup> has been sent<sup>18</sup> for (say, It has been sent for a physician—or, One has sent for a physician).

- <sup>1</sup> To besiege, belagern. <sup>2</sup> To erect, bauen. <sup>3</sup> Pavilion, Pavillon, m.  
<sup>4</sup> Secrecy, Verschwiegenheit. <sup>5</sup> To shew, here führen. <sup>6</sup> Brilliant, glänzend.  
<sup>7</sup> To embrace, here benutzen. <sup>8</sup> Order, Befehl. <sup>9</sup> To obey, gehorchen.  
<sup>10</sup> To advise, raten. <sup>11</sup> To address one's self, sich wenden, with the preposition an with the accusative. <sup>12</sup> Occurrence, Vorfall. <sup>13</sup> No longer, nicht mehr.  
<sup>14</sup> To think, denken, with the genitive. <sup>15</sup> Assistance, Beistand.  
<sup>16</sup> To count upon, rechnen auf, with the accusative. <sup>17</sup> Physician, Arzt.  
<sup>18</sup> To send for, schicken nach.

## XXIX.

## REFLECTIVE VERBS.

§ 298. When a person or thing is represented at the same time as performing and suffering an action, the verb assumes a reflective form. A transitive verb, therefore, is used in a reflective sense, if a reflective pronoun takes the place of the

direct object (accusative) ; as—*ich lobe mich*, I praise myself ; *er wäscht sich*, he washes himself ; *wir fleiden uns an*, we dress ourselves ; *sie schmücken sich*, they adorn themselves.

Note.

The reflexive pronoun of reflexive verbs is always in the accusative. There are a few verbs which have the reflexive pronoun in the dative, but as they govern at the same time the accusative of the object, they are, strictly speaking, not reflexive verbs, but preserve the nature of transitives. (See § 339, note.)

§ 299. As there are but few verbs in German which may be used both in a transitive and intransitive sense, the reflexive form is very frequently adopted, in order to impart to a transitive verb an intransitive meaning ; as—*drehen* and *sich drehen*, to turn ; *versammeln* and *sich versammeln*, to assemble ; *heben*, to raise, and *sich heben*, to rise ; *öffnen* and *sich öffnen*, to open ; *ändern* and *sich ändern*, to change ; *verbreiten* and *sich verbreiten*, to spread, &c. Examples :—*Der Wind hat sich gedreht*, the wind has changed. *Wir Schwestern saßen, die Wollé spinnend, in den langen Nächten, wenn bei dem Vater sich des Volkes Häupter versammelten*, *Sch.*, we sisters sat spinning wool, during the long nights, when at my father's house the chiefs of the people assembled. *Es ändert sich die Zeit*, *Sch.*, time changes. *Die Nachricht hat sich verbreitet*, the news has spread.

§ 300. The reflexive form is often used for the passive, if the subject from whom the activity proceeds is not expressed. For example :—*Es wird sich bald entscheiden*, it will soon be decided. *Es versteht sich*, it is understood. *In kurzer Zeit muß sich Vieles aufklären*, *G.*, in a short time many things must be cleared up. *Das Bild wird sich unter den übrigen Sachen finden*, *Sch.*, the portrait will be found among the other things. *Du wirfst mir meinen Glauben nicht erschüttern, der auf die tiefste Wissenschaft sich baut*, *Sch.*, thou wilt not shake my faith, which is founded on the deepest science. The reflexive form cannot be employed if the active subject is expressed ; *e. g.*—*Es wird von den Richtern entschieden werden*, it will be decided by the judges. *Es wurde von Keinem verstanden*, it was understood by nobody. *Der Schlüssel ist von einem Schulknaben gefunden worden*, the key has been found by a school-boy.

Reflective expressions similar to the above often occur with the auxiliary verb of mood *lassen*, to let, to allow. Examples:—  
*Es läßt sich wohl begreifen*, it can easily be conceived.  
*Es läßt sich nicht beweisen*, it cannot be proved. Vom  
*sichern Port läßt sich's gemächlich rathe*n, *Sch.*, it is easy to  
 give advice from the safe port.

§ 301. A considerable number of verbs are only used in the reflective form, especially the following:—

*sich anschicken*, to prepare, make arrangements.

" *bedanken*, to render thanks.

" *beeifern*, to exert one's self.

" *befleiß*n, }  
 " *befleiß*igen, } to apply one's self.

" *begeben*, to betake one's self.

" *begnügen*, to be contented.

" *behelfen*, to make shift with.

" *belaufen*, to amount.

" *bemächtigen*, to take possession of.

" *besinnen*, to recollect.

" *bestreben*, to endeavour.

" *bewerben*, to sue, apply for.

" *entschließen*, to resolve, make up one's mind.

" *entsinnen*, to recall to one's mind.

" *erbarmen*, to take pity.

" *erdreisten*, to dare.

" *ereifern*, to get into a passion.

" *ereignen*, to come to pass, to happen.

" *ergeben*, to surrender.

" *erholen*, to recover one's self.

" *erfalten*, to catch cold.

" *erkühnen*, to make bold, to dare.

" *freuen*, to rejoice.

" *gedulden*, to have patience.

" *grämen*, to grieve.

" *schämen*, to be ashamed.

" *schlängeln*, to wind, meander.

" *sehnen*, to long.

" *umsehen*, to look about.

" *unterstehen*, to dare.

" *verirren*, to lose one's way.

- sich verlieben, to fall in love.  
 " versündigen, to sin against.  
 " verwundern, to be amazed.  
 " vorsehen, to take care, be on one's guard.  
 " widerstehen, to resist.  
 " wundern, to wonder.

## Note.

Many verbs assume an entirely different meaning when used in the reflective form; *e. g.*—verlassen, to quit, sich verlassen, to rely; vergehen, to pass away, sich vergehen, to go wrong, commit an offence; verstellen, to displace, sich verstellen, to dissemble; aufführen, to erect, perform (a play), sich aufführen, to conduct one's self; fügen, to join, sich fügen, to happen, or to accommodate one's self; zutragen, to carry to, sich zutragen, to occur, and many others. Such peculiarities, however, must be learned from observation and from the dictionary.

## EXERCISE LIV.

Has the wind changed? <sup>1</sup> The senate assembles in <sup>2</sup> the town-hall.<sup>3</sup> The earth moves round its own axis.<sup>4</sup> The door opens. The times have changed.<sup>5</sup> The weather is going to (say, will) change. The rumour<sup>6</sup> has spread. The scene<sup>7</sup> changes.<sup>8</sup> The wind has fallen.<sup>9</sup> Not a leaf moves. The matter<sup>10</sup> has at last<sup>11</sup> been decided. By whom will the matter be decided? All will be cleared up in time.<sup>12</sup> Has the letter been found? The item<sup>13</sup> will be found in the account.<sup>14</sup> The purse has been found by a stranger. It could not be proved. It cannot be expected that you should make<sup>15</sup> such a sacrifice.<sup>16</sup> Music was heard<sup>17</sup> in the distance.<sup>18</sup> My uneasiness<sup>19</sup> cannot be described.<sup>20</sup> We are making arrangements for<sup>21</sup> a long journey. Have you rendered thanks to him? <sup>22</sup> The expenses<sup>23</sup> amount to<sup>24</sup> two thousand dollars. I could not recollect where I had seen him. He

<sup>1</sup> To change, here sich brechen. <sup>2</sup> In, auf. <sup>3</sup> Town-hall, Rathhaus. <sup>4</sup> Axis, Achse. <sup>5</sup> To change, here and in the following sentence sich ändern. <sup>6</sup> Rumour, Gerücht. <sup>7</sup> Scene, Scene. <sup>8</sup> To change, here sich verändern. <sup>9</sup> To fall, sich legen. <sup>10</sup> Matter, Sache. <sup>11</sup> At last, endlich. <sup>12</sup> In time, mit der Zeit. <sup>13</sup> Item, Posten. <sup>14</sup> Account, Rechnung. <sup>15</sup> That you should make, daß Sie . . . bringen sollten. <sup>16</sup> Sacrifice, Opfer. <sup>17</sup> To be heard, sich vernehmen lassen. <sup>18</sup> Distance, Ferne. <sup>19</sup> Uneasiness, Unruhe. <sup>20</sup> To describe, beschreiben. <sup>21</sup> For, zu. <sup>22</sup> To him, bei ihm. <sup>23</sup> Expenses, Kosten. <sup>24</sup> To, auf, with the accusative.

has applied for a situation<sup>25</sup> in a counting-house.<sup>26</sup> Have you made up your mind? Do not get into a passion. Where has it happened? Have you recovered from the fright?<sup>27</sup> We rejoice at<sup>28</sup> your good fortune.<sup>29</sup> I am not ashamed to confess<sup>30</sup> my error.<sup>31</sup> She longs for<sup>32</sup> her home.<sup>33</sup> Do not dare<sup>34</sup> to do that again.<sup>35</sup> Take care. I wonder at your ignorance.<sup>36</sup> You are justly<sup>37</sup> wondering.

<sup>25</sup> For a situation, um eine Stelle. <sup>26</sup> Counting-house, Comptoir, n.  
<sup>27</sup> Fright, Schrecken. <sup>28</sup> At, über, with the accusative. <sup>29</sup> Good fortune, Glück. <sup>30</sup> To confess, bekennen. <sup>31</sup> Error, Irrthum. <sup>32</sup> For, nach. <sup>33</sup> Home, Heimat. <sup>34</sup> To dare, sich unterstehen. <sup>35</sup> Again, noch einmal. <sup>36</sup> Ignorance, Unwissenheit. <sup>37</sup> Justly, mit Recht.

---

### XXX.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 302. The name of *Impersonal Verbs*—that is, of verbs denoting an action which is conceived without a distinct subject—is properly applied to such verbs only as express phenomena of nature; as, for example—es regnet, it rains; es schneit, it snows; es hagelt, it hails; es friert, it freezes; es thaut, it thaws; es blizt, it lightens; es donnert, it thunders; es tagt, it dawns; es dunfelt, it grows dark.

Of a similar nature are phrases like the following:—es ist kalt, it is cold; es ist warm, it is warm; es ist hell, it is light; es wird dunkel, it grows dark, &c.; and indications of time, as—es ist spät, it is late; es ist früh, it is early; es ist vier Uhr, it is four o'clock, &c.

§ 303. Some verbs which, in regard to signification, are not impersonal, assume an impersonal form, the active subject being expressed in the form of an object—that is, by the accusative or dative. Most of such verbs denote physical or moral sensations. The English language presents an analogy in the phrases 'methinks, methought, meseems.' The following, among others, deserve notice:—

- es hungert mich (or mich hungert), I am hungry.
- „ durstet mich, I am thirsty.
- „ friert mich, I feel cold.



- es fröstelt mich, I feel chilly.  
 „ schläfert mich, I feel sleepy.  
 „ verlangt mich, I am anxious (*e. g.* to know).  
 „ gelüstet mich, I desire, I list.  
 „ jammert mich (with the genitive), I pity.  
 „ schaudert mich, I shudder.  
 „ dünkt mir (or mich), } methinks.  
 „ dünkt mir (or-mich), }  
 „ träumt mir, I dream.  
 „ efelt mir (vor etwas), I am disgusted at a thing.  
 „ schwindelt mir, I feel giddy.  
 „ ahnt mir, I forebode.  
 „ schwant mir, my heart misgives me.  
 „ grauet mir (vor etwas), I am afraid of something.  
 „ bangt mir, I feel anxious or uneasy.

Examples:—Reicht mir einen Trunk Wasser, denn mich durstet, *Kr.*, hand me a drink of water, for I am thirsty. Es verlangt mich sehr, Sie wieder zu sehen, *G.*, I am very anxious to see you again. Es dunkelt schon, mich schläfert, *Heine*, it grows dark already, I feel sleepy. Mich gelüstete nicht nach dem theuern Lohn, *Sch.*, I should not desire the precious reward. Ich darf ihm nicht gestehen, was mir Böses schwant, *Sch.*, I dare not confess to him what evil I forebode. Mir grauet vor der Götter Rache, *Sch.*, I am afraid of the envy of the gods.

## Notes.

1. Phrases like the following are of a similar nature:—es ist mir wohl, or mir ist wohl, I feel well; mir ist übel, I feel sick; mir ist heiß, I feel hot, &c. The verbs fehlen, mangeln, gebrechen (with the preposition an), to want, and bedürfen, brauchen (with the genitive), to need, may also be classed with the above. For example:—Es fehlte an Wasser, water was wanting. Es mangelt an Geld, money is wanting. Es bedarf nur eines Wortes, only one word is needed.

2. The following verbs can be used only in the third person, but in the plural as well as the singular:—geschehen, to happen; gelingen, glücken, gerathen, to succeed, to prosper; mißlingen, mißglücken, mißrathen, to succeed ill. For example:—Es gelang mir, I succeeded. Es ist ihm nicht geglückt, he has not succeeded. Auch mir ist Alles wohl gerathen, *Sch.*, I also have succeeded in everything. Alle Unternehmungen sind ihm geglückt, he has been prosperous in all undertakings. Thaten sind geschehen, deeds have taken place.

3. The impersonal phrase es giebt, there is, there are, French *il y a*, is of very frequent occurrence with the real subject in the accusative case.

It expresses existence in an indefinite manner. For example:—*Es giebt Bücher, die beim ersten Blick Geist zu verrathen scheinen, im Grunde aber leerer, oberflächlicher Schäum sind, Hegner*, there are books which at first sight seem to betray spirit, but which are, in reality, mere superficial froth. *Es giebt edlere Früchte, als welche der Gaumen verlangt, Kr.*, there are nobler fruits than those which the palate desires. *Was giebt es hier?* what is the matter here? An existence of a definite kind, on the other hand, is expressed by *sein*; for example:—*Es ist ein Gott*, there is a God. *Es sind zwei Bücher, deren Lesung ich Ihnen empfehle*, there are two books which I recommend you to read.

§ 304. The passive voice of intransitive, and sometimes also of transitive verbs, is used impersonally when the activity is not conceived as proceeding from a definite subject. For example:—*Es wird gelaufen*, there is running (taking place). *Es wird in B. viel gespielt*, there is much gambling going on at B. *Es wurde viel davon geredet*, there was much talking about it. *Da ward getanzt und gesungen, G.*, there was dancing and singing (taking place).

The reflective form is used impersonally under similar circumstances; *e.g.*—*Es tanzt sich gut in diesem Zimmer*, it is pleasant to dance in this room. *Es reis't sich schlecht in diesem Lande*, there is bad travelling in this country. *Von eurer Fahrt kehrt sich's nicht immer wieder, Sch.*, from journeys like yours one does not always return.

## EXERCISE LV.

It lightens. It is going to (say, it will) freeze. It has been snowing for several hours.<sup>1</sup> Is it cold? It is very hot.<sup>2</sup> It is growing dark. It is too early. Give me a glass of lemonade,<sup>3</sup> for I am thirsty. I feel a little<sup>4</sup> cold. I feel sleepy, it must be late. I forebode nothing good. Wine is wanting. Provisions<sup>5</sup> were wanting. Only a few words are needed to set my mind at rest.<sup>6</sup> No large sum is needed. Will he succeed? We have not succeeded. You succeed in everything. There are people who read merely<sup>7</sup> that they may not be obliged to think.<sup>8</sup> Is there a human being<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For several hours, mehrere Stunden lang. <sup>2</sup> Hot, heiß. <sup>3</sup> Lemonade, Limonade. <sup>4</sup> A little, ein wenig. <sup>5</sup> Provisions, Vorräthe. <sup>6</sup> To set my mind at rest, um mich zu beruhigen. <sup>7</sup> Merely, bloß. <sup>8</sup> That they may not be obliged to think, damit sie nicht zu denken brauchen. <sup>9</sup> Being, Wesen, n.

whose happiness is complete?<sup>10</sup> There were better times. There is a man at<sup>11</sup> the door who wishes<sup>12</sup> to speak to (say, with) you. There is no bread in the house. There was little dancing, but much singing and playing. We came into a room where gambling<sup>13</sup> was *going on*. In London *there is* much stealing *going on*. There was no further<sup>14</sup> talking about it. It is pleasant to drive<sup>15</sup> in this carriage. It is pleasant to travel by railway.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>10</sup> Complete, vollkommen. <sup>11</sup> At, an. <sup>12</sup> To wish, wünschen. <sup>13</sup> To gamble, spielen. <sup>14</sup> No further, nicht weiter. <sup>15</sup> To drive, fahren. <sup>16</sup> By railway, auf der Eisenbahn.

### XXXI.

#### THE TENSES.

§ 305. Every verb has three *absolute* and three *relative tenses*; absolute tenses being those which represent a state or action as absolutely present, past, or future, that is, with regard to the present of the person speaking—Present, Perfect, Future; and relative tenses being those which represent a state or action as relatively present, past, or future, that is, in reference to some other occurrence—Imperfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

§ 306: The present expresses that which is going on at the time we are speaking—ich *schreibe*, I write; ein Haus *wird* gebaut, a house is being built. The German language has but this one form for the present, which expresses also the English 'I am writing,' and 'I do write.' In the same manner the imperfect ich *schrieb* answers to 'I was writing,' and 'I did write,' as well as to 'I wrote,' and the perfect ich *habe geschrieben*, to 'I have written,' and 'I have been writing;' and so on in every tense.

The present is also employed to express that which always is or happens; as—*Alles Leben geht dem Tode entgegen*, all life advances towards death.

#### Notes.

1. The present tense is frequently used for the imperfect, when a narrative is to be rendered more lively and impressive, past events being represented as occurring in the presence of the hearer or reader.

2. The present is also sometimes used instead of the future, when a future event is to be conceived as one which is sure to take place, or when the time of the action is pointed out in some other way; *e. g.*—*Es kommt die Zeit, B.*, the hour cometh. *Diesen Frevel bestraf ich, man soll es lange gedenken, G.*, I shall (to a certainty) punish this offence; it shall be long remembered. *Es liegt in guter Hand, gewissenhaft wird es zu seiner Zeit zurückgegeben, Sch.*, it lies in good hands, it will in due time be returned conscientiously. *In wenig Augenblicken steht sie vor euch, Sch.*, in a few moments she will stand in your presence.

§ 307. The perfect denotes past time absolutely, or, in other words, it represents an event simply as completed in regard to the present of the speaker—*ich habe geschrieben*, I have written; *ein Haus ist gebaut worden*, a house has been built. But often it denotes more particularly the *reality* of a completed fact; *e. g.*—*Mein ganzes Leben lang hab' ich den Bogen gehandhabt, Sch.*, all my life long I have handled the bow. *Die Richter haben ihr Schuldig ausgesprochen über euch, Sch.*, the judges have pronounced their 'Guilty' over you. *Um neun Uhr ist er gestorben, Sch.*, he died at nine o'clock. *Ist mein Urtheil gefällt? Es ist gefällt, Sch.*, is my sentence pronounced? It is pronounced. (See § 104.) In the latter sense the perfect is sometimes used even for the future perfect; *e. g.*—*Ein Opfer ist's, das alle Stimmen fordern; gewäh'r auch dieses, und der heut'ge Tag hat Englands Wohl auf immerdar gegründet, Sch.*, it is one victim which all voices demand; grant also this, and the present day has (*i. e.*, will have) for ever established England's weal. But the perfect in German is not used in historical narrative, like the perfect in Latin and the aorist in Greek.

§ 308. The future denotes a condition or action which is to take place at a future time in general, or at a particular moment in future time—*ich werde schreiben*, I shall write; *ich werde morgen schreiben*, I shall write to-morrow; *ein Haus wird gebaut werden*, a house will be built.

## Notes.

1. The periphrastic forms, 'I am going to write,' 'I was going to write,' denote near futurity, and are expressed by means of the auxiliary verb of mood *wollen*, with the infinitive, or by the phrase *im Begriff sein*, with the supine; as—*ich will (or wollte) schreiben; ich bin (or war) im Begriff zu schreiben*. Sometimes the adverb *eben*, just, is joined to these phrases, for the sake of perspicuity.

2. The future, as well as the future perfect, often indicates the

probability of the predicated action, represented as present in the former case, and as past in the latter. The adverbs *noch* or *wohl* are sometimes added, to bring out the sense more clearly. For example:—*Ich höre Jemand kommen; es wird der Wirth sein, Sch.*, I hear somebody coming; it is probably the landlord. *Ihr werdet (noch) nicht verlangen, daß ich meinen Eid brechen soll, G.*, you probably (or surely) do not desire me to break my oath. *Es wird was Andres wohl bedeutet haben, Sch.*, it probably meant something else.

§ 309. The imperfect denotes an action which is past to the speaker, but not completed in reference to another action performed at the same time—*ich schrieb einen Brief, als mein Freund eintrat*, I wrote or was writing a letter, as my friend entered; *das Haus wurde gebaut, als ein Feuer ausbrach*, the house was building, when a fire broke out. The imperfect is especially employed as the historical tense, because in historical narration past events are placed in relation to one another.

The imperfect is also used when a past event is represented as one of long duration, or as a custom; *e. g.*—*Ich gesteh's, daß ich die Hoffnung nährte, zwei edle Nationen zu vereinen, Sch.*, I confess that I entertained the hope of uniting two noble nations. *In der freien Natur lebten die Griechen des Jahres größten Theil mühelos dahin, Jacobs*, the Greeks passed the greatest part of the year without care out of doors.

§ 310. The pluperfect denotes an occurrence not only past to the speaker, but finished and past in reference to another occurrence likewise represented as past to the speaker—*ich hatte den Brief geschrieben, als mein Freund eintrat*, I had written the letter, as my friend entered; *das Haus war gebaut worden, ehe das Feuer ausbrach*, the house had been built, before the fire broke out.

§ 311. The future perfect denotes an event which is future to the speaker, but is conceived as finished in relation to another event likewise conceived as future to the speaker—*ich werde den Brief geschrieben haben, ehe mein Freund kommt*, I shall have written the letter, before my friend comes; *das Haus wird gebaut worden sein, ehe der Winter beginnt*, the house will be, or will have been, built before the winter sets in.

## EXERCISE LVI.

The gardener is pruning<sup>1</sup> the trees. The work is now being printed.<sup>2</sup> The sun rises in *the* east. I *shall* set out to-morrow for Lisbon.<sup>3</sup> After a few months I *shall* go to France. In a few minutes I shall be (say, am) back again.<sup>4</sup> Ask him only, I am convinced<sup>5</sup> he will do (say, does) it. The doctor has not come, he is (say, will be) probably<sup>6</sup> from home.<sup>7</sup> I have not seen the Cologne cathedral,<sup>8</sup> but I have been in St Peter's<sup>9</sup> at Rome.<sup>10</sup> Who has won the great prize?<sup>11</sup> When will the prisoner<sup>12</sup> be set at liberty?<sup>13</sup> He has already been set at liberty. The verdict<sup>14</sup> is pronounced.<sup>15</sup> Thy desk<sup>16</sup> is broken open.<sup>17</sup> Schiller died at Weimar. The university of Berlin was founded<sup>18</sup> in the year 1810 by Frederick William the Third. The old Germans lived in forests.<sup>19</sup> I am going to accompany<sup>20</sup> a friend to the railway-station.<sup>21</sup> I was just going to send<sup>22</sup> for you. We were preparing<sup>23</sup> for the journey, when<sup>24</sup> we received the news<sup>25</sup> of the sudden<sup>26</sup> death of a near relation.<sup>27</sup> The sun had risen, before<sup>28</sup> we reached<sup>29</sup> the top<sup>30</sup> of the mountain. I shall have left<sup>31</sup> London, before you get<sup>32</sup> there.<sup>33</sup> The repairs<sup>34</sup> will have been completed,<sup>35</sup> before the winter begins.

<sup>1</sup> To prune, beschneiden. <sup>2</sup> To print, drucken. <sup>3</sup> For Lisbon, nach Lissabon.  
<sup>4</sup> Back again, wieder hier. <sup>5</sup> Convinced, überzeugt. <sup>6</sup> Probably, wohl.  
<sup>7</sup> From home, verreist. <sup>8</sup> Cologne cathedral, Kölner Dom, m. (See § 176.)  
<sup>9</sup> St Peter's, die St. (pronounce Sanct) Petruskirche. <sup>10</sup> Rome, Rom.  
<sup>11</sup> Prize, Loos. <sup>12</sup> Prisoner, Gefangene. <sup>13</sup> To set at liberty, in Freiheit setzen.  
<sup>14</sup> Verdict, Urtheil, n. <sup>15</sup> To pronounce, fällen. <sup>16</sup> Desk, Bult.  
<sup>17</sup> To break open, aufbrechen. <sup>18</sup> To found, stiften. <sup>19</sup> Forest, Wald. <sup>20</sup> To accompany, begleiten.  
<sup>21</sup> Railway-station, Bahnhof. <sup>22</sup> To send for, holen lassen. <sup>23</sup> To prepare, sich anstellen, with the preposition zu. <sup>24</sup> When, als.  
<sup>25</sup> The news of . . . , die Nachricht von . . . <sup>26</sup> Sudden, plötzlich.  
<sup>27</sup> Relation, Verwandte. <sup>28</sup> Before, ehe. <sup>29</sup> To reach, erreichen. <sup>30</sup> Top, Gipfel.  
<sup>31</sup> To leave, verlassen. <sup>32</sup> To get, ankommen. <sup>33</sup> There, dort.  
<sup>34</sup> Repair, Reparatur. <sup>35</sup> To complete, beenden.

## XXXII.

### THE MOODS.

§ 312. The manner in which a state or action is conceived—namely, as real, or possible, or assumed, or necessary—is indicated by certain forms of the verb, called the *Moods*, which are four in number, and by auxiliary verbs, commonly termed the *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood*.

§ 313. The *Indicative Mood* is used to assert a real fact, either affirmatively or negatively; *e. g.*—*Er hat das Verbrechen begangen*, he has committed the crime. *Ich verstehe Sie nicht*, I do not understand you. It is also employed to put a question in a direct manner—*Hat er das Verbrechen begangen?* has he committed the crime? *Verstehen Sie mich nicht?* do you not understand me?

#### Note.

The indicative is sometimes used instead of the imperative, in order to make a command emphatic by representing it as already obeyed; *e. g.*—*Du trittst vor, Sch.*, step thou forward. *Ihr schweigt, bis man euch aufruft, Sch.*, be silent, until you are called upon.

§ 314. The *Conjunctive* expresses the mere possibility of a fact. It is used in principal as well as dependent clauses, but especially in the latter; namely—

1. In clauses containing an assertion or question of a person spoken of, which is quoted by the speaker—*Man sagt, daß der König todt sei*, it is said that the king is dead. *Er schrieb mir, daß er sich um eine Stelle beworben habe*, he wrote me that he had applied for a situation. *Ein Weiser ward gefragt, warum ihn Gott also gesegnet habe*, *Herder*, a wise man was asked, why God had thus blessed him. In clauses of this kind the verb is in the conjunctive of the present, or perfect, or future tense, according as the present, or perfect, or future would be used, if the quotation were made in a direct way. But if the verb of the principal clause is in the imperfect or pluperfect, the dependent clause containing the quotation has sometimes the conditional instead of the conjunctive; *e. g.*—*Er sagte, daß er sich um eine Stelle beworben hätte*, he said that he had applied for a

situation. The conjunction *daß*, which introduces an indirect quotation, is very often omitted; in such cases the dependent clause assumes the form of a direct principal one; as—*Sie sagt mir stets, ich sei ihr Feind, Sch.*, she always tells me that I am her enemy.

Note.

An indirect quotation is expressed by the indicative mood, when the assertion which it contains is considered as a real fact by the person making the statement—*Er selbst hat gesagt, daß er geirrt hat*, he himself has said that he has done wrong. Hence the indicative often occurs after the verbs *wissen*, to know; *sehen*, to see; *erkennen*, to perceive; *bekennen*, *gestehen*, to confess; *beweisen*, to prove, and others of a similar signification. For example:—*Er weiß, daß sein Leben in Gefahr ist*, he knows that his life is in danger. *Ihr sehet, wie mein Name mißbraucht wird, Sch.*, you see how my name is abused.

2. In clauses containing a wish, request, hope, apprehension, permission, advice, &c., the conjunctive is employed when the realisation of the wish, request, &c., is conceived as possible—*Willst du, daß es gleich vollzogen werde? Sch.*, dost thou wish that it be executed immediately? *Ich bitte, daß es treu vollzogen werde*, I request that it be faithfully executed. *Wir hoffen, daß das Unternehmen gelingen werde*, we hope that the undertaking will succeed. *Ich sei, gewährt mir die Bitte, in eurem Bunde der dritte, Sch.*, let me be, grant me the request, the third in your bond of friendship. *Gott rette seine Seele vor Verzweiflung! Sch.*, may God save his soul from despair! If the verb in the leading clause stands in the imperfect or pluperfect, the verb in the dependent clause is sometimes put in the conditional; *e.g.*—*Er fürchtete, daß die Sklaven sich gegen ihn verbänden*, or *verbinden würden*, he feared, lest the slaves should conspire against him.

3. The conjunctive is used in clauses expressing a purpose; *e.g.*—*Ziele gut, daß du den Apfel treffest, Sch.*, take a good aim, that you may hit the apple. *Und Niemand ist, der ihn vor Unglück schützt, Sch.*, and there is no one to protect him from injustice. The conditional is used, however, if the verb of the leading clause is in the imperfect or pluperfect—*Er eilte, damit er zu rechter Zeit ankäme*, he hastened, that he might arrive in proper time.

§ 315. The *Conditional Mood* expresses a state or action,



the reality of which is merely assumed. It occurs, like the conjunctive, both in principal and dependent clauses, especially—

1. In clauses stating a condition or supposition which is contrary to reality, and likewise in clauses containing the inference or conclusion drawn from such a condition. For example:—Wenn er gespart hätte, (so) wäre er jetzt ein reicher Mann, if he had saved, (then) he would now be a rich man (but in reality he did not save, and in consequence he is not a rich man). Wenn ich unwohl gewesen wäre, (so) wäre ich zu Haus geblieben, if I had been unwell, I should have stayed at home. The inference can also be expressed by the conditional of the two future tenses—Wenn er gespart hätte, so würde er jetzt ein reicher Mann sein. Wenn ich unwohl gewesen wäre, so würde ich zu Haus geblieben sein. Sometimes the condition is understood or contracted with the inference; e.g.—Ich hätte anders gehandelt, I should have acted differently (namely, if it had been my case). Ich hätte an seiner Stelle anders gehandelt, in his place (or, if I had been in his place) I should have acted differently. Or the condition may be stated in the form of an adversative clause—Ich hätte längst erfahren können, wer der fremde Herr ist; aber ich mag nicht, *Lessing*, I could long ago have learned who the strange gentleman is (namely, if I had chosen); but I do not wish it.

Note.

When a condition is stated without any regard as to whether it has been, or is likely to be, realised, it must be expressed by the indicative mood; e.g.—Wenn Frankreich meinen Bund verlangt, muß es auch meine Sorge mit mir theilen, *Sch.*, if France desires my alliance, she must also participate in my care. Wenn ihr zufrieden seid, so ist das Werk vollkommen, *G.*, if you are satisfied, then is my work perfect. When a condition involves the possibility of its fulfilment, it is also expressed by the indicative (often attended by the adverb etwa; perhaps), or by the auxiliary verb sollen; e.g.—Wenn er (etwa) fragt, or fragen sollte, if he should ask. The conjunctive is used, however, if a condition be introduced by the phrase es sei denn daß, or simply by the adverb denn (in a direct construction); e.g.—Ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich denn (or es sei denn daß du mich segnest), I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. But this mode of expression occurs very seldom.

2. In concessive clauses, the conditional is used only when the concession implies a merely assumed reality—Wenn der

Arzt auch gekommen wäre, so hätte er doch nicht helfen können, although the physician had come, yet he could not have helped (but he did not come). Concessive clauses have generally the indicative mood; as—Obgleich er krank ist, geht er doch täglich aus, although he is ill, yet he goes out daily. But sometimes concession is expressed by the conjunctive, or by the auxiliary verb *mögen*; as in—Ich will dich retten, kost' es tausend Leben, *Sch.*, I will save thee, should it cost a thousand lives. Was auch der Erfolg sei or sein mag, whatever be the result.

3. In optative clauses, the conditional implies that a wish is supposed to be, or to have been, realised, while in reality it is or was not; *e.g.*—O hätt' ich nie gelebt, um das zu schauen! *Sch.*, O that I had never lived to see this! Ich wollt', die Mutter käm' nach Haus! *G.*, I wish my mother would come home! The intensity of such a wish is strengthened by the adverb *doch*; *e.g.*—Läg' ich doch in deiner Erde, mein geliebtes Vaterland! *W. Müller*, O that I lay in thy earth, my beloved fatherland!

4. In adverbial clauses containing a comparison, and commencing with *als ob*, or *als wenn*, the conditional is used when the clause expresses an assumed fact, but the conjunctive when the fact is conceived as possible. For example:—Thun Sie, als wenn Sie zu uns gehörten, *Thümmel*, do as if you were one of ourselves. Es kam mir vor, als ob ein ehrwürdiger Greis vor mein Lager träte, *Engel*, it seemed to me, as if a venerable old man stepped to my couch. Er sieht aus, als ob er krank sei, he looks as if he were ill.

§ 316. The *Imperative* derives its name from its chief function—namely, that of expressing a command—but it is also employed to express a request, exhortation, or encouragement. It has a particular form only for the second person of the singular and plural:—Komm, folge mir, come (thou), follow (thou) me. Fasse Muth, take (thou) courage. Sprich, speak (ye). Verzeiht, pardon (ye). The pronoun of the second person is commonly omitted, except when, for the sake of contrast, the person to whom the command is directed must be made emphatic; *e.g.*—Leb' wohl, und weil ich fern bin, führe du mit klugem Sinn das

Regiment des Hauses, *Sch.*, farewell, and, whilst I am absent, lead thou with prudence the management of the house. *Sorgt ihr für euch, ich thu' was meines Amtes (ist), Sch.*, mind you your own business, I do what is my duty. The forms of the third person singular and the first and third persons plural are the same as in the conjunctive present, but in the inverted arrangement, the verb taking the first place; as—*Setz' er sich*, sit down. *Bermengen wir nicht zwei ganz unvereinbare Geschäfte, Sch.*, let us not mix up two quite irreconcilable affairs. *Leben Sie wohl*, fare (you) well. When the speaker includes himself in the exhortation, the auxiliary verb of mood *lassen* is generally employed, instead of the first person plural; as—*Läß uns gehen*, or *laßt uns gehen*, or *lassen Sie uns gehen*, let us go.

## Note.

The German language often makes use of elliptical sentences, to impart to a command or exhortation a greater emphasis by the shortness with which it is expressed. For example:—*Frisch an die Arbeit, Alter! Sch.*, quick to the work, old man! *Zurück! du rettst den Freund nicht mehr, Sch.*, back! thou savest the friend no more. *Deffnet die Gasse! Platz! Sch.*, clear the road! make way! The past participle is frequently employed in the same manner—*Nicht getrauert! mourn not! Fort! keine Zeit verloren! away! lose no time! Frisch, Kameraden, den Rappen gezäumt! Sch.*, quick, comrades, bridle the steed! The use of the indicative instead of the imperative, for the sake of emphasis, has been noticed in § 313, note.

## EXERCISE LVII.

Cæsar has been in Britain.<sup>1</sup> He does not act with caution.<sup>2</sup> Are you content? They say (say, one says) that the king has arrived. The gardener says that the tree is in blossom.<sup>3</sup> Do you doubt that he is right?<sup>4</sup> He alleges<sup>5</sup> that he has not been acquainted with the facts.<sup>6</sup> She has told us that her brother has inherited<sup>7</sup> a large fortune.<sup>8</sup> The ancients<sup>9</sup> were of [the] opinion that the earth formed<sup>10</sup> the centre<sup>11</sup> of our system.<sup>12</sup> I was asked in which year I was born. We exercise<sup>13</sup> here the holy right of hospitality<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Britain, Britannien. <sup>2</sup> Caution, Vorsicht. <sup>3</sup> To be in blossom, blühen. <sup>4</sup> To be right, Recht haben. <sup>5</sup> To allege, vorgeben. <sup>6</sup> Fact, Thatsache. <sup>7</sup> To inherit, erben. <sup>8</sup> Fortune, Vermögen, n. <sup>9</sup> The ancients, die Alten. <sup>10</sup> To form, bilden. <sup>11</sup> Centre, Mittelpunkt. <sup>12</sup> System, System, n. <sup>13</sup> To exercise, ausüben. <sup>14</sup> Right of hospitality, Gastrecht.

towards every one, without asking<sup>15</sup> who he is and why he comes. Elizabeth perceived<sup>16</sup> that her father was unhappy. Charles the Fifth knew<sup>17</sup> perfectly<sup>18</sup> that [the] commerce<sup>19</sup> is the strength<sup>20</sup> of [the] nations.<sup>21</sup> Confess<sup>22</sup> that I am happy. I am convinced<sup>23</sup> that he is my friend. Be it as<sup>24</sup> you wish. (*May*) God bless your efforts.<sup>25</sup> I wish that the child may soon recover.<sup>26</sup> Pray<sup>27</sup> to God that he may assist<sup>28</sup> you. Would that our benefactor<sup>29</sup> were still alive!<sup>30</sup> O that I had never seen him! You must take care<sup>31</sup> of yourself, that you may soon recover again. He disengaged<sup>32</sup> himself from all business,<sup>33</sup> that his health might be re-established.<sup>34</sup> The boy would learn more, if he were industrious. We could *do* much, if we acted in concert.<sup>35</sup> Were I not Alexander, [then] I would like<sup>36</sup> to be Diogenes. In her situation<sup>37</sup> I should not have done it. If we set<sup>38</sup> about it in earnest,<sup>39</sup> [then] the matter<sup>40</sup> will succeed. If thou dost right, [then] thou needst fear<sup>41</sup> no enemy. If he asks (or, should ask), [then] communicate<sup>42</sup> to him my intention.<sup>43</sup> Although<sup>44</sup> he had a thousand lives, yet<sup>45</sup> he could not save them. I do not believe a liar<sup>46</sup> (say, I believe no liar), although he speaks the truth. Do as if you were at home. He acts as if he were out of his senses.<sup>47</sup> All came to meet<sup>48</sup> the stranger and greeted<sup>49</sup> him with a frankness,<sup>50</sup> as if they had known and loved him for years.<sup>51</sup> He looks,<sup>52</sup> as if he had no good conscience.<sup>53</sup> Coachman,<sup>54</sup> drive on.<sup>55</sup> Say not all that<sup>56</sup>

<sup>15</sup> Without asking, ohne zu fragen. <sup>16</sup> To perceive, sehen. <sup>17</sup> To know, erkennen. <sup>18</sup> Perfectly, vollkommen. <sup>19</sup> Commerce, Handel. <sup>20</sup> Strength, Stärke. <sup>21</sup> Nation, Nation. <sup>22</sup> To confess, gestehen. <sup>23</sup> Convinced, überzeugt. <sup>24</sup> As, wie. <sup>25</sup> Effort, Bemühung. <sup>26</sup> To recover, genesen. <sup>27</sup> To pray to, bitten. <sup>28</sup> To assist, beistehen, with the dative. <sup>29</sup> Benefactor, Wohlthäter. <sup>30</sup> Alive, am Leben. <sup>31</sup> To take care of one's self, sich in Acht nehmen. <sup>32</sup> To disengage one's self, sich losmachen. <sup>33</sup> Business, Geschäft, pl. <sup>34</sup> To re-establish, wiederherstellen. <sup>35</sup> In concert, einmütig. <sup>36</sup> Then I would like to be Diogenes, so möchte ich wohl Diogenes sein. <sup>37</sup> In her situation, an ihrer Stelle. <sup>38</sup> To set about it, dazu greifen. <sup>39</sup> In earnest, ernstlich. <sup>40</sup> Matter, Sache. <sup>41</sup> Then thou needst fear . . . , so brauchst du . . . zu fürchten. <sup>42</sup> To communicate, mittheilen. <sup>43</sup> Intention, Vorhaben, n. <sup>44</sup> Although, wenn . . . auch. <sup>45</sup> Yet he could not save them, so würde er sie doch nicht retten können. <sup>46</sup> Liar, Lügner. Use the dative. <sup>47</sup> Out of his senses, von Sinnen. <sup>48</sup> To come to meet, entgegenkommen, with the dative. <sup>49</sup> To greet, begrüßen. <sup>50</sup> Frankness, Offenheit. <sup>51</sup> For years, Jahre lang. <sup>52</sup> To look, aussehen. <sup>53</sup> Conscience, Gewissen, n. <sup>54</sup> Coachman, Kutscher. <sup>55</sup> To drive on, zufahren. <sup>56</sup> That, was.

thou knowest, but know always what thou sayest. Children, be<sup>57</sup> attentive.<sup>58</sup> Fare (say, live) well. Good night, sleep well. Let us stand up. Go (say, thou goest) directly.<sup>59</sup>

<sup>57</sup> Use the second person plural. <sup>58</sup> Attentive, aufmerksam. <sup>59</sup> Directly, *sofort*.

## XXXIII.

## USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

§ 317. The auxiliary verbs of mood are used to express relations of possibility and necessity. They are seven in number; namely—*können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *trösten*, *lassen*. They are joined to the infinitive of verbs; but sometimes an infinitive must be understood, as in—*Wer kann das?* who can (do) that? *Soll er in's Gefängniß?* shall he (go) to prison? *Sie müssen über diesen Platz*, they must (pass) over this place. *Was will er?* what does he wish (to have)?

1. *Können*, can, to be able, expresses a natural possibility—that is, an ability by nature—*der Vogel kann fliegen*, the bird can fly.

2. *Dürfen*, dare, to be permitted, expresses a moral possibility—that is, liberty or permission by law or by the will of another person—*Jedermann darf Waffen tragen*, everybody is permitted to bear arms. *Ich darf nicht ausgehen*, I dare not, or am not permitted to, go out.

3. *Mögen*, may, to like, also denotes a moral possibility, but differs from *dürfen* in this, that it represents the possibility as depending on the will either of the speaker or of the subject—*Sie mögen den Brief lesen*, you may (I allow you to) read the letter. *Ich mag den Brief nicht lesen*, I do not like to read the letter. In the latter case, the adverb *gern* is sometimes joined to *mögen*, as in—*Ich mag nicht gern fragen*, I do not like to ask. In affirmative sentences, *gern* is often used without *mögen*, as in—*Ich lese gern*, I like to read.

## Note.

Besides these fundamental significations, *können*, *mögen*, and *dürfen* (the last, however, in the conditional only) express a supposed possibility—

that is, a supposition on the part of the speaker—*Er kann es vergessen haben*, he may (perhaps) have forgotten it. *Alles könnte zuletzt nur falsches Spiel sein, Sch.*, all may be in the end only false play. *Er mag ein braver Mann sein*, he may be an honest man. *Ich möchte schwer zu überreden sein*, it might be a difficult matter to persuade me. *Jetzt dürfte es zu spät sein*, now it would probably be too late. The conditional (*könnte, möchte, dürfte*) is here especially employed, if a person wishes to state his opinion modestly and with hesitation.

4. *Müssen*, must, to be obliged, denotes a natural as well as moral necessity—that is, a necessity which is founded upon a natural or moral law—*Der Mensch muß sterben*, man must die. *Kinder müssen ihren Aeltern gehorchen*, children must obey their parents.

When the moral necessity is negatived, *brauchen*, to need, is commonly used instead of *müssen*; *brauchen*, however, is not, like the real auxiliary verbs of mood, joined to the mere infinitive of verbs, but to the supine; *e. g.*—*Er braucht nicht zu arbeiten*, he need not work.

5. *Sollen*, shall, I am to . . . , expresses a moral necessity enforced by the will or command of another person—*Du sollst gehorchen*, thou shalt obey. *Er soll sogleich kommen*, he is to come directly. The conditional is used in the sense of the English 'ought'—*Auch dieses Letzte sollten wir versuchen, Sch.*, we ought to try also this last resource. *Er hätte sich vertheidigen sollen*, he ought to have defended himself.

6. *Wollen*, to will, to wish, to want, denotes a moral necessity which depends on the will of the subject—*Ich will sogleich gehen*, I will go directly. *Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will, Sch.*, he practises early, who wishes to become a master. It is also used for the English 'I am going to . . .' (See § 308, note 1.)

Note.

The last-mentioned three auxiliary verbs are also used to express a merely supposed or asserted necessity. *Müssen*, in particular, denotes an assertion proceeding from the judgment of the speaker—*Er muß krank sein*, he must be ill (judging from circumstances); *sollen* denotes an assertion of another person, in English 'they say,' 'it is said,' in Latin *dicitur*—*Er soll krank sein*, he is said to be ill; *wollen* denotes an assertion of the subject, in English 'he says, or pretends'—*Er will sich gesehen haben*, he says (or pretends) he has seen thee.

7. *Lassen* indicates either possibility or necessity. In the former sense, it answers to the English 'to let, allow, permit,

suffer;' as—Lassen Sie mich wissen, let me know. Er läßt sich betrügen, he suffers himself to be cheated. In the latter sense, it answers to the English 'to order, command, cause, make, get;' as—Er ließ die Ochsen aus dem Pfluge spannen, *Sch.*, he ordered the oxen to be taken from the plough. Ich lasse ein Haus bauen, I get a house built. Ich habe mich einschreiben lassen, I have caused my name to be enrolled.

§ 318. Relations of possibility and necessity are expressed also by the auxiliary verbs of tense *sein* and *haben*, when joined to the supine of verbs. For example:—Ich bin zu tadeln, I am to be blamed. Es war nicht zu ertragen, it was not to be endured. Kein Odem war in der ganzen Versammlung zu hören, *Sch.*, no breath was to be heard in the whole assembly. Ich habe noch einige Seiten zu schreiben, I have still a few pages to write. Von ihrem Sohne hatte die Königin von Schottland keine Hülfe zu erwarten, from her son the queen of Scotland had no help to expect. In a few phrases, the verb *stehen* with the supine is sometimes used instead of *sein*; e.g.—Es steht zu erwarten, it may be expected. Es steht zu hoffen, it is to be hoped. Es stand zu fürchten, it was to be feared. Es steht nicht zu ändern, it cannot be changed.

Note.

From the supine in this particular signification (*zu ertragen*, to be endured) the modern language has, by adding *nd* to it, formed a participle gerundive (*zu ertragend*), which has the same force as the Latin gerundive in *-ndus*, as *tolerandus*; for it denotes something which requires or deserves to be done. However, it is only used in the attributive connection with a substantive, and is declined like an adjective. For example:—Ein zu veressernder Fehler, an error which requires to be corrected; eine nicht zu ertragende Hitze, a heat which is not to be endured; ein nachzuahmendes Beispiel, an example which deserves to be imitated.

EXERCISE LVIII.

No room<sup>1</sup> was able to hold<sup>2</sup> so numerous<sup>3</sup> an assembly (say, a so numerous assembly). One cannot know everything. I cried as loud as I could. A small spark can kindle<sup>4</sup> a great fire. The merchant has not been able to

<sup>1</sup> Room, Zimmer. <sup>2</sup> To hold, fassen. <sup>3</sup> Numerous, zahlreich. <sup>4</sup> To kindle, anzünden.

satisfy<sup>5</sup> his creditors.<sup>6</sup> No person is permitted to pass<sup>7</sup> this way. May I read (that is, am I permitted to read) what you have written? I have not been permitted to go out for the last fortnight,<sup>8</sup> and shall be obliged to keep<sup>9</sup> the room for some days more.<sup>10</sup> You may break open<sup>11</sup> the letter. You may do it, if you can. Nobody likes to hear him. I like to enjoy the fresh air. It may perhaps<sup>12</sup> be as you say. He may be a good marksman.<sup>13</sup> He may be about<sup>14</sup> twenty years old. It might be difficult to determine.<sup>15</sup> Such<sup>16</sup> a good opportunity might not come again. All blossoms must perish,<sup>17</sup> that fruits may delight<sup>18</sup> us. The queen has the royal prerogative<sup>19</sup> of [the] pardon,<sup>20</sup> she must use<sup>21</sup> it. Our footman<sup>22</sup> was obliged to wait a whole hour. We need not hurry.<sup>23</sup> You need not come back.<sup>24</sup> Thou shalt come home. The boys are to learn everything. The emperor's armies shall not terrify<sup>25</sup> us. What was I to do in such a perplexity?<sup>26</sup> You ought to praise<sup>27</sup> God's gracious<sup>28</sup> providence.<sup>29</sup> He ought to have spoken out his mind.<sup>30</sup> I will make inquiry.<sup>31</sup> Who wishes to eat the kernel,<sup>32</sup> must crack<sup>33</sup> the nut. She must have been beautiful in her youth. This man is said to be an Irishman.<sup>34</sup> He is said to have emigrated to America. A chapel<sup>35</sup> stands at<sup>36</sup> the place<sup>37</sup> where Cicero pretends to have found the tomb<sup>38</sup> of [the] Archimedes. The mother of the minister<sup>39</sup> is a good talkative<sup>40</sup> old woman, who pretends to be a connoisseur.<sup>41</sup> Let me sleep a little. Let me know, what I have to expect. I suffered myself to be imposed upon.<sup>42</sup> They (say, one) did

<sup>5</sup> To satisfy, befriedigen. <sup>6</sup> Creditor, Gläubiger. <sup>7</sup> To pass, passieren.

<sup>8</sup> For the last fortnight, seit vierzehn Tagen. <sup>9</sup> To keep, hüten. <sup>10</sup> For some days more, noch einige Tage. <sup>11</sup> To break open, eröffnen. <sup>12</sup> Perhaps, wohl.

<sup>13</sup> Marksman, Schütze. <sup>14</sup> About, ungefähr. <sup>15</sup> To determine, bestimmen. <sup>16</sup> Such a good opportunity, eine so gute Gelegenheit. <sup>17</sup> To perish, vergehen.

<sup>18</sup> To delight, beglücken. <sup>19</sup> Prerogative, Recht. <sup>20</sup> Pardon, Gnade. <sup>21</sup> To use, brauchen. <sup>22</sup> Footman, Bediente. <sup>23</sup> To hurry, eilen.

<sup>24</sup> To come back, wiederkommen. <sup>25</sup> To terrify, schrecken. <sup>26</sup> Perplexity, Verlegenheit. <sup>27</sup> To praise, preisen. <sup>28</sup> Gracious, gnädig.

<sup>29</sup> Providence, Schickung, or Vorsehung. <sup>30</sup> To speak out one's mind, seine Meinung frei aussprechen. <sup>31</sup> To make inquiry, sich erkundigen. <sup>32</sup> Kernel, Kern.

<sup>33</sup> To crack, knacken. <sup>34</sup> Irishman, Irlander. <sup>35</sup> Chapel, Kapelle. <sup>36</sup> At, an. <sup>37</sup> Place, Ort. <sup>38</sup> Tomb, Grab. <sup>39</sup> Minister, Minister.

<sup>40</sup> Talkative, schwatzhaft. <sup>41</sup> Connoisseur, Kennerin. <sup>42</sup> To impose upon, betrügen.



not allow him to finish his speech.<sup>43</sup> The proprietor<sup>44</sup> has caused a new wall to be built round the farm.<sup>45</sup> I shall get [for myself<sup>46</sup>] a pair of shoes made. God is to be found everywhere. The man was nowhere to be seen. What is to be done? What have you to lose? I have to order<sup>47</sup> several things.<sup>48</sup> I have to speak with you. It is to be feared. It is not to be expected. It could not be changed. This is a circumstance *which deserves* to be noticed.<sup>49</sup> The errors *which require* to be corrected are marked<sup>50</sup> with red ink.

<sup>43</sup> To finish one's speech, zu Ende reden. <sup>44</sup> Proprietor, Eigenthümer.

<sup>45</sup> Farm, Mierhof. <sup>46</sup> For myself, mir. <sup>47</sup> To order, bestellen. <sup>48</sup> Several things, Einiges. <sup>49</sup> To notice, beachten. <sup>50</sup> To mark, bezeichnen.

## II. ATTRIBUTIVE COMBINATION.

### XXXIV.

#### GENERAL REMARKS.

§ 319. When a substantive representing a whole class or genus of persons or things is to be applied to a particular species, or to an individual comprised under such a class, the generic term requires to be qualified or individualised. That which qualifies a substantive is termed an *attribute* of the substantive. The members of the attributive combination, therefore, are the substantive and its attribute. The attributive combination generally results from a predicative combination; for what in the predicative combination is asserted of a person or thing in the form of a sentence, is in the attributive combination considered as an inherent or at least presupposed quality or property. A substantive and its attribute are not sufficient to form a sentence, as the attribute does not directly assert anything of a subject. When we say, for example, 'the horse is young,' the assertion is, 'is young;' but when we say, 'the young horse runs,' 'young' is the inherent quality of the horse, whilst the assertion made in regard to the 'young horse' is, that it 'runs.'

The attribute may be expressed :—

1. By an adjective, or adjective pronoun or numeral—*das junge Pferd*, the young horse ; *dieses Pferd*, this horse ; *mein Pferd*, my horse ; *drei Pferde*, three horses ; *alle Pferde*, all horses.

2. By a substantive, or adjective, or ordinal number in apposition—*Wilhelm der Eroberer*, William the Conqueror ; *Friedrich der Weise*, Frederick the Wise ; *Karl der Fünfte*, Charles the Fifth.

3. By a substantive in the genitive, or by a preposition with its case—*der Palast des Kaisers*, the palace of the emperor ; *die Königin von England*, the Queen of England ; *der Gedanke an Gott*, the thought of God.

4. By an adjective clause—*der Palast, welchen der Kaiser bewohnt*, the palace in which the emperor resides.

---

### XXXV.

#### THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE AND THE APPOSITION.

§ 320. The attributive adjective agrees with the substantive which it qualifies in gender, number, and case.

##### Note.

The exceptions to which this rule is subject have been stated in § 175, 1. Participles also, as has been observed on a previous occasion (§ 177), partake of the nature of adjectives, and are therefore, when used attributively, made to agree with the substantive. Some adjectives cannot be used in an attributive connection ; these have been enumerated in § 287, note 3.

§ 321. The attributive adjective generally precedes the substantive—*weiße Rosen*, white roses ; and if the adjective be accompanied by an adverb or by some other words tending to determine or modify its idea, such complementary words are placed before the adjective—*ein sehr reicher Mann*, a very rich man ; *eine vierzig Fuß lange Brücke*, a bridge forty feet long.

§ 322. In poetry, the attributive adjective often follows its substantive, and then it remains unchanged, unless the article of the substantive be repeated before it, in which case the adjective assumes the nature of an apposition (§ 326). For example:—*Da tritt aus seiner Kluft hervor der Räuber, groß und wild, U.*, then there stepped forth from his den the robber, tall and wild. *Mir gefällt der Herbst, der klare, Rückert*, I like the autumn, the clear one. However, in prose this mode of expression is rarely met with.

Note.

When the adjective *voll* has a complement, it usually follows the substantive, and the complement follows the adjective—*eine Schale voll reifer Weintrauben*, a dish full of ripe grapes.

§ 323. When an adjective qualifies a substantive which must be supplied from a preceding clause, it agrees with the substantive which is understood.

§ 324. A substantive is not, as in English, used for an attributive adjective; 'a gold watch,' therefore, is in German *eine goldne Uhr*; 'a silver cup,' *ein silberner Becher*; 'a silk gown,' *ein seidnes Kleid*.

§ 325. Pronouns and numerals are also used as attributes, but they do not, like adjectives, qualify a substantive in the proper sense of the word; they only individualise its meaning by placing it in some relation to the speaker—*mein Pferd*, my horse; *jenes Pferd*, that horse; *welches Pferd*, which horse; or by defining it as to number or quantity—*drei Pferde*, three horses; *viele Pferde*, many horses; *wenig Klugheit*, little prudence. They agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case. With numerals, however, the principle is not followed out to its full extent.

§ 326. When a substantive (or personal pronoun) is qualified by another substantive denoting the same person or thing, or by an adjective or ordinal number, with the view of explaining the substantive, or distinguishing a particular person or thing from others of the same appellation, the qualifying substantive, adjective, or ordinal number, stands in the relation of *apposition* to the substantive (or personal pronoun) which is qualified. The apposition agrees with the latter in gender, number, and case, and generally stands

after it. For example:—*Hat er den Kaiser, seinen Herrn, verrathen? Sch.*, has he betrayed the emperor his master? *Wir kommen erst aus Spanien zurück, dem schönen Land des Weins und der Gefänge, &c.*, we have just returned from Spain, the beautiful land of wine and songs. *Ich stehe, nur ein Jüngling, zwischen euch, den Vielerfahrenen, Sch.*, I, only a youth, stand between you, the much-experienced men. *Er wandte sich an Friedrich den Großen, he applied to Frederick the Great. Karl der Fünfte wurde zu Gent geboren, Charles the Fifth was born at Ghent. Diana, die Göttin der Jagd, Diana, the goddess of the chase.*

§ 327. When the apposition precedes the substantive which it qualifies, the former only is inflected—*die Macht des Kaisers Karl*, the power of the emperor Charles; *die Fabrik des Herrn Müller*, Mr Müller's factory. In this manner are used the words *der Monat*, the month; *die Stadt*, the town; *die Insel*, the island; *das Königreich*, the kingdom; *das Herzogthum*, the duchy; *die Provinz*, the province; *die Universität*, the university, and others of a similar meaning; e.g.—*der Monat Mai*, the month of May; *die Stadt Berlin*, the town of Berlin; *die Grenzen des Königreichs Preußen*, the frontiers of the kingdom of Prussia; *die Hauptstadt der Provinz Preußen*, the capital of the province of Prussia; *die Professoren der Universität Bonn*, the professors of the university of Bonn. But when the apposition, thus preceding a proper name and expressing a title or relationship, has no article, the proper name is inflected, not the apposition; as—*Professor Hermann's Werke*, Professor Hermann's works; *Kaiser Napoleon's Tod*, emperor Napoleon's death; *Schwester Sophiens Handschrift*, sister Sophy's handwriting. (See § 163.)

## EXERCISE LIX.

Pure wine is not poured into unclean vessels.<sup>1</sup> A good word costs no more than an angry<sup>2</sup> one. Strangely shaped<sup>3</sup> rugged<sup>4</sup> rocks bound<sup>5</sup> the prospect.<sup>6</sup> I require<sup>7</sup> a ribbon an

<sup>1</sup> Vessel, Gefäß. <sup>2</sup> Angry, böse. <sup>3</sup> Strangely shaped, seltsam gestaltet.  
<sup>4</sup> Rugged, schroff. <sup>5</sup> To bound, schließen. <sup>6</sup> Prospect, Aussicht, f. <sup>7</sup> To require, brauchen.

inch and a half<sup>8</sup> broad. The sun rising,<sup>9</sup> as it were,<sup>10</sup> out of the sea presented<sup>11</sup> a magnificent<sup>12</sup> spectacle.<sup>13</sup> The looks, free and unfettered,<sup>14</sup> roam<sup>15</sup> in unmeasured<sup>16</sup> spaces.<sup>17</sup> I shall send [to] you a basket<sup>18</sup> full of fine apricots.<sup>19</sup> The silver cup<sup>20</sup> bears (say, has) an appropriate<sup>21</sup> inscription.<sup>22</sup> He has exchanged<sup>23</sup> his gold watch for a silver *one*. Henry<sup>24</sup> the Fifth, king of England, the son of Henry the Fourth, married<sup>25</sup> Catherine,<sup>26</sup> the daughter of Charles the Sixth, king of France. Lewis<sup>27</sup> the Pious<sup>28</sup> was the third son of Charlemagne (say, of Charles the Great). Mr Müller's factory<sup>29</sup> is destroyed by fire.<sup>30</sup> The town of Berlin lies in a sandy plain.<sup>31</sup> Dresden is the capital<sup>32</sup> of the kingdom of Saxony.<sup>33</sup> The island of Madeira belongs<sup>34</sup> to the Portuguese.<sup>35</sup> Professor Neander's works are translated into English.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>8</sup> An inch and a half, anderthalb Zoll. <sup>9</sup> Rising, aufsteigend. <sup>10</sup> As it were, gleichsam. <sup>11</sup> To present, gewähren. <sup>12</sup> Magnificent, prächtig. <sup>13</sup> Spectacle, Anblick. <sup>14</sup> Unfettered, fessellos. <sup>15</sup> To roam, sich ergehen, or schweifen. <sup>16</sup> Unmeasured, ungemessen. <sup>17</sup> Space, Raum. <sup>18</sup> Basket, Korb. <sup>19</sup> Apricot, Aprikose. <sup>20</sup> Cup, Becher. <sup>21</sup> Appropriate, passend. <sup>22</sup> Inscription, Inschrift, f. <sup>23</sup> To exchange, vertauschen. <sup>24</sup> Henry, Heinrich. <sup>25</sup> To marry, heirathen. <sup>26</sup> Catherine, Katharina. <sup>27</sup> Lewis, Ludwig. <sup>28</sup> Pious, fromm. <sup>29</sup> Factory, Fabrik. <sup>30</sup> Destroyed by fire, abgebrannt. <sup>31</sup> Sandy plain, Sandebene. <sup>32</sup> Capital, Hauptstadt. <sup>33</sup> Saxony, Sachsen. <sup>34</sup> To belong, gehören. <sup>35</sup> The Portuguese, die Portugiesen. <sup>36</sup> Into English, in's Englische.

### XXXVI.

#### THE ATTRIBUTE EXPRESSED BY THE GENITIVE OR BY PREPOSITIONS.

§ 328. The attributive genitive stands in the same relation to the substantive which it qualifies, as the attributive adjective:—Das Haus des Vaters, the house of the father; des Kaisers Heer, the emperor's army, express much the same as das väterliche Haus, the paternal house; das kaiserliche Heer, the imperial army. The genitive, however, denotes a variety of relations, which cannot always be expressed by equivalent adjectives.

§ 329. The genitive denotes possession, whence it is often called the *possessive*:—*der Garten des Fürsten*, the prince's garden (the garden belongs to the prince); *die Krone des Königs*, the king's crown (the crown belongs to the king); *die Rinde des Baumes*, the bark of the tree (the bark belongs to the tree).

§ 330. The genitive is also used to denote a personal connection, such as affinity, friendship, enmity, power, subjection, &c.; *e.g.*—*der Sohn des Arztes*, the son of the physician; *ein Freund des Hauses*, a friend of the house; *der Bürgermeister der Stadt*, the mayor of the city; *ein Diener des Staats*, a servant of the state. •

Note.

This relation is sometimes expressed in English by the preposition 'to'—that is, by the dative; *e.g.*—physician to the king, a father to the poor, an enemy to finery. In German, the genitive is used instead—*Dort wohnt Stauffacher, ein Vater der Bedrängten, Sch.*, there lives Stauffacher, a father to the distressed.

§ 331. The genitive further denotes the agent or cause from which the action or effect implied in the governing substantive proceeds. This genitive is called the *subjective genitive*, because it corresponds with the *subject* of the predicative combination; *e.g.*—*das Licht der Sonne*, the light of the sun (the sun shines); *der Schatten des Baumes*, the shadow of the tree (the tree casts the shadow); *der Flug der Vögel*, the flight of birds (birds fly); *die Liebe der Eltern*, the love of parents (parents love their children).

§ 332. The genitive often denotes the object affected by the action implied in the governing substantive. This is called the *objective genitive*, because it stands in the same relation to its substantive in which the suffering *object* stands to a transitive verb; *e.g.*—*die Erziehung der Kinder*, the education of children (to educate children); *die Bedrückung eines Volkes*, the oppression of a people (to oppress a people); *der Haß der Tyrannei*, the hatred of tyranny (to hate tyranny); *die Furcht Gottes*, the fear of God (to fear God).

Notes.

1. If the governing substantive be derived from a verb which governs a preposition, the same preposition is employed to express the relation of the objective genitive; as—*der Gedanke an Gott*, the thought of God (ich

denke an Gott); die Furcht vor Gefahr, the fear of danger (ich fürchte mich vor Gefahr); die Freude über sein Glück, the joy at his good fortune (ich freue mich über sein Glück); Mangel an Geld, want of money (es mangelt an Geld). Sometimes a preposition is employed where the genitive would be equally admissible, but for the ambiguity it might possibly occasion; *e. g.*—die Liebe zu Gott, the love towards God; die Liebe zum Vaterlande, the love for one's country; der Haß gegen den Feind, the hatred which people bear to the enemy.

2. The supine of verbs is often used in an attributive sense, generally with the force of an objective genitive; *e. g.*—die Freude dich zu sehen, the pleasure of seeing thee; die Furcht etwas zu verlieren, the fear of losing something.

§ 333. The genitive, further, signifies the whole of which anything is a part. This is called the *partitive genitive*, and is governed by a pronoun, numeral, or an adjective in the superlative degree—Welcher meiner Freunde? which of my friends? Keiner seiner Gäste, none of his guests. Eine der merkwürdigsten Begebenheiten, one of the most remarkable events. Die jüngste meiner Schwestern, the youngest of my sisters. However, the preposition von (sometimes unter, among) is more frequently, and in certain cases solely, used to express this relation—Den möcht' ich wissen, der der treueste mir von Allen ist, die dieses Lager einschließt, *Sch.*, him I should like to know who is the most faithful to me of all whom this camp encloses. Der stärkste unter allen Tapfern, *F. Schlegel*, the strongest among all the brave. Von allen Wandrern aus dem deutschen Land . . . rühmt jeder euer gastlich Haus, *Sch.*, of all the travellers from Germany, every one praises your hospitable house. Einer von diesen Greisen näherte sich dem Prinzen, *Sch.*, one of these old men approached the prince. Wer von (or unter) uns? which of us?

§ 334. After substantives denoting measure, weight, or number, the partitive relation is expressed neither by the genitive nor by the preposition von; *e. g.*—ein Scheffel Weizen, a bushel of wheat; eine Flasche Wein, a bottle of wine; drei Pfund Reis, three pounds of rice; zwei Duzend Eier, two dozen of eggs; eine Herde Schafe, a flock of sheep; ein Regiment Soldaten, a regiment of soldiers; ein Buch Papier, a quire of paper; ein Morgen Land, an acre of land. The words Art, kind; Stück, piece; Haufen, heap; Menge, quantity, number, are used in the same manner. However, the name of a thing measured, weighed, or

numbered, is often put in the genitive, when accompanied by an attributive adjective; as—ein halbes Duzend guter Freunde, half a dozen of good friends; eine Menge reifer Äpfel, a great number of ripe apples.

§ 335. The preposition *von* is used instead of the genitive, in addition to the cases already mentioned—

1. Whenever the genitive cannot be pointed out either by inflection in the substantive itself, or by the article. This is especially the case with cardinal numbers, with proper names of towns and countries, and with the plural of common names wanting the article; *e.g.*—ein Vater von sechs Kindern, a father of six children; eine Frau von vierzig Jahren, a woman of forty years of age; die Lage von Paris, the situation of Paris; der Kolosß von Rhodus, the colossus of Rhodes. Man hat mich vor ein Gericht von Männern vorgefordert, *Sch.*, I have been summoned before a court of men. With names of towns and countries, and also with numerals, the relation of the genitive is often expressed by *von*, even though they be capable of inflection; as—der Kaiser von Oesterreich, the emperor of Austria; Herzog Johann von Schwaben, duke John of Suabia. (See § 159, with the note.)

2. Attributes expressing a quality, or the material of which a thing is made, always take the preposition *von*: as—ein Mann von Stande, a man of rank; ein Mann von edlem Sinne, a man of a noble mind; eine Familie von gutem Rufe, a family of good reputation; ein Geschäft von Wichtigkeit, a business of importance; ein Trinkgefäß von Holz, *U.*, a drinking-cup of wood; ein Monument von Marmor, a monument of marble.

#### EXERCISE LX.

The palace of the duke is a splendid edifice.<sup>1</sup> Strangers have no access<sup>2</sup> to the private apartments<sup>3</sup> of the king. The bark<sup>4</sup> of this tree is very rough.<sup>5</sup> The brothers of the count serve as officers in the Austrian<sup>6</sup> army. Where is the master<sup>7</sup> of the house? Doctor N. has been appointed<sup>8</sup> physician in ordinary<sup>9</sup> to the queen. Marius was an

<sup>1</sup> Edifice, Gebäude. <sup>2</sup> Access to, Zutritt zu. <sup>3</sup> Private apartment, Privatgemach. <sup>4</sup> Bark, Rinde. <sup>5</sup> Rough, rauß. <sup>6</sup> Austrian, östreichisch. <sup>7</sup> Master, Herr. <sup>8</sup> To appoint, ernennen. <sup>9</sup> Physician in ordinary, zum Leibarzt.



implacable<sup>10</sup> enemy to the nobles.<sup>11</sup> The industry of the pupil is the joy of the teacher. The hatred of his enemies has ruined<sup>12</sup> him. The light of the sun he will never see<sup>13</sup> again. The education<sup>14</sup> of [the] children requires<sup>15</sup> great care.<sup>16</sup> The author of the book is well known. The invention<sup>17</sup> of the art of printing<sup>18</sup> promoted<sup>19</sup> the reformation<sup>20</sup> of the Church. Romulus and Remus were according to the tradition<sup>21</sup> the founders<sup>22</sup> of the city of Rome. The thought of (say, on) the power<sup>23</sup> and love of God and the trust<sup>24</sup> in (say, upon) his wise providence will comfort<sup>25</sup> and sustain<sup>26</sup> thee in every affliction.<sup>27</sup> The thirst<sup>28</sup> after revenge<sup>29</sup> leads<sup>30</sup> often to bloody<sup>31</sup> crimes. He cherishes<sup>32</sup> the hope of soon regaining<sup>33</sup> (say, soon to regain) his freedom. I have the habit<sup>34</sup> of rising<sup>35</sup> (say, to rise) early. All friends of [the] king Richard despaired<sup>36</sup> of the possibility<sup>37</sup> of effecting<sup>38</sup> (say, to effect) his deliverance.<sup>39</sup> Which of my friends will in the hour of [the] need stand by my side?<sup>40</sup> He is one of the most singular<sup>41</sup> men. The oldest of my brothers studies at Oxford. The noblest of our actions arise<sup>42</sup> often from vanity.<sup>43</sup> Many of the prisoners are innocent.<sup>44</sup> Who of you understands astronomy?<sup>45</sup> Each of them will get<sup>46</sup> his share.<sup>47</sup> One of us must go on before.<sup>48</sup> An acre<sup>49</sup> of land adjoins<sup>50</sup> the cottage.<sup>51</sup> Since six weeks no drop<sup>52</sup> of rain has fallen. I require<sup>53</sup> one pound of rice, two pounds of raisins,<sup>54</sup> and twelve bottles of port-wine.<sup>55</sup> Can you lend [to] me a few sheets of packing-paper?<sup>56</sup> He is a man of

<sup>10</sup> Implacable, unverföhnlich. <sup>11</sup> Nobles, Patrizier. <sup>12</sup> To ruin, zu Grunde richten. <sup>13</sup> Use the present tense. <sup>14</sup> Education, Erziehung. <sup>15</sup> To require, erfordern. <sup>16</sup> Care, Sorgfalt, f. <sup>17</sup> Invention, Erfindung. <sup>18</sup> Art of printing, Buchdruckerkunst. <sup>19</sup> To promote, befördern. <sup>20</sup> Reformation, Reformation. <sup>21</sup> Tradition, Sage. <sup>22</sup> Founder, Erbauer. <sup>23</sup> Power, Macht. <sup>24</sup> Trust, Vertrauen, n. <sup>25</sup> To comfort, trösten. <sup>26</sup> To sustain, aufrecht erhalten. <sup>27</sup> Affliction, Trübsal, f. <sup>28</sup> Thirst, Durst. <sup>29</sup> Revenge, Rache. <sup>30</sup> To lead to, führen zu. <sup>31</sup> Bloody, blutig. <sup>32</sup> To cherish, hegen. <sup>33</sup> To regain, wieder gewinnen. <sup>34</sup> Habit, Gewohnheit. <sup>35</sup> To rise, aufstehen. <sup>36</sup> To despair of, verzweifeln an, with the dative. <sup>37</sup> Possibility, Möglichkeit. <sup>38</sup> To effect, erwirken. <sup>39</sup> Deliverance, Befreiung. <sup>40</sup> By my side, mit zur Seite. <sup>41</sup> Singular, seltener. <sup>42</sup> To arise from, entspringen aus. <sup>43</sup> Vanity, Eitelkeit. <sup>44</sup> Innocent, unschuldig. <sup>45</sup> Astronomy, Astronomie. <sup>46</sup> To get, bekommen. <sup>47</sup> Share, Antheil, m. <sup>48</sup> To go on before, vorangehen. <sup>49</sup> Acre, Morgen. <sup>50</sup> To adjoin, anstoßen an, with the accusative. <sup>51</sup> Cottage, Hütte. <sup>52</sup> Drop, Tropfen. <sup>53</sup> To require, brauchen. <sup>54</sup> Raisin, Rosine. <sup>55</sup> Port wine, Portwein. <sup>56</sup> Packing-paper, Packpapier.

about forty years *of age*. An old man<sup>57</sup> of noble stature<sup>58</sup> welcomed<sup>59</sup> us. The smell<sup>60</sup> of onions<sup>61</sup> is unpleasant. The siege<sup>62</sup> of Cadiz<sup>63</sup> lasted two years and a half. What is the name of (say, how is called<sup>64</sup>) the present<sup>65</sup> queen of Spain? A statue<sup>66</sup> of marble<sup>67</sup> has been erected<sup>68</sup> to the memory<sup>69</sup> of the poet.

<sup>57</sup> Old man, Greis. <sup>58</sup> Stature, Gestalt. <sup>59</sup> To welcome, bewillkommen. (See § 92.) <sup>60</sup> Smell, Geruch. <sup>61</sup> Onion, Zwiebel. <sup>62</sup> Siege, Belagerung. <sup>63</sup> Cadiz, Cádiz. <sup>64</sup> To be called, heißen. <sup>65</sup> Present, jetzig. <sup>66</sup> Statue, Bildsäule. <sup>67</sup> Marble, Marmor. <sup>68</sup> To erect, errichten. <sup>69</sup> To the memory, zum Gedächtniß.

### XXXVII.

#### THE ATTRIBUTE EXPRESSED BY A WHOLE CLAUSE.

§ 336. A substantive (or pronoun) is often qualified by a whole clause, which is called an *adjective clause*, because it supplies the place of an attributive adjective. It is generally introduced by a relative pronoun (*welcher, der*), or by a relative adverb (*wo, wann* or *wenn, wie*, also *als* or *da*), and has the nature of a dependent clause. The relative pronoun agrees with the substantive, which is supplied in the relative clause, in gender, number, and case. For example:—*Der Baum, welcher keine Frucht trägt, wird umgehauen*, the tree which bears no fruit (that is, the unfruitful tree) is cut down. *Und bald erkennt der Gastfreund in Corinth die Züge, die ihm theuer sind, A. W. Schlegel*, and soon the friend in Corinth recognises the features which are dear to him (or, the features dear to him). *Kennst du das Land, wo die Zitronen blühen? G.*, knowest thou the land where (or in which) the citrons bloom? *Um die Zeit, wenn die Trauben reifen*, about the time when (or at which) the grapes grow ripe. *Die Art, wie der Krieg geführt werden sollte, Sch.*, the manner how (or in which) the war was to be carried on. .

#### Notes.

1. The relative pronoun cannot be suppressed in German, as is often done in English—*das Buch, welches ich las, gehört der Leihbibliothek*, the book I was reading belongs to the circulating library. *Er war der beste Freund, den ich je gehabt habe*, he was the best friend I ever had. *Ich kenne den Herrn, mit dem Sie gingen*, I know the gentleman you walked with.

2. When in English the demonstrative pronoun 'such' is followed by the relative adverb 'as,' the latter is generally translated by a relative pronoun in German; *e. g.*—such books as contribute to comfort our heart, solche Bücher, die dazu beitragen, das Herz zu beruhigen. Sometimes *wie* is employed, but in this case the antecedent is referred to by a personal pronoun in the relative clause; *e. g.*—er zeigte eine Rührung, wie jener kleine Dienst sie gar nicht werth war, *Sch.*, he shewed an emotion, such as that little service did not at all deserve.

§ 337. An adjective clause may be abbreviated, the relative pronoun being omitted, and the predicate being expressed by an adjective or participle without any auxiliary verb. Such an abbreviation, however, commonly takes place only where the word, to which the adjective clause refers, stands in the nominative or accusative; *e. g.*—und diesen Ring noch bestimmt ich dir, geschmückt mit dem köstlichsten Edelgestein, *Sch.*, and I promise thee this ring besides, adorned with the most costly stones.

## EXERCISE LXI.

You speak of an affair which is very important. A man who is rich in<sup>1</sup> treasures is not always rich in virtues. Those princes to whom the laws are sacred are honoured by their subjects. In Frankfort *there* is still the house to be seen where Goethe was born. The month when the roses bloom is named the month of roses.<sup>2</sup> The manner in which (say, how) I was received<sup>3</sup> surprised<sup>4</sup> me. The trees [which] we have planted, the houses [which] we have built, the friends [whom] we love, bind<sup>5</sup> us to the earth, and imbitter<sup>6</sup> our parting<sup>7</sup> (say, to us the parting). This was a temptation<sup>8</sup> [which] I could not resist.<sup>9</sup> The duke's summer-palace,<sup>10</sup> surrounded<sup>11</sup> by a beautiful park,<sup>12</sup> lies on the bank of the river. The Goths,<sup>13</sup> driven<sup>14</sup> by the Huns<sup>15</sup> from (say, out of) their habitations,<sup>16</sup> sought [for themselves<sup>17</sup>] a new home.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In, an, with the dative. <sup>2</sup> Month of roses, Rosenmonat. <sup>3</sup> To receive, empfangen. <sup>4</sup> To surprise, überraschen. <sup>5</sup> To bind to, fesseln an, with the accusative. <sup>6</sup> To imbitter, verbittern. <sup>7</sup> Parting, Trennung. <sup>8</sup> Temptation, Versuchung. <sup>9</sup> To resist, widerstehen, with the dative. <sup>10</sup> Summer-palace, Sommerpalast. <sup>11</sup> Surrounded, umgeben. <sup>12</sup> Park, Park. <sup>13</sup> Goths, Gothen. <sup>14</sup> Driven, verdrängt. <sup>15</sup> Huns, Hunnen. <sup>16</sup> Habitation, Wohnst. <sup>17</sup> For themselves, sich. <sup>18</sup> Home, Heim.

### III. THE OBJECTIVE COMBINATION.

#### A. COMPLETING OBJECT.

#### XXXVIII.

#### THE OBJECT EXPRESSED BY CASES, OR PREPOSITIONS.

##### I. THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 338. All transitive verbs have their direct object in the accusative case. Many of them have, besides the direct object, an indirect or remote object, which stands in the dative, and generally indicates the person in regard to whom an action is performed. The English express the remote object by the preposition *to*, which, however, after a number of verbs is commonly omitted, so that the one object is in no way distinguished from the other. Of this description are, for example—*bieten*, to bid ; *borgen*, to borrow ; *bringen*, to bring ; *geben*, to give ; *gewähren*, to grant ; *gestatten*, *erlauben*, to permit ; *leihen*, to lend ; *leisten*, to afford ; *rathen*, to advise ; *versprechen*, to promise ; *zeigen*, to shew, and others.

Many verbs belong to this class in German, which have a different construction in English ; *e.g.*—*Jemandem etwas nehmen*, to take a thing from a person ; *rauben* or *entziehen*, to rob, deprive a person of something ; *verhehlen*, to conceal something from a person ; *verweisen*, to reprove one for something ; *vorrücken* or *vorwerfen*, to reproach one with something, &c. These, however, must be learned from observation.

The direct object of every transitive verb can be made the subject (nominative) of a passive construction. (See § 296.)

§ 339. With reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun always stands in the accusative—*ich erinnere mich*, I remember ; *du freuest dich*, thou rejoicest.

## Note.

The following have the reflective pronoun in the dative, but are not genuine reflective verbs, as they govern the accusative of the object:—

- sich anmaßen, to arrogate to one's self.  
 „ ausbitten, to request, crave.  
 „ denken, to fancy.  
 „ einbilden, to imagine.  
 „ herausnehmen, to dare, presume.  
 „ vornehmen, to intend, propose to one's self.  
 „ zueignen, } to appropriate to one's self.  
 „ aneignen, }

## § 340. The impersonal phrases—

- es hungert mich, I am hungry;    es verlangt mich, I am anxious;  
 „ durstet mich, I am thirsty;    „ gelüstet mich, I desire;  
 „ friert mich, I feel cold;    „ jammert mich, I pity;  
 „ fröstelt mich, I feel chilly;    „ schaudert mich, I shudder—  
 „ schläfert mich, I feel sleepy;

govern an accusative of the person in whom these feelings exist (mich); or, in other words, the real subject is expressed in the form of an object. (See § 303.)

§ 341. A few verbs govern two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; namely—

- lehren, to teach.  
 nennen, } to call, name.  
 heißen, }  
 schelten, } to call by a bad name.  
 schimpfen, }

For example:—Ich lehre ihn die deutsche Sprache, I teach him the German language. Man nennt die Ceder mit Recht den königlichen Baum, *Kr.*, one justly calls the cedar the kingly tree. So war sein Tod! ich heiß' ihn einen schönen, *Freiligrath*, such was his death! I call it a noble one.

## Note.

This double accusative is in a passive construction changed into a double nominative; as—die Ceder wird mit Recht der königliche Baum genannt, the cedar is justly called the kingly tree. But the passive of lehren does not admit of a double nominative; 'he was taught the German language,' therefore, cannot be translated by er wurde die deutsche Sprache gelehrt, but by changing the phrase, er wurde in der deutschen Sprache unterrichtet or unterwiesen. The verb heißen, when used in the signification 'to be called,' has also a double nominative.

§ 342. In English, as well as in the ancient languages, verbs of choosing, appointing, electing, declaring, considering, and the like, govern two accusatives; but the German language puts with verbs of a similar signification only the suffering object in the accusative, and expresses the office or dignity to which a person is appointed, or that which a person or thing is declared or considered to be, by the preposition *zu* with the dative (with *wählen*, *erwählen*, *erlesen*, to choose, to elect; *ernennen*, to name; *bestimmen*, *bestellen*, to appoint; *machen*, to make; *salben*, to anoint, &c.); or by the preposition *für* with the accusative (with *halten*, to take for; *erklären*, to declare; *achten*, to esteem; *ausgeben*, to give out, &c.); or by the conjunction *als* with the accusative, which in a passive construction is changed into the nominative (with *betrachten*, to consider; *ansetzen*, to look upon; *darstellen*, to represent, &c.) For example:—*Der König hat mich zum Kanzler des Reiches ernannt*, *G.*, the king has appointed me chancellor of the kingdom. *Der Zwang der Zeiten machte mich zu ihrem Gegner*, *Sch.*, the constraint of the time made me her adversary. *Ich habe Herrn Firmin immer für den redlichsten Mann gehalten*, *Sch.*, I have always considered Mr Firmin as the most honest man. *Ich muß es als eine Wohlthat ansehen*, I must consider it as a benefit.

§ 343. Many transitive verbs govern, besides the accusative, an adjective or participle expressing the result of the action in regard to the object. An adjective or participle so used is not inflected. For instance:—*Einen glücklich machen*, to make a person happy; *Einem das Herz schwer machen*, to make a person's heart heavy; *ein Stück Tuch schwarz färben*, to dye a piece of cloth black; *die Hände warm reiben*, to rub the hands warm; *das Glas voll gießen*, to pour the glass full; *den Becher leer trinken*, to empty the goblet; *den Hasen todt schießen*, to shoot the hare (dead). So also with the verbs *heißen*, *nennen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen* (§ 341), and with *preisen*, to praise; *wähnen*, to fancy; *träumen*, to dream; *erklären*, to declare; *bekennen*, to confess. For example:—*Man preist ihn glücklich*, one esteems him happy. *Ich will mich frei und glücklich träumen*, *Sch.*, I wish to dream myself free and happy. With the verbs *halten*, *ausgeben*, *annehmen*, *betrachten*, *ansetzen*, *erklären*, &c., the adjective is preceded by *für* or *als*. For example:—*Ich halte die Sache für abgemacht*, I consider

the matter as settled. *Er hat es für richtig erklärt, he has declared it to be correct. Ich betrachte dies als überflüssig, I consider this as superfluous.*

## Note.

Some intransitive verbs, as *gehen, stehen, schlafen, &c.*, assuming a reflexive form, are used in the same manner, the adjective expressing the effect of the action upon the subject; as, for instance—*ich gehe mich müde, I walk myself tired, I become tired with walking; ich habe mich steif gestanden, I have become stiff with standing; er hat sich dumm geschlafen, he has become stupid with sleeping.*

§ 344. Although the nature of intransitive verbs is such as to preclude their governing an accusative, still there are some which admit of being connected with that case in a peculiar way. In the first place, a substantive idea implied in the verb itself may be joined to it in the form of an object; as—*einen Kampf kämpfen, to fight a fight; einen Schlaf schlafen, to sleep a sleep; einen Traum träumen, to dream a dream.* Such an accusative, however, is generally qualified by an adjective, or in some other way; as—*ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft, I have fought a good fight; sie schlief den Zauberschlaf, she slept the magic sleep.* In the second place, we may attach in our mind to the subjective signification of the intransitive verb the idea of a transitive action, of an effecting, producing, or shewing, on which the accusative is made to depend; as—*Thränen weinen, to weep tears (that is, to produce or shed tears in weeping); Wuth schnauben, to breathe rage (that is, to shew rage in breathing); Zorn blicken, to look anger; Liebe lächeln, to smile love; Freude athmen, to breathe the joy.*

## Note.

*Sprechen* is sometimes used with the accusative of the person, if it means quite generally 'to speak with a person,' without mentioning any object; e. g.—*Sie habt mich sprechen wollen, Sch., you wished to speak to me. Sprach er nicht Einige in'sheim? Sch., did he not speak to some privately?*

§ 345. The accusative expresses a measure, weight, age, or value, after *wiegen, to weigh; gelten, to be worth; kosten, to cost*; and with the adjectives *schwer, heavy; groß, tall; lang, long; breit, broad; tief, deep; hoch, high; weit, wide; alt, old.* For example:—*Das Paket wiegt zehn Pfund, the parcel weighs ten pounds. Die Mauer ist zwanzig Fuß*

hoch, the wall is twenty feet high. Das Mädchen ist zwölf Jahr alt, the girl is twelve years old.

## EXERCISE LXII.

The surgeon<sup>1</sup> dresses<sup>2</sup> the wounds. Robbers have plundered<sup>3</sup> the traveller. Waiter,<sup>4</sup> bring me a bottle of wine. I have given the guide a gratuity.<sup>5</sup> Will you do me a favour?<sup>6</sup> Has he granted you your request?<sup>7</sup> We have shewn the officer<sup>8</sup> our passports.<sup>9</sup> One has taken from him all that he possessed. He would not have concealed anything from you. I have reproved him for his impudence.<sup>10</sup> I should have reproached him with his bad<sup>11</sup> manners.<sup>12</sup> He arrogates a right which does not belong<sup>13</sup> to him. May I request your address?<sup>14</sup> Will he be able to execute<sup>15</sup> what he has proposed to himself? An honest<sup>16</sup> man does not appropriate to himself what does not belong<sup>17</sup> to him. Experience<sup>18</sup> will teach thee prudence.<sup>19</sup> One called Attila the scourge<sup>20</sup> of God. John<sup>21</sup> was called the Baptist.<sup>22</sup> Who has made you the judge<sup>23</sup> of my actions? [The] want<sup>24</sup> makes many a one a thief. The king has appointed him ambassador<sup>25</sup> to the<sup>26</sup> Russian court. My friend has been elected president<sup>27</sup> of the society. I take him for an actor.<sup>28</sup> I esteem it an honour. I declare him to be an impostor.<sup>29</sup> We consider this as a good omen.<sup>30</sup> I look upon it as a great benefit.<sup>31</sup> Hypocrites<sup>32</sup> are always to be considered as the most dangerous men. The news has made me happy. The painter has painted<sup>33</sup> the door green. Pour the glass full. A stroke of the pen<sup>34</sup> can make thee a nobleman;<sup>35</sup> a noble man (say, noble<sup>36</sup>) no emperor can

<sup>1</sup> Surgeon, Wundarzt. <sup>2</sup> To dress, verbinden. <sup>3</sup> To plunder, plündern. <sup>4</sup> Waiter, Kellner. <sup>5</sup> Gratuity, Trinkgeld. <sup>6</sup> Favour, Gefallen. <sup>7</sup> Request, Bitte. <sup>8</sup> Officer, Beamte. <sup>9</sup> Passport, Paß. <sup>10</sup> Impudence, Unverschämtheit. <sup>11</sup> Bad, schlecht. <sup>12</sup> Manner, Sitte. <sup>13</sup> To belong, here zustehen. <sup>14</sup> Address, Adresse. <sup>15</sup> To execute, ausführen. <sup>16</sup> Honest, ehrlich. <sup>17</sup> To belong, here gehören. <sup>18</sup> Experience, Erfahrung. <sup>19</sup> Prudence, Klugheit. <sup>20</sup> Scourge, Geißel, f. <sup>21</sup> John, Johannes. <sup>22</sup> Baptist, Täufer. <sup>23</sup> Judge, Richter. <sup>24</sup> Want, Noth. <sup>25</sup> Ambassador, Gesandte. <sup>26</sup> To the, am. <sup>27</sup> President, Vorsteher. <sup>28</sup> Actor, Schauspieler. <sup>29</sup> Impostor, Betrüger. <sup>30</sup> Omen, Vorbedeutung. <sup>31</sup> Benefit, Wohlthat. <sup>32</sup> Hypocrite, Heuchler. <sup>33</sup> To paint, anstreichen. <sup>34</sup> Stroke of the pen, Federstrich. <sup>35</sup> A nobleman, adelig (adjective). <sup>36</sup> Noble, edel.



make thee. We esteem ourselves happy. He fancies himself very wise. I do not think him guilty.<sup>37</sup> He considers it as quite unnecessary.<sup>38</sup> I have become tired with running. He becomes stupid with sleeping. I have fought a good fight. She sleeps the sleep of death.<sup>39</sup> She has wept many bitter tears. The parcel weighs nine pounds. The watch has cost twenty-four guineas.<sup>40</sup> The bridge is a hundred feet long and thirty feet broad. The woman is fifty-five years old.

<sup>37</sup> Guilty, schuldig. <sup>38</sup> Unnecessary, unnöthig. <sup>39</sup> Sleep of death, Todes Schlaf.

<sup>40</sup> Guinea, Guinee.

## II. THE GENITIVE.

§ 346. The following transitive verbs govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing :—

anklagen, to accuse.	überheben, to exempt or excuse
belehren (eines Bessern), to set	from.
right, to correct.	verweisen (des Landes), to
berauben, to deprive.	banish.
beschuldigen, to charge with.	würdigen, to deign.
entheben, to exempt from.	zeigen, to accuse.
entledigen, to free from.	

With the following, either the genitive or the preposition *von* is used :—

entbinden, } to release from.	entwöhnen, to disuse.
entladen, }	losprechen, to acquit.
entblößen, to strip.	überführen, to convict.
entlassen, to dismiss.	überzeugen, to convince.
entkleiden, to divest.	versichern, to assure.
entsetzen, to depose.	

For example :—Man klagte ihn des Hochverraths an, they accused him of high treason. Galilei war bereits seines edelsten Sinnes beraubt, *Engel*, Galileo was then already deprived of his noblest sense. Einer großen Furcht sind wir entledigt, *Sch.*, we are freed from a great fear. Wir waren aller Mittel (or von allen Mitteln) entblößt, we were stripped

of all means. Ich bin von seiner Unschuld überzeugt, *Sch.*, I am convinced of his innocence.

§ 347. A number of reflective verbs govern the genitive of the thing, the reflective pronoun being in the accusative; namely—

sich annehmen, to interest one's self for.	sich erfreuen, to enjoy ( <i>e.g.</i> —good health).
„ bedienen, to make use of.	„ erinnern, to remember.
„ besleihen, } to apply one's	„ erlauben, to dare.
„ besleißigen, } self to.	„ erwehren, to refrain from.
„ begeben, to give up.	„ freuen, to rejoice.
„ bemächtigen, to take possession of.	„ getrösten, to console one's self with.
„ bemeistern, to seize.	„ rühmen, to boast.
„ bescheiden, to acquiesce in.	„ schämen, to be ashamed.
„ besinnen, to recollect.	„ unterfangen, } to dare.
„ entäußern, to abstain from, to renounce.	„ unterwinden, }
„ enthalten, to abstain from.	„ vernessen, }
„ entschlagen, to get rid of,	„ versehen, to be aware of, to expect.
— to banish ( <i>e.g.</i> —cares).	„ wehren, to defend one's self.
„ entsinnen, to recollect.	„ weigern, to refuse.
„ erbarmen, to take pity on.	„ wundern, to wonder.
„ erschrecken, to presume.	

Sich erbarmen, freuen, schämen, wundern, often take the preposition über with the accusative; sich besinnen sometimes takes auf with the accusative, also sich freuen, in the signification 'to anticipate a pleasure.' Examples:—Wohl dem, der sich des Dürftigen annimmt, *B.*, blessed is he that considereth the poor. Ich erinnere mich noch aller Umstände, I still remember all circumstances. Die Lastträger warten, bis sich Jemand ihrer bedienen will, *G.*, the porters wait, until some one wishes to make use of them. Sie werden sich des Streits begeben, *Sch.*, they will give up the contest. Dieser Gedanken entschlag' ich mich leicht, *G.*, I easily banish these thoughts. Du rühmst dich deines sichern Blicks, *Sch.*, thou boastest of thy sure eye. Ich wundre mich über seine Geduld, I wonder at his patience. Erbarme dich unser, or über uns, have mercy upon us.

§ 348. A few impersonal expressions have their object in the genitive ; namely—

es gelüftet mich, I desire.	es reuet mich, I repent.
" jammert mich, I pity.	" lohnt sich, it is worth.

With *es gelüftet mich*, the preposition *nach* is also used. For example :—*Ich jammerte des Volkes, B.*, he was moved with compassion on the multitudes. *Es lohnt sich kaum der Mühe*, it is scarcely worth the trouble.

§ 349. The following intransitive verbs govern the genitive :—

achten, to attend to.	genießen, to enjoy.
Nicht haben, to heed.	harren, to wait for.
bedürfen, to need.	lachen, to laugh at.
begehren, to desire.	pflegen, to take care of.
brauchen, to want.	schonen, to spare.
entbehren, to do without.	spotten, to mock at.
entrathen, to dispense with.	versehlen, to miss.
ermangeln, to be without.	vergeffen, to forget.
erwähnen, to mention.	wahren, }
denken, }	wahrnehmen, } to take care of.
gedenken, }	warten, to attend to.
to remember.	

In common speech, however, the accusative is more generally used with the verbs *bedürfen*, *begehren*, *brauchen*, *entbehren*, *erwähnen*, *genießen*, *pflegen*, *schonen*, *versehlen*, *vergeffen*, *wahrnehmen* ; the preposition *auf* with the accusative after *achten*, *Nicht haben*, and *harren* ; *über* with the accusative after *lachen* and *spotten* ; *an* with the accusative after *denken*. Examples :—*Denket nicht des Irrthums meiner Jugend, Sch.*, oh think not of the error of my youth. *Genieße nun des Werks, das uns erfreut, G.*, enjoy now the work which delights us. *Ihrer Dienste kann ich entrathen, Sch.*, I can dispense with their services. *Das Wenige, dessen der Mensch bedarf, giebt das Land fast überall im Ueberfluß, Leo*, the little which man necessarily requires, the country (Italy) yields almost everywhere in abundance. *Er pflegt seiner Gesundheit*, he takes care of his health.

Note.

The genitive occurs also in some peculiar expressions ; as—*ich lebe der Hoffnung*, I live in the hope ; *Hungers sterben*, to die of hunger ; *eines*

gewaltsamen Todes sterben, to die a violent death; des Todes verbleichen, to expire, and others. When the verb sein is connected with the genitive, it signifies possession, 'to belong to;' e. g.—Wessen ist das Haus?—Das Haus ist meines Herrn des Kaisers, *Sch.*, whose is that house?—The house belongs to my lord the emperor. Die Erde ist des Herrn, *B.*, the earth is the Lord's.

§ 350. The following adjectives govern the genitive:—

ansichtig (werden), getting sight of.	ledig, void.
bedürftig, in want of.	leer, empty.
bedürftig, in need of.	loß, free, quit.
bewußt, conscious.	mächtig, master of.
eingedenk, mindful.	müde, tired.
fähig, capable.	fatt, satiated, sick of.
froh, glad.	schuldig, guilty.
gewahr, aware, sensible.	theilhaft, } partaking in.
gewärtig, in expectation of.	theilhaftig, }
gewiß, certain.	überdrüssig, weary of.
gewohnt, accustomed.	verdächtig, suspected.
habhaft (werden), getting possession of.	verlustig, losing, forfeiting.
fundig, acquainted with a thing.	voll, full.
	werth, worth.
	würdig, worthy.

With gewahr, gewohnt, loß, müde, satt, voll, and werth, the accusative is now more commonly employed; the accusative is also in use with ansichtig; the preposition von with gewiß, leer, and voll; zu with fähig; über with the accusative with froh. Examples:—Als er mein ansichtig ward, *Sch.*, when he got sight of me. Des Gefühls nicht mächtig, stand ich da, *Sch.*, no longer master of my feelings, I stood there. Ich bin des Wegs nicht fundig, *Sch.*, I am not acquainted with the road. Es ist nicht der Rede werth, it is not worth mentioning. Das Buch ist keinen Thaler werth, the book is not worth a dollar. Die Stube ist voll Rauch, the room is full of smoke. Ich bin es nicht gewohnt, I am not accustomed to it. Voll von Feinden ist die Welt, *Sch.*, the world is full of enemies.

Note.

Voll is used with the accusative only when the object has no attribute; as—ein Becher voll Wein, a cup full of wine. Voll Unwissen sprang ich auf, *Lessing*, full of anger I sprang up. In this case voll often takes the

termination *er*; as—voller Freude, full of joy; mit Augen voller Bohn, with eyes full of anger. When the object has an attribute, the genitive must be used; as—des Pilgers Seele war voll süßer Hoffnung, *Kr.*, the pilgrim's soul was full of sweet hope.

## EXERCISE LXIII.

The man is accused of [the] high treason.<sup>1</sup> Of what sin does thy conscience accuse thee? The panel<sup>2</sup> has been acquitted of the murder. We are not yet deprived of all means. [The] nature does not suffer<sup>3</sup> herself to be deprived of the veil.<sup>4</sup> I relieve<sup>5</sup> you from all obligations<sup>6</sup> towards me. Are you convinced of his innocence? I assure you of my friendship. Make use of thy power.<sup>7</sup> My brother applies himself to the study<sup>8</sup> of the ancient languages. I give up all my claims.<sup>9</sup> One took possession of her papers.<sup>10</sup> You ought to abstain from [the] wine. Banish all cares.<sup>11</sup> I remember no longer<sup>12</sup> the particular<sup>13</sup> circumstances. I could scarcely refrain from [the] tears. A truly<sup>14</sup> noble-minded<sup>15</sup> man does not boast of his good actions. I am not ashamed of his intercourse.<sup>16</sup> Thou needest<sup>17</sup> not be ashamed of thy choice. How can I dare<sup>18</sup> such a deed? He wondered not a little<sup>19</sup> at my speedy<sup>20</sup> return. Perhaps it is not worth the trouble. [The] woman<sup>21</sup> needs a protector.<sup>22</sup> Do you need our assistance? I can dispense with his services. This hour he and his children's children<sup>23</sup> will remember. He enjoys his victory.<sup>24</sup> Spare him. Oh take care<sup>25</sup> of the hour, before it passes away.<sup>26</sup> They laughed at him. They mock at me. He is [to himself] conscious of his guilt. Be mindful of thy promise. [The] most losses<sup>27</sup> are capable of a compensation.<sup>28</sup> Be every hour in expectation of the command.<sup>29</sup> He has made himself suspected of [an] embezzle-

<sup>1</sup> High treason, Hochverrath. <sup>2</sup> Panel, Beflagte. <sup>3</sup> To suffer, lassen. <sup>4</sup> Veil, Schleier. <sup>5</sup> To relieve, entbinden. <sup>6</sup> Obligation, Verpflichtung. <sup>7</sup> Power, Macht. <sup>8</sup> Study, Studium. <sup>9</sup> Claim, Anspruch. <sup>10</sup> Papers, Papiere. <sup>11</sup> Care, Sorge. <sup>12</sup> No longer, nicht mehr. <sup>13</sup> Particular, besonder. <sup>14</sup> Truly, wahrhaft. <sup>15</sup> Noble-minded, edel. <sup>16</sup> Intercourse, Umgang. <sup>17</sup> To need, brauchen, with the supine. (See § 317, 4.) <sup>18</sup> To dare, sich unterwinden. <sup>19</sup> Not a little, nicht wenig. <sup>20</sup> Speedy, schnell. <sup>21</sup> Woman, Weib, n. <sup>22</sup> Protector, Beschützer. <sup>23</sup> Children's children, Kindeskinde. <sup>24</sup> Victory, Sieg. <sup>25</sup> Use the second person singular. <sup>26</sup> To pass away, entschlipfen. <sup>27</sup> Loss, Verlust, m. <sup>28</sup> Compensation, Ersatz. <sup>29</sup> Command, Befehl.

ment.<sup>30</sup> He is guilty of a heinous<sup>31</sup> crime. Homer's works are worthy of [the] admiration.<sup>32</sup> I am quite certain of it. The unhappy one was tired of [the] life. I am tired *of* it. I am not accustomed *to* it. I have not become sensible *of* it. The book is not worth a florin.<sup>33</sup> Hand<sup>34</sup> me a bowl<sup>35</sup> full *of* milk. Full *of* joy he ran up to me.<sup>36</sup> The dish is full of white grapes.

<sup>30</sup> Embezzlement, Unterschleif. <sup>31</sup> Heinous, abſcheulich. <sup>32</sup> Admiration, Bewunderung. <sup>33</sup> Florin, Gulden. <sup>34</sup> To hand, reichen. <sup>35</sup> Bowl, Schale.  
<sup>36</sup> Up to me, auf mich zu.

### III. THE DATIVE.

§ 351. All transitive verbs which, besides the direct object of the thing acted upon, require or admit of an indirect or remote object of the person, have the latter in the dative case. (See § 338.)

§ 352. The dative is further governed by the following simple intransitive verbs :—

antworten (Jemandem), to	gleichen, to resemble.
answer (a person).	großen, to bear a grudge.
danken, to thank.	helfen, to help.
dienen, to serve.	huldigen, to do homage.
drohen, to threaten.	hören, to listen to.
fehlen, to be wanting.	mangeln, to be wanting.
fluchen, to curse.	nahen, to come near.
folgen, to follow.	nützen, to be useful.
fröhnen, to humour.	schaden, to injure.
gebühren, to be due.	scheinen, to seem.
gefallen, to please.	schmeicheln, to flatter.
mißfallen, to displease.	stehen, to suit, become.
gehören, to belong.	stern, to put a stop to (e. g.—an abuse).
gehören, to obey.	trauen, to trust.
gelingen, } to succeed.	troßen, to defy.
glücken, }	weichen, to yield.
genügen, to suffice.	ziemen, } to be proper, to
gereichen, to tend, redound to.	geziemen, } become.

Examples :—Sind das unsere Freunde, die unsern Vastern

dienen? *Sch.*, are those our friends, who administer to our vices? *Gefährtin meiner Stimme, komm, folge mir in's Schattenreich, A. W. Schlegel*, companion of my voice, come, follow me into the realm of shades. Dem Muthigen hilft Gott, *Sch.*, God helps the courageous. Keine Kraft vermag der Zeit zu trotzen, *Platen*, no power can bid defiance to time.

§ 353. A great number of compound verbs govern the dative case, especially many compounded with the inseparable prefixes *er, ent, wider*, and with the separable prefixes *an, auf, bei, entgegen, nach, vor, voran, voraus, zu, zuvor*. The following may serve as specimens:—*erliegen*, to succumb; *entgehen*, to escape; *widerstehen*, to resist; *anliegen*, to entreat; *auslauern*, to waylay; *beistehen*, to assist; *entgegengehen*, to go to meet; *nachgeben*, to yield; *vorstehen*, to superintend, preside; *vorangehen*, to precede; *zuhören*, to listen to; *zuvorkommen*, to prevent, &c. Also the following three with the prefix *be*:—*begegnen*, to meet; *behagen*, to please (*e.g.*—*es behagt mir*); *bekommen*, to agree with (*e.g.*—*es bekommt mir nicht*). Examples:—*Dem seelenlosen Kiesel entspringt der Funke, Platen*, from the lifeless flint springs forth the spark. *Setzt dem Mörder nach, Sch.*, pursue the murderer. *Ich fühle es, daß ich der Lehre von der Unsterblichkeit nicht widersprechen kann, Mendelssohn*, I feel that I cannot contradict the doctrine of immortality. *Ich schrieb es meiner Stimmung zu, G.*, I ascribed it to my frame of mind.

§ 354. The dative is further employed with many compound verbal expressions which have the force of simple verbs; as—*leid thun*, to cause sorrow; *wehe thun*, to give pain; *wohl thun*, to benefit; *kund thun*, to make known; *Hohn sprechen*, to scorn; *zu Hülfe kommen*, to come to one's aid; *das Wort reden*, to excuse; *den Hof machen*, to pay court; *zu Theil werden* (or simply *werden*), to fall to one's share, and others. Examples:—*Es thut mir leid um ihn*, I feel sorry for him. *Wer wird uns zu Hülfe kommen?* who will come to our aid? *Ihr ward der Schönheit eitleß Gut zu Theil, Sch.*, the vain possession of beauty has fallen to her share.

§ 255. The following impersonal phrases govern the dative

of the person in whom the feeling exists which is implied in the verb :—

eß ahnt mir, I forebode.	eß eßelt mir, I feel disgusted.
„ dünkt mir, }	„ schwindelt mir, I feel giddy.
„ dünkt mir, } methinks.	„ träumt mir, I dream.
„ grauet mir, I am afraid.	„ schwant mir, my heart mis-
„ bangt mir, I feel anxious.	gives me.

With eß dünkt and eß dünkt the accusative is also used. (See § 303.)

§ 356. A large number of adjectives govern the dative, as in English ; especially the following :—

ähnlich, similar.	gnädig, gracious.
angemessen, appropriate.	heilsam, salutary.
angenehm, agreeable.	hold, favourable.
bekannt, known.	abhold, unfavourable.
bewußt, conscious.	lästig, troublesome.
eigen, peculiar.	lieb, dear.
fremd, strange.	nahe, near.
gemein, }	schuldig, owing.
gemeinsam, } common.	treu, faithful.
geneigt, inclined.	überlegen, superior.
gewogen, favourable.	verhaßt, odious.
gemachsen, equal to, a match	verwandt, related.
for.	widrig, adverse.
gleich, like.	willkommen, welcome ;

and many others derived from verbs which govern the dative ; as—gehorsam, folgsam, obedient (from gehorchen, folgen) ; nützlich, useful (from nützen) ; schädlich, injurious (from schaden) ; behülflich, helpful (from helfen) ; dienlich, serviceable (from dienen), &c. Examples :—Er ist seinem Bruder ähnlich, he is like his brother. Die Sprache ist mir fremd, the language is unknown to me. Daß Glück ist ihm nicht hold, fortune is not favourable to him. Die Raupen sind den Bäumen schädlich, caterpillars are injurious to the trees.

§ 357. An idiomatic peculiarity of the German language consists in the use of the dative of a substantive instead of the possessive genitive, or of the dative of a personal or reflective pronoun instead of a possessive pronoun. For



example:—Dem Muhamedaner fielen endlich die Schuppen von den Augen, the scales fell at length from the Moham-medan's eyes. Sie schnitten dem Feinde den Rückzug ab, they cut off the enemy's retreat. Bei jedem Abschied zittert mir das Herz, *Sch.*, at every parting my heart trembles. Der Kopf thut mir weh, my head aches. Sie sanken ihm zu Füßen, they sank down at his feet.

§ 358. The dative is frequently joined to verbs, the meaning of which does not require a completing object, merely to point out the personal relation in which the predicate is in a particular case to be considered; *e. g.*—Frei ist dem Wanderer der Weg, *Sch.*, free is the road for the wanderer. Soll der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben? *Sch.*, shall the friend, the loving one, die (to me)? In this way the dative of the personal pronoun of the first and second persons is sometimes used, to denote in a familiar manner an interest or participation of feeling on the part of the person speaking or spoken to. This kind of dative is sometimes called the *ethical dative*; in general, it cannot be translated in English. For example:—Ist's auch gewiß? Bist du mir unverletzt? *Sch.*, is it really true? art thou unhurt (for me)? Ihr Harfner, wer weiß mir das schönste Lied? *U.*, you harpers, who knows the finest tune (for me)? Wir waren dir sehr vergnügt, we were very happy.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

Answer me by return of post.<sup>1</sup> I thank you for your kindness.<sup>2</sup> Who has a master, let him serve him dutifully.<sup>3</sup> What ails<sup>4</sup> you? I will follow your advice. This poem does not please me. Every subject must obey the laws of the country. She resembles her mother. Nobody has helped me. His ill-will<sup>5</sup> shall not injure me much. He flatters his superiors.<sup>6</sup> This mantle does not become you. Trust not in [the] fortune. He defies thy anger.<sup>7</sup> We have escaped<sup>8</sup> a great danger. Who contradicts<sup>9</sup> a victor,<sup>10</sup> [that

<sup>1</sup> By return of post, mit umgehender Post. <sup>2</sup> Kindness, Gefälligkeit.  
<sup>3</sup> Dutifully, pflichtgemäß. <sup>4</sup> To ail, fehlen. <sup>5</sup> Ill-will, böser Wille.  
<sup>6</sup> Superiors, Vorgesetzte. <sup>7</sup> Anger, Zorn. <sup>8</sup> To escape, entgehen. <sup>9</sup> To contradict, widersprechen. <sup>10</sup> Victor, Sieger.

one] contradicts imprudently.<sup>11</sup> I urge<sup>12</sup> him very much<sup>13</sup> to go again to Italy. Assist me with your advice. Were you not present<sup>14</sup> at the tournament?<sup>15</sup> Come to meet<sup>16</sup> me. He yielded<sup>17</sup> to my entreaties.<sup>18</sup> Strive<sup>19</sup> early after [the] wisdom. The lightning<sup>20</sup> precedes<sup>21</sup> the thunder.<sup>22</sup> You have anticipated<sup>23</sup> my wishes. I met them in (say, upon) the street. This dish<sup>24</sup> does not agree with me. His ingratitude<sup>25</sup> gives me pain. I feel sorry for you. I am sorry that I cannot come to your aid. [The] life's unmingled<sup>26</sup> joy fell to the share of no mortal.<sup>27</sup> I shall be at your service.<sup>28</sup> The intelligence was not very agreeable to us. All *the* circumstances are well known to him. Are you equal to the task?<sup>29</sup> I am glad (say, it is dear to me) that you have come. You owe<sup>30</sup> him many thanks.<sup>31</sup> Many remained faithful to the king. A child must be obedient to its parents. His intercession<sup>32</sup> has not been useful to me. He has sprained<sup>33</sup> his right arm. A shot<sup>34</sup> killed my horse. Tears will relieve<sup>35</sup> thy heart. Some wagons<sup>36</sup> conveying provisions have unfortunately<sup>37</sup> fallen into the hands of the enemy.

<sup>11</sup> Imprudently, mit Unbedacht. <sup>12</sup> To urge, anliegen. <sup>13</sup> Very much, sehr. <sup>14</sup> To be present at, beivohnen. <sup>15</sup> Tournament, Ritterspiel. <sup>16</sup> To come to meet, entgegenkommen. <sup>17</sup> To yield, nachgeben. <sup>18</sup> Entreaty, Bitt. <sup>19</sup> To strive after, nachstreben; use the second person singular. <sup>20</sup> Lightning, Blitz. <sup>21</sup> To precede, vorhergehen. <sup>22</sup> Thunder, Donner. <sup>23</sup> To anticipate, zuvorkommen. <sup>24</sup> Dish, Gericht. <sup>25</sup> Ingratitude, Undankbarkeit. <sup>26</sup> Unmingled, ungemischt. <sup>27</sup> Mortal, sterblich. <sup>28</sup> To be at the service of a person, Einem zu Diensten stehen. <sup>29</sup> Task, Aufgabe. <sup>30</sup> To owe, schuldig sein. <sup>31</sup> Use the singular. <sup>32</sup> Intercession, Vermittlung. <sup>33</sup> To sprain, verrenken. <sup>34</sup> Shot, Schuß. <sup>35</sup> To relieve, erleichtern. <sup>36</sup> Wagon conveying provisions, Proviantwagen. <sup>37</sup> Unfortunately, unglücklichweise.

#### IV. PREPOSITIONS.

§ 359. The object of verbs as well as adjectives is often expressed by means of prepositions. We can give here only a general sketch of the most common objective relations in which prepositions occur, while the minor details must be acquired by the attentive reading of German authors.

1. *Verbs*.—Separation or privation is expressed by *von* with the dative.

Speaking, or hearing of something, by *von* with the dative.

Fear, by *vor* with the dative.

Dominion or victory, by *über* with the accusative.

Vexation, sorrow, joy, and wonder, by *über* with the accusative.

Delight, by *an* with the dative.

Want, by *an* with the dative.

Doubt, by *an* with the dative.

Remembrance, by *an* with the accusative.

Loss, by *um* with the accusative.

Begging or entreating, by *um* with the accusative.

Longing and inquiring after, by *nach* with the dative.

Confidence or hope, as well as suspicion or envy, by *auf* with the accusative.

2. *Adjectives*.—*Von* with the dative is used with *frei*, free ; *rein*, pure ; *schön*, beautiful ; *häßlich*, ugly, &c.

*an* with the dative with *arm*, poor ; *reich*, rich ; *groß*, great ; *klein*, small ; *krank*, sick ; *leer*, empty ; *stark*, strong ; *schwach*, weak ; *fruchtbar*, fertile, and others.

*in* with the dative with *geschickt*, skilled ; *erfahren*, experienced ; *beraubert*, versed ; *einfach*, simple, and others.

*vor* with the dative with *bange*, afraid ; *sicher*, secure, &c.

*auf* with the accusative with *eifersüchtig*, jealous ; *neidisch*, envious ; *argwöhnisch*, suspicious ; *böse*, angry ; *stolz*, proud ; *gefaßt*, prepared, &c.

*mit* with the dative with *zufrieden*, content ; *bekannt*, acquainted ; *vertraut*, familiar, &c.

*gegen* with the accusative with *freundlich*, friendly ; *feindlich*, hostile ; *gnädig*, gracious ; *gerecht*, just ; *nachsichtig*, indulgent ; *grausam*, cruel ; *aufrichtig*, sincere ; *offen*, frank, &c.

#### EXERCISE LXV.

You must desist<sup>1</sup> from your demand.<sup>2</sup> He has recovered from a serious<sup>3</sup> illness. You have probably<sup>4</sup> heard of the accident.<sup>5</sup> I am not afraid<sup>6</sup> of the danger. The timid<sup>7</sup> flees from his own shadow. Protect<sup>8</sup> me from his malice.<sup>9</sup> He reigned over a peaceable<sup>10</sup> people. She complains<sup>11</sup> of

<sup>1</sup> To desist, abstehe. <sup>2</sup> Demand, Forderung. <sup>3</sup> Serious, schwer. <sup>4</sup> Probably, vermuthlich. <sup>5</sup> Accident, Unfall. <sup>6</sup> To be afraid, sich fürchten. <sup>7</sup> Timid, fürchtam. <sup>8</sup> To protect, schützen. <sup>9</sup> Malice, Bosheit. <sup>10</sup> Peaceable, friedliebend. <sup>11</sup> To complain, klagen.

headache.<sup>12</sup> We laughed at his proposal.<sup>13</sup> They wondered at her boldness.<sup>14</sup> We were terrified<sup>15</sup> at his appearance.<sup>16</sup> We delight<sup>17</sup> in the voice of the talkative<sup>18</sup> echo.<sup>19</sup> I doubt [of] his sincerity.<sup>20</sup> He has lost<sup>21</sup> his good reputation.<sup>22</sup> You will rob<sup>23</sup> him of his credit.<sup>24</sup> I ask in this letter [for] a great favour.<sup>25</sup> The criminal implored<sup>26</sup> for mercy.<sup>27</sup> He courts<sup>28</sup> [for] the praise of the multitude.<sup>29</sup> We long for peace. The wise *man* searches<sup>30</sup> after truth. Inquire after his name. They relied<sup>31</sup> too much upon their own strength. Trust<sup>32</sup> in God. I hope for the mercy of [the] heaven. He is poor in treasures, but rich in knowledge.<sup>33</sup> The heart is never empty of wishes. He seems well versed in the history of his country. We are not secure from persecution.<sup>34</sup> He is envious of the happiness of others. The peacock<sup>35</sup> is proud of his gay<sup>36</sup> feathers. I am prepared for the worst.<sup>37</sup> They are content with the mere necessities of life.<sup>38</sup> He is friendly towards every one. Be sincere towards me.

- <sup>12</sup> Headache, Kopfschmerz. <sup>13</sup> Proposal, Vorschlag. <sup>14</sup> Boldness, Kühnheit.  
<sup>15</sup> To be terrified, erschrecken. <sup>16</sup> Appearance, Aussehen, n. <sup>17</sup> To delight, sich ergehen. <sup>18</sup> Talkative, geschwätzig. <sup>19</sup> Echo, Echo, n. <sup>20</sup> Sincerity, Aufrichtigkeit. <sup>21</sup> To lose a thing, um etwas kommen. <sup>22</sup> Reputation, Ruf.  
<sup>23</sup> To rob of something, um etwas bringen. <sup>24</sup> Credit, Credit, m. <sup>25</sup> Favour, Gnade.  
<sup>26</sup> To implore, flehen. <sup>27</sup> Mercy, Gnade. <sup>28</sup> To court, buhlen.  
<sup>29</sup> Multitude, Menge. <sup>30</sup> To search, forschen. <sup>31</sup> To rely, sich verlassen.  
<sup>32</sup> To trust, vertrauen. <sup>33</sup> Use the plural. <sup>34</sup> Persecution, Verfolgung.  
<sup>35</sup> Peacock, Pfau. <sup>36</sup> Gay, bunt. <sup>37</sup> The worst, das Schlimmste.  
<sup>38</sup> Necessaries of life, Lebensbedürfnisse.

## XXXIX.

THE OBJECT EXPRESSED BY A CLAUSE, OR BY  
THE SUPINE, OR THE INFINITIVE.

§ 360. The completing object of the predicate (verb or adjective) of a sentence is, like the subject, often expressed by a whole clause. As such a clause stands in the place of a noun, it is termed, like that which stands in the place of the subject, a substantive clause, and is of course of a dependent kind. Examples:—Jeder Schritt des Lebens zeigt, daß die

Klugheit nöthig sei, *G.*, every step in life shews that prudence is necessary. Entscheide du, ob Krieg sei oder Friede, *Sch.*, decide thou, whether there shall be war or peace. Wer sie sei, will sie allein dem König offenbaren, *Sch.*, who she is, she will disclose to the king alone. Sie lehren uns, was wir thun sollten, *Sch.*, they teach us, what we ought to do. Sie sagt mir stets, ich sei ihr Feind, *Sch.* (that is, daß ich ihr Feind sei, the conjunction daß being suppressed according to § 314, 1), she always tells me that I am her enemy.

§ 361. The supine, too, is often used as in English, to express the object of a sentence; *e. g.*—er hofft sie zu besitzen, he hopes to possess her. Ich erinnere mich, ihn vor einigen Wochen gesehen zu haben, I remember to have seen him a few weeks ago. Er warnte mich, auf meiner Huf zu sein, he warned me to be upon my guard. Ich bin bereit zu sterben, I am ready to die.

§ 362. If the verb or adjective, upon which the objective clause or the supine depends, be one which governs the accusative, the place of the object in the principal clause is frequently supplied by the neuter pronoun es. For example:—Die That bewährt es, daß sie Wahrheit spricht, *Sch.*, the deed proves (it), that she speaks the truth. Wer wagt es, Rittersmann oder Knapp, zu tauchen in diesen Schlund? *Sch.*, who ventures, knight or squire, to dive into this gulf? Ich war es müde, immer weise zu sein, I was tired of being always wise. Ich bin es mir bewußt, meine Pflicht gethan zu haben, I am conscious of having done my duty. But if the verb or adjective be followed by a preposition, the latter is joined to the demonstrative adverb da or dar, as in dazu, damit, darin, daran, darauf, &c., and is in this form made to precede the dependent clause, in the same way as the neuter pronoun es. For example:—Meine Frau bestand darauf, daß sie Olivia genannt werden sollte, my wife insisted upon her being called Olivia. Ich begnügte mich damit, die Gefahr nur eben angedeutet zu haben, I was satisfied with just having pointed out the danger. Die Abderiten waren stolz darauf, für das thrakische Athen gehalten zu werden, *Wieland*, the inhabitants of Abdera were proud of being considered as the Athenians of Thrace. Participial constructions like those in the preceding English sentences are never used in German.

§ 363. The construction of the *accusative with the infinitive*, so frequently met with in Latin and Greek, and imitated by the English also, is quite foreign to the German language. It must be turned into a regular sentence introduced by *daß*; as—I wish *him to go* directly, *ich wünsche, daß er sogleich gehe*. Surely you do not wish *me to break* my word, *ihr wollt doch nicht, daß ich wortbrüchig werden soll*. I knew *it to be* my duty, *ich wußte, daß es meine Pflicht war*.

§ 364. The English often give to sentences containing an indirect question a contracted form; as—‘He did not know *what to say*,’ or, ‘he knew not *what way to go*,’ or, ‘I will shew thee *how to proceed*.’ A similar mode of expression is very rarely met with in German. In translating the above examples, therefore, the contracted clauses, ‘what to say,’ ‘what way to go,’ ‘how to proceed,’ must be changed into regular dependent clauses, with a subject and a finite verb; namely—*er wußte nicht, was er sagen sollte*; *er wußte nicht, welchen Weg er nehmen sollte*; *ich will dir zeigen, wie du zu verfahren hast*. However, if the verb be ‘to know,’ and the dependent clause begin with ‘how,’ the latter may be drawn into the same clause with the verb ‘to know,’ the interrogative adverb being omitted; as—*Ihr wisset eure Art zu führen, Sch.*, you know *how* to wield your battle-axe. *Diener, die einen stummen Auftrag zu deuten wissen, Sch.*, servants who know *how* to understand a silent commission. *Wisse nur daß Glück zu fassen, wenn es lächelnd dir sich beut, Feibel*, know only *how* to lay hold of fortune, when it smilingly offers itself to thee.

§ 365. The infinitive (without *zu*) occurs as the object after the following verbs only:—*heißen*, to bid; *nennen*, to call; *helfen*, to help; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *machen*, to make. For example:—*Heiß ihn gehen*, bid him go away. *Hilf mir arbeiten*, help me to work. *Ruhm und Tadel muß man ertragen lernen, G.*, one must learn to bear both praise and censure. *Ich habe in England mich an viel gewöhnen lernen, Sch.*, I have learned in England to accustom myself to many things. *Ihr macht mich zittern, Sch.*, you make me tremble.

## Notes.

1. The infinitive is used also with the verbs *hören*, to hear; *sehen*, to see; *fühlen*, to feel; *finden*, to find; *haben*, to have. Here, however, it

does not stand in the place of an object of the verb itself, but it indicates what the object is engaged in doing at the time to which the assertion refers. The infinitive therefore here has the force of the present participle. Examples:—*Harmonien hör' ich klingen, Sch.*, I hear harmonies sound (or sounding). *Ich sah ihn sterben, Sch.*, I saw him die. *Ich fühle dein Herz schlagen, I* feel thy heart beating. *Aurora fand mich schlafen, G.*, Aurora found me sleeping. *Er hat ein Amulet am Halse hängen, he* has an amulet hanging about his neck.

2. The infinitive is further used with the intransitive verbs *bleiben*, to remain; *gehen*, to go; *reiten*, to ride; *fahren*, to drive; but with these it only indicates the manner in which the action is performed, and likewise stands for the present participle; e.g.—*ich werde stehen bleiben*, I shall remain standing; *er geht spazieren*, he goes to walk, or he walks leisurely. In most phrases of this kind, however, both verbs must be conceived as expressing only one idea; as—*ich ging jagen*, I went to hunt, or I was hunting; *er geht betteln*, he goes a-begging, or he begs; *wir wollen spazieren fahren*, we will take a drive. With the verb *kommen*, the past participle has the same force—*Da kommt ein Mann in voller Hast gelaufen, Sch.*, there comes a man running at full speed. *Da kam der Bogt mit seinen Reißigen geritten, Sch.*, there came the governor riding (or on horseback) with his troopers.

## EXERCISE LXVI.

Every one knows that I am innocent.<sup>1</sup> He told me that the vessel had arrived. He wrote to me that his friend had died last week. She says, *that* her father is ill. I fear, *that* I shall not be able to overtake<sup>2</sup> you. I have forgotten, what you want. I do not know, who has done it. Who can say, what will be the consequence.<sup>3</sup> I ask, whether you consent.<sup>4</sup> He endeavours<sup>5</sup> to speak correctly. I hope to convince<sup>6</sup> you of your error. I do not remember ever to have heard of it. I am ready to follow you. I perceive<sup>7</sup> [it] well, that you could not act otherwise.<sup>8</sup> He has determined<sup>9</sup> [it] to ruin<sup>10</sup> me with my whole house. The only advantage<sup>11</sup> of [the] flattery<sup>12</sup> consists in this, that we may (say, can) learn what we ought to be, by hearing<sup>13</sup> what we are not. He thinks<sup>14</sup> of leaving this country. I am afraid<sup>15</sup> of meeting

<sup>1</sup> Innocent, unschuldig. <sup>2</sup> To overtake, einholen. <sup>3</sup> Consequence, Folge.  
<sup>4</sup> To consent, einwilligen. <sup>5</sup> To endeavour, sich bemühen. <sup>6</sup> To convince, überzeugen. <sup>7</sup> To perceive, einsehen. <sup>8</sup> Otherwise, anders. <sup>9</sup> To determine, beschließen. <sup>10</sup> To ruin, verderben. <sup>11</sup> Advantage, Nutzen. <sup>12</sup> Flattery, Schmeichelei. <sup>13</sup> By hearing, indem wir hören. <sup>14</sup> To think of something, an etwas denken. <sup>15</sup> To be afraid of something, sich vor etwas fürchten.

him. We rely<sup>16</sup> upon your making<sup>17</sup> the necessary<sup>18</sup> arrangements. He insists<sup>19</sup> upon your obeying his orders. I wish you to read Alison's history of Europe,<sup>20</sup> for I know it to be a most interesting work. I have found my liveliest<sup>21</sup> joys to arise<sup>22</sup> from illusions.<sup>23</sup> He seemed at a loss<sup>24</sup> what to say, or whither to direct his way.<sup>25</sup> They knew not how to escape<sup>26</sup> or where to find a refuge.<sup>27</sup> I will shew you how to proceed.<sup>28</sup> [The] necessity<sup>29</sup> teaches us to bear<sup>30</sup> much. He has learned to know<sup>31</sup> thy power.<sup>32</sup> Do you hear him speak? I saw her faint.<sup>33</sup> We found her sitting in an arm-chair.<sup>34</sup> I felt my heart tremble. Sit still (say, Remain sitting). Let us take a drive. I should rather<sup>35</sup> take a walk.

<sup>16</sup> To rely upon something, sich auf etwas verlassen. <sup>17</sup> To make arrangements, Anordnungen treffen. <sup>18</sup> Necessary, nöthig. <sup>19</sup> To insist upon something, auf etwas bestehen. <sup>20</sup> Europe, Europa. <sup>21</sup> Lively, lebhaft. <sup>22</sup> To arise from, entspringen aus. <sup>23</sup> Illusion, Täuschung. <sup>24</sup> At a loss, in Verlegenheit. <sup>25</sup> To direct one's way, sich wenden. <sup>26</sup> To escape, entkommen. <sup>27</sup> Refuge, Zufluchtsort. <sup>28</sup> To proceed, verfahren. <sup>29</sup> Necessity, Noth. <sup>30</sup> To bear, ertragen. <sup>31</sup> To learn to know, kennen lernen. <sup>32</sup> Power, Macht. <sup>33</sup> To faint, in Ohnmacht fallen. <sup>34</sup> Arm-chair, Lehnstuhl. <sup>35</sup> Rather, lieber.

## B. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSION.

## XL.

## RELATIONS OF PLACE AND TIME.

§ 366. The place or direction of an asserted action is expressed by adverbs, or prepositions, or adverbial clauses; e.g.—ich stehe hier, I stand here. Er eilt fort, he hurries away. Einen goldenen Becher werf' ich hinab, *Sch.*, I throw down a golden cup. Er hat zu Bonn studirt, he studied at Bonn. Sie kam aus der Kirche, she came from church. Ich wohne, wo er gewohnt hat, I live where he has lived. It is the chief function of most prepositions to indicate relations of place; see chapter XXI.

## Note.

The cases of declension by themselves are used only in some particular



phrases to express locality; namely, the genitive in *aller Orten*, everywhere; *linker Hand*, on the left; *rechter Hand*, on the right, &c.; and sometimes the accusative; e. g.—*zwei Wanderer sieht er die Straße ziehn*, *Sch.*, he sees two wanderers travel along the road.

§ 367. When a whole clause points out the place of an asserted action, it is introduced by the relative adverb *wo*, where, or by one of its compounds, *woher*, whence; *wohin*, whither. The relative adverb in the dependent clause refers to a corresponding demonstrative (*da*, *dort*, *hier*, *daßer*, *dahin*) in the principal, but the latter is frequently omitted. For example:—*Die größten Schwierigkeiten liegen da*, *wo wir sie nicht suchen*, *G.*, the greatest difficulties lie there where we do not seek them. *Wo die Reben dort glühen*, *dort braust der Rhein*, *Körner*, yonder where the vines are glowing, yonder roars the Rhine. *Sie wird gerichtet*, *wo sie frevelte*, *Sch.*, she will be judged where she did wrong. *Gehen Sie*, *Graf*, *wohin die Pflicht Sie ruft*, *Sch.*, go, count, whither duty calls you.

## EXERCISE LXVII.

Wait here. There he stood. Run thither. Come down stairs.<sup>1</sup> She ran away. The ship is sailing eastward.<sup>2</sup> The amphibia<sup>3</sup> live equally<sup>4</sup> well in the air as in the water. He stopped<sup>5</sup> before this house. I am sending a parcel to Bremen. The owner<sup>6</sup> of the house sat upon a wooden<sup>7</sup> bench in a thick<sup>8</sup> arbour<sup>9</sup> of vines.<sup>10</sup> He led me into his granaries.<sup>11</sup> Where smoke<sup>12</sup> is, there is also fire. Not everywhere<sup>13</sup> where water is, are frogs;<sup>14</sup> but where one hears frogs, *there* is water. Go whither you please. He goes [thither], from where we have come.

<sup>1</sup> Down stairs, *herunter*. <sup>2</sup> Eastward, *östwärts*. <sup>3</sup> Amphibia, *Amphibien*. <sup>4</sup> Equally, *ebenso*. <sup>5</sup> To stop, *anhalten*. <sup>6</sup> Owner, *Eigenthümer*. <sup>7</sup> Wooden, *hölzern*. <sup>8</sup> Thick, *dicht*. <sup>9</sup> Arbour, *Laube*. <sup>10</sup> Vine, *Weinrebe*. <sup>11</sup> Granary, *Speicher*. <sup>12</sup> Smoke, *Rauch*. <sup>13</sup> Everywhere, *überall*. <sup>14</sup> Frog, *Frosch*.

§ 368. The relation of time of an asserted action is expressed by adverbs, prepositions, the cases of the substantive, or adverbial sentences.

The following prepositions are used to express the *point of time* when an action is performed:—*an* with the dative, *on*—*am ersten Mai*, on the first of May.

um, at, about—um vier Uhr, at four o'clock ; um die Mittagsstunde, about the hour of noon.

gegen, towards—gegen vier Uhr, towards four o'clock.

in with the dative, in, at—in diesem Augenblicke, at this moment.

binnen and innerhalb, within—binnen drei Tagen, within three days ; innerhalb eines Jahrhunderts, within or in the course of a century.

bei, at—bei Sonnenuntergang, at sunset.

auf with the accusative, at—auf den Glockenschlag, at the stroke of the bell ; auf die Minute, at the minute.

zu, at—zu Ostern, at Easter.

vor with the dative, before, ago—vor Mitternacht, before midnight ; vor drei Jahren, three years ago.

nach, after—nach dem Kriege, after the war.

über with the accusative—heute über acht Tage, this day eight days.

The following prepositions express a *duration of time*, or the period during which an action is performed :—

in with the dative, in—in einem ganzen Jahre, during a whole year.

während, during—während des Religionskrieges, during the religious war.

unter with the dative, under, in—unter der Regierung Karls des Fünften, under or in the reign of Charles the Fifth.

seit, since—seit Menschenzeiten, since the memory of man.

bis, till—bis morgen, till to-morrow ; bis zum Abend, till the evening.

auf with the accusative, for—auf drei Wochen, for three weeks (to come), for the space of three weeks.

§ 369. The point of time of the predicated action is further expressed by the accusative or genitive ; by the latter more especially when the action is conceived as an habitual or often repeated one, or when the point of time is to be indicated in an indefinite way ; *e.g.*—er starb diesen Morgen, he died this morning ; den ersten Juli, on the first of July. Ich lese des Abends, I read in the evening ; wir gehen Sonntags in die Kirche, we go to church on Sundays ; er kam eines Tages zu mir, he came to me one day ; heutiges Tages, now-a-days.

Duration of time, on the other hand, is pointed out by the accusative only, not by the genitive; *e.g.*—Der Herzog ist schon einige Monate abwesend, *G.*, the duke has been away for some months. Ich blieb eine ganze Woche hier, I remained here a whole week. The accusative in this signification is often followed by the adverb lang (as in the English 'all day long'), sometimes by über or hindurch; *e.g.*—Ich habe Jahre lang mich darauf vorbereitet, *Sch.*, I have been preparing myself for it for years. Durch die Zeitungen sind Sie diesen Monat über genugsam an uns erinnert worden, *G.*, during the present month you have been pretty often reminded of us by the newspapers. Die ganze Nacht hindurch, all night long.

§ 370. Adverbial clauses of time are introduced by the following conjunctions:—als, da, as, when; wenn, when; sobald (als), as soon as (also so wie, or wie in the same sense); nachdem, after; ehe or bevor, before; während, indeß, indeffen, indem (sometimes weil) whilst, while; seitdem or seit, since; bis, sometimes bis daß, till.

#### Notes.

1. With regard to the first three of these conjunctions, it should be observed, that als is used when the time of an action is pointed out by a single definite past event; but that wenn is employed when the time is pointed out by some indefinite or habitual occurrence, either in the past, or in the present, or in the future. Da generally denotes causality, but is often used as a synonym of als, especially if the occurrence which it introduces not only determines the time, but at the same time points out the cause of the action. For example:—Als ich meinen Freund besuchte, fand ich ihn krank, when I called upon my friend, I found him ill. Wenn der Frühling beginnt, kehren die Schwalben zurück, when spring begins, the swallows return. Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, liebe Kinder, da war ein Freuen, wenn er wiederkam, *Sch.*, formerly when your father went from home, dear children, there was rejoicing when he returned. Dem Kaiser selbst versagten wir Gehorsam, da er das Recht zu Gunst der Pfaffen bog, *Sch.*, to the emperor himself we refused obedience, as he bent the law (that is, gave judgment) in favour of the clergy. In the last example, da denotes both time and cause.

2. The English 'no sooner . . . than,' or 'scarcely . . . than,' is expressed by kaum (in the protasis) . . . als (in the apodosis), the latter being a dependent clause. But more frequently the apodosis is made to begin with so, and put in the inverted order, because als can be used only in regard to a definite event in past time. For example:—Der Tag war kaum angebrochen, als ich mich auf den Weg begab, or so begab ich mich auf den Weg, no sooner had the day dawned, than I set out on the way. Kaum haben wir einen Wunsch erreicht, so machen wir Anschläge auf neue

Bernügungen, no sooner have we attained a wish, than we make projects for new enjoyments.

§ 371. Adverbial clauses of time in English often take the form of participial constructions. As the Germans seldom adopt this mode of expression, such participial constructions must generally be changed into regular sentences, with a conjunction and a finite verb. For example:—*After having given* his troops a day of rest, he continued his march, *nachdem er seinen Truppen einen Ruhetag gegeben hatte*, setzte er seinen Marsch fort. *While speaking* with me, he turned as pale as death, *während er mit mir redete*, wurde er leichenbläß. I wrote an epitaph for my wife *when still living*, *ich schrieb eine Grabchrift für meine Frau, als sie noch am Leben war*. *Before leaving* town, I shall call upon you, *ehe ich die Stadt verlasse*, werde ich Sie besuchen. I believed to promote the best interests of all, *by strengthening* the power of the emperor, *daß Beste Aller glaubt' ich zu befördern*, da ich des Kaisers Macht befestigte, *Sch.*

Of the same nature are such elliptical clauses as—‘*when at Rome*, I met with several friends,’ or ‘*while very young*, he was taught reading’—in German, *als ich in Rom war*, (or simply in Rom) traf ich mehrere Freunde; *als er noch sehr jung war*, (or in früher Kindheit) lernte er lesen.

§ 372. The participle, however, is sometimes employed in German, when an action, which is represented as contemporaneous with the predicate, is joined to the latter, but without serving the purpose of a determination of time. Examples:—*Dieß alles bei mir denkend*, schlief ich ein, *Sch.*, thinking over all this, I fell asleep (that is, I thought over all this and fell asleep). *Zaudernd stehn die Diener alle*, *Kerner*, hesitating stand all the servants (that is, all the servants stand and hesitate). *Wir Schwestern saßen, die Wolle spinnend*, in den langen Nächten, *Sch.*, we sisters sat in the long evenings, spinning wool (that is, we were sitting and spinning wool). In common prose, this relation is generally expressed by the conjunction *indem* (sometimes by *da*) and a finite verb; as—*Indem er sich auf sie stützte*, kam er die Treppe langsam herauf, *G.*, leaning upon her, he slowly came up the stair. *Du sprichst mein Urtheil aus, da du mich tröstest*, thou pronouncest my sentence, while thou consolest me.

## Note.

When the simultaneousness of two actions is to be denied, *ohne daß* is used with a finite verb, or *ohne* with a supine, the latter, however, only when the principal and dependent clauses have the same subject. For example:—*Ich reiste ab, ohne daß Jemand etwas davon wußte*, I set out, without anybody knowing anything about it. *Ich schlief ein, ohne an etwas zu denken*, I fell asleep, without thinking of anything. *Wer die Gottheit um Hülfe anruft, ohne die eigene Kraft anzuwenden, flehet vergebens*, *Kr.*, whoever calls upon the Godhead for help, without using his own strength, calls in vain.

§ 373. A past participle is often joined to the predicate of a sentence, to denote the state or condition in which the subject is while performing, or the object while suffering, the action implied in the predicate; *e. g.*—*wir standen erstaunt*, we stood amazed. *Ich sah dich gestern reich gepuht zu Tische sitzen*, I saw thee yesterday sitting at table richly attired. The past participle is sometimes connected with an accusative—*Sie singt hinaus in die finstere Nacht, das Auge von Weinen getrübet*, *Sch.*, she sings into the dark night, her eyes (being) dimmed with weeping. *Da sinkt er an's Ufer, und weint und fleht, die Hände zum Zeus erhoben*, *Sch.*, then he sinks down upon the bank (of the river) and weeps and prays, (with) his hands raised to Jupiter. *Endlich bleibt er gedankenvoll stehen, die Augen zur Erde gesenkt*, *Sch.*, at last he stands still thoughtful, (with) his eyes fixed on the ground.

## Note.

In elliptical clauses of this kind, the accusative, when accompanied by an adverbial expression of place, is sometimes governed by a present participle which is not expressed, but must be supplied, such as 'having' or 'holding'; *e. g.*—*Die Hand am Schwerte, schauen sie sich drohend an*, *Sch.*, (having) the hand upon the sword, they look at each other threateningly. *Alle Thränen in den Augen, stehen um Barmherzigkeit*, *Herder*, all. (with) tears in their eyes, ask for mercy.

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

I am reading now the tragedies<sup>1</sup> of [the] Sophocles, and shall soon begin the comedies<sup>2</sup> of [the] Aristophanes. Niebuhr was born on the first of January. We usually<sup>3</sup> dine at

<sup>1</sup> Tragedy, Tragödie. <sup>2</sup> Comedy, Komödie. <sup>3</sup> Usually, gewöhnlich.

six o'clock. It happened about the time of the harvest.<sup>4</sup> He has been in [the] town since Easter. We shall get up before sunrise.<sup>5</sup> He came at the minute. Under the reign of Charles the Fifth, Antwerp<sup>6</sup> was the busiest<sup>7</sup> town in the world. During this discourse,<sup>8</sup> all hearers<sup>9</sup> melted<sup>10</sup> into tears. Wait till next Monday. For many weeks no drop of rain has fallen. The ship is furnished with provisions<sup>11</sup> for three months. I saw him last week. He will arrive this afternoon<sup>12</sup> and depart to-morrow morning.<sup>13</sup> We read in the evening. I take a walk in the forenoon.<sup>14</sup> He works in the morning, and sleeps in the afternoon. I shall work all day. Many fashions last only a few months. She was ill for six weeks. The dog has barked<sup>15</sup> all night. When he invited<sup>16</sup> me, he did not know that I was from home.<sup>17</sup> As I awoke,<sup>18</sup> I saw my friend standing<sup>19</sup> before me. It becomes<sup>20</sup> us to be silent, when the Godhead<sup>21</sup> speaks. Every year, when the shooting-season<sup>22</sup> approached,<sup>23</sup> we used<sup>24</sup> to leave London and to go to the north of Scotland.<sup>25</sup> He was startled,<sup>26</sup> and looked at<sup>27</sup> me, as the word escaped<sup>28</sup> me. No sooner had we received the news, than the post-horses were ordered.<sup>29</sup> As soon as they had left Dunkirk Roads,<sup>30</sup> the wind became contrary.<sup>31</sup> We shall ascend<sup>32</sup> the mountain, before the sun rises. While two dogs are fighting<sup>33</sup> for a bone,<sup>34</sup> a third runs<sup>35</sup> away with it. Since there are railroads, there are also more travellers. I cannot go out, until I have finished my day's work.<sup>36</sup> The king left Nürnberg, after having provided<sup>37</sup> it with a sufficient<sup>38</sup> garrison.<sup>39</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Time of the harvest, Erntezeit. <sup>5</sup> Sunrise, Sonnenaufgang. <sup>6</sup> Antwerp, Antwerpen. <sup>7</sup> Busy, lebendig. <sup>8</sup> Discourse, Rede. <sup>9</sup> Hearer, Zuhörer. <sup>10</sup> To melt, zerfließen. <sup>11</sup> To furnish with provisions, mit Vorräthen versehen. <sup>12</sup> Afternoon, Nachmittag. <sup>13</sup> To-morrow morning, morgen früh. <sup>14</sup> Forenoon, Vormittag. <sup>15</sup> To bark, bellen. <sup>16</sup> To invite, einladen. <sup>17</sup> From home, verreise. <sup>18</sup> To awake, erwachen. <sup>19</sup> See § 365, note 1. <sup>20</sup> To become, ziemen. <sup>21</sup> Godhead, Gottheit. <sup>22</sup> Shooting-season, Jagdzeit. <sup>23</sup> To approach, herannahen. <sup>24</sup> To use, pflegen. <sup>25</sup> The north of Scotland, das nördliche Schottland. <sup>26</sup> To be startled, stutzen. <sup>27</sup> To look at, ansehen. <sup>28</sup> To escape, entfliehen. (See § 353.) <sup>29</sup> To order, bestellen. <sup>30</sup> Dunkirk Roads, die Rade von Dünkirchen. <sup>31</sup> Contrary, ungünstig. <sup>32</sup> To ascend, besteigen. <sup>33</sup> To fight for a thing, um etwas streiten. <sup>34</sup> Bone, Knochen. <sup>35</sup> To run away with something, etwas davontragen. <sup>36</sup> Day's work, Tagewerk. <sup>37</sup> To provide, versehen. <sup>38</sup> Sufficient, hinlänglich. <sup>39</sup> Garrison, Besatzung.

The inundation<sup>40</sup> having subsided,<sup>41</sup> the prince and the princess left Cairo. Thales being asked when a man should marry, said: 'Young men not yet, old men never.' While speaking with me, he was called out.<sup>42</sup> When still very young, Mary Stuart<sup>43</sup> was sent to the French court. He went away laughing. They listened to<sup>44</sup> the news, wondering<sup>45</sup> and doubting. Falling on his (say, the) knees, he asked for mercy. The army was complete,<sup>46</sup> without there having been any need<sup>47</sup> to strip<sup>48</sup> the plough.<sup>49</sup> I opened<sup>50</sup> the letter, without having looked at the address. He returned discouraged<sup>51</sup> and dejected.<sup>52</sup> He died, loved by many, esteemed by all.

<sup>40</sup> Inundation, Ueberschwemmung. <sup>41</sup> To subside, nachlassen. <sup>42</sup> To call out, hinausrufen. <sup>43</sup> Mary Stuart, Maria Stuart. <sup>44</sup> To listen to, anhören. <sup>45</sup> To wonder, staunen. <sup>46</sup> Complete, vollständig. <sup>47</sup> Without there having been any need, ohne daß man nöthig gehabt hätte. <sup>48</sup> To strip, entblößen. <sup>49</sup> Plough, Pflug. <sup>50</sup> To open, erbrechen. <sup>51</sup> Discouraged, muthlos. <sup>52</sup> Dejected, niedergeschlagen.

## XII.

### RELATIONS OF MANNER AND INTENSITY.

§ 374. The adverbial relation of manner is expressed by adverbs, by prepositions, by the genitive case, or by adverbial sentences. Adverbs of manner, for instance, are—so, so; wie, how; anders, differently; laut, loudly; schnell, quickly; reichlich, abundantly, &c., on which see the chapter on adverbs. The adverbs sehr, very, very much; kaum, scarcely, ungemein, uncommonly; fast, almost, denote the intensity of an action.

The following prepositions are chiefly employed to express the manner of an action:—mit, with; ohne, without; auf, upon, with the accusative of Art, or Weise, or with the dative of Weg, way, manner, or with a superlative; an, on, at, with a superlative; nach, after, according to (also gemäß); and zu in a few phrases. For example:—Den Landmann siehst du mit Verachtung an, *Sch.*, thou regardest the peasant with

contempt. Er spricht mit lauter Stimme, he speaks with a loud voice. Er wurde ohne Schonung verfolgt, he was unsparingly persecuted. Wir dienen ihm auf unsre Weise, we serve him in our own way. Auf diesem Wege habe ich in Erfahrung gebracht, in this way I have learned. Ich habe es auf's genaueste untersucht, I have examined it most minutely. Er schreibt am besten, he writes best. Laßt uns tagen nach den alten Bräuchen des Landes, *Sch.*, let us hold the diet according to the ancient customs of the land. Er reist zu Fuße, zu Pferde, zu Lande, &c., he travels on foot, on horseback, by land, &c.

The genitive case was formerly more commonly used to express the relation of manner than it now is; it is still retained, however, in some expressions of daily use, and is of frequent occurrence in the higher style of writing. For example:—Ich habe ihn alles Ernstes ermahnt, I have admonished him most earnestly. Nach Uri fahr' ich stehenden Fußes, *Sch.*, I shall go to Uri immediately; in Latin *stante pede*. Nicht leichten Kampfes flegt der Glaube, *Körner*. faith does not conquer by an easy fight. See also § 240, 2, c.

§ 375. The manner of an action is expressed by an adverbial clause, if it is described by a comparison with some other action, or by the effect which attends it, as in English 'he speaks as he thinks,' and 'he speaks so that everybody can understand him.' In the former case, the adverbial clause is introduced by the conjunction *wie*, as, if it involve a real fact, and by *als ob* or *als wenn*, as if, if it involve a merely assumed or a possible fact. The latter conjunctions are followed by the conditional or conjunctive mood (§ 315, 4). In both cases, the principal clause may have the adverb *so* (or *also*), which, however, is very often suppressed. For example:—Er spricht so, wie er denkt, he speaks as he thinks. Wie sich die Neigung anders wendet, also steigt und fällt des Urtheils wandelbare Woge, *Sch.*, as inclination turns another way, so rises and falls the inconstant wave of popular opinion. Thut, als wenn ihr zu Hause wäret, *G.*, do as if you were at home. Er sieht aus, als ob er in der Ueberzeugung lebe, er sei Herr, *G.*, he looks, as if he lived in the conviction that he was master. The second part of the conjunctions *als wenn*, *als ob*, is sometimes dropped, and the clause put in the inverted form; e. g.—Es scheint, als



wolle Jeder das große Fest mitgenießen, *G.*, it appears, as if every one wished to join in the enjoyment of the great feast.

§ 376. The intensity as well as the manner of a state or action can be expressed by a comparison with another action mentioned in an adverbial clause. The equality of two compared activities is indicated in the dependent clause by *als*, which corresponds with *so* in the principal clause; or if the dependent clause precede the principal one, by *so* in both; in English 'as . . . as.' For example:—*Er ist so reich, als er zu sein wünscht*, he is as rich as he wishes to be. *So hoch er stand, so tief und schmachlich sei sein Fall*, *Sch.*, as high as he stood, as deep and disgraceful be his fall.

An equal gradation of both activities is indicated by *je* in the dependent, and *desto* (sometimes *je*) in the principal clause; in English 'the . . . the,' with two comparatives. For example:—*Je mehr der Vorrath schmolz, desto schrecklicher wuchs der Hunger*, the more the provisions diminished, the more fearfully did hunger increase. *Je reiner die Seele (ist), desto himmlischer (ist) die Liebe*, *Kr.*, the purer the soul is, the more heavenly is the love. *Je mehr eine Wahrheit sticht, je besser wird sie gefühlt*, *J. Müller*, the more cutting a truth is, the better is it felt.

The inequality of two compared states or actions is indicated by a comparative in the principal, and *als* in the dependent clause; *e. g.*—*Ich hatte mehr zu leiden, als meine Kräfte ertragen zu können schienen*, I had more to suffer, than my strength seemed able to bear. *Sein Glück war größer, als man berechnet hatte*, his luck was greater than people had calculated.

Note.

In the relation of manner as well as in that of intensity, the dependent clause often has an incomplete form, the verb being understood from the principal clause; *e. g.*—*Du redest wie ein Träumender* (understand *redest*), thou speakest as one (speaks) who is dreaming. *Eine schöne Natur wirkt auf uns wie eine schöne Melodie*, *Sch.*, a beautiful scenery affects us as a beautiful tune (affects us), or like a beautiful tune. *Er ist so edel als reich*, he is as generous as (he is) rich. *Nichts ist höher zu schätzen, als der Werth des Tages*, *G.*, nothing is to be esteemed higher than the value of time (is to be esteemed). Similar contractions occur also in concessive and other sentences; *e. g.*—*Sie gleichen sich, wiewohl in sehr entferntem Sinne*, they resemble each other, although in a very remote sense.

§ 377. When the manner of an action is determined by

the effect it produces, the dependent clause has the conjunction *daß*, which corresponds with the adverb *so* in the principal clause; *e.g.*—*er spricht so, daß ihn Jeder verstehen kann*, he speaks so, that everybody can understand him.

The same construction is employed in the relation of intensity, when the intensity is represented as in an equal relation with the effect really produced; in English 'so . . . that,' or 'so . . . as to.' For example:—*So verabscheut ist die Tyrannei, daß sie kein Werkzeug findet, Sch.*, tyranny is so much abhorred, that it finds no tool. *Ich war so heiser, daß ich keinen einzigen Ton hervorbringen konnte*, I was so hoarse, as to be unable to utter a single sound.

But when the intensity is represented as in an unequal relation with the effect which is only assumed to be produced, the dependent clause is introduced by *als daß*, which corresponds to *zu*, too, placed before an adjective or adverb in the principal clause, the verb in the dependent clause being in the conditional; *e.g.*—*Das Herz der Königin war zu groß, als daß sie mit ihren Wohlthaten bei ihrem Lande stehen geblieben wäre, Hauff*, the heart of the queen was too large for her to confine her benefits to her own country. The dependent clause, however, can in this case be abridged into a construction with a supine, with or without *um*, the conjunction *als* being omitted; *e.g.*—*Er ist zu ehrlich, um eine Unwahrheit zu sagen*, he is too honest to say a falsehood. *Er war zu sehr Barbar, um eine schöne That zu ehren, Pfeffel*, he was too much of a barbarian to honour a noble action.

## EXERCISE LXIX.

The world will judge<sup>1</sup> differently. How does he behave?<sup>2</sup> Who gives quickly, gives twice (say, double). I esteem him very much for<sup>3</sup> his firmness of character.<sup>4</sup> The father's prodigality<sup>5</sup> has almost reduced<sup>6</sup> the family to beggary. One can scarcely perceive<sup>7</sup> the difference.<sup>8</sup> A wise man acts with circumspection.<sup>9</sup> One must bear<sup>10</sup> the unavoidable<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To judge, urtheilen. <sup>2</sup> To behave, sich betragen. <sup>3</sup> For, wegen.

<sup>4</sup> Firmness of character, Charakterfestigkeit. <sup>5</sup> Prodigality, Verschwendung.

<sup>6</sup> To reduce to beggary, an den Bettelstab bringen. <sup>7</sup> To perceive, wahrnehmen. <sup>8</sup> Difference, Unterschied, m. <sup>9</sup> Circumspection, Umsicht. <sup>10</sup> To bear, ertragen. <sup>11</sup> The unavoidable, das Unvermeidliche.

with dignity. She plays and sings without taste. She dresses<sup>12</sup> after the newest fashion. In what manner have you learned this? Which pupil translates most fluently? He wanders<sup>13</sup> cheerfully<sup>14</sup> through life. Speak [so] as thou thinkest. As [the] incense<sup>15</sup> revives<sup>16</sup> the life of a coal, so [the] prayer revives the hopes of the heart. As the mother is the example<sup>17</sup> of the daughter, so is the father the example of the son. He does as if he were innocent. He looks, as if he could trouble<sup>18</sup> no water. The lake is as deep, as the tower<sup>19</sup> is high. As weighty causes<sup>20</sup> as Ludovic<sup>21</sup> had to bring about<sup>22</sup> the neutrality,<sup>23</sup> as cogent<sup>24</sup> reasons<sup>25</sup> had Gustavus Adolphus<sup>26</sup> to wish *for* the contrary.<sup>27</sup> The higher the mountain is, the deeper is the valley. The purer the thoughts of men are, the more do they harmonise.<sup>28</sup> The saying,<sup>29</sup> 'do right, fear<sup>30</sup> no one,' contains more wisdom than all *the* works on social intercourse<sup>31</sup> are able to teach. The life of man passes away<sup>32</sup> as the grass in (say, upon) the field. She is as beautiful as her sister. Knaves<sup>33</sup> live as naturally<sup>34</sup> upon<sup>35</sup> fools, as spiders<sup>36</sup> *do* upon flies.<sup>37</sup> A dog runs faster than a horse. I write so that everybody can read it. So *much* have I exalted<sup>38</sup> him, that my servants tremble before his authority<sup>39</sup> more than *before* my own (say, mine). The storm was so violent that many trees were uprooted.<sup>40</sup> He was so foolish as to rush<sup>41</sup> into the greatest danger. The gulf<sup>42</sup> between God and man is so great, that man would have to despair<sup>43</sup> of ever arriving<sup>44</sup> (say, ever to arrive) at the beholding<sup>45</sup> of the most-High, if God did not come to meet<sup>46</sup> him. He is too conscious<sup>47</sup> of his own strength to evade<sup>48</sup> difficulties. I am too weak to go out.

<sup>12</sup> To dress, sich kleiden. <sup>13</sup> To wander, wallen. <sup>14</sup> Cheerfully, frohen Sinnes.

<sup>15</sup> Incense, Weihrauch. <sup>16</sup> To revive, erfrischen. <sup>17</sup> Example, Vorbild.

<sup>18</sup> To trouble, trüben. <sup>19</sup> Tower, Thurm. <sup>20</sup> Cause, Ursache. <sup>21</sup> Ludovic, Ludwig.

<sup>22</sup> To bring about, zu Stande bringen. <sup>23</sup> Neutrality, Neutralität.

<sup>24</sup> Cogent, triftig. <sup>25</sup> Reason, Grund. <sup>26</sup> Gustavus Adolphus, Gustav Adolf.

<sup>27</sup> Contrary, Gegentheil, n. <sup>28</sup> To harmonise, zusammenstimmen. <sup>29</sup> Saying, Spruch.

<sup>30</sup> To fear, scheuen. <sup>31</sup> On social intercourse, über den Umgang mit Menschen.

<sup>32</sup> To pass away, vergehen. <sup>33</sup> Knave, Schurke. <sup>34</sup> As naturally, ebenso natürlich.

<sup>35</sup> Upon, here von. <sup>36</sup> Spider, Spinne. <sup>37</sup> Fly, Fliege.

<sup>38</sup> To exalt, erheben. <sup>39</sup> Authority, Ansehen, n. <sup>40</sup> To uproot, ausreißen.

<sup>41</sup> To rush, sich stürzen. <sup>42</sup> Gulf, Schlucht. <sup>43</sup> Would have to despair, zweifeln müßte.

<sup>44</sup> To arrive at, gelangen zu. <sup>45</sup> Beholding, Anschauen, n.

<sup>46</sup> To come to meet, entgegenkommen, with the dative. <sup>47</sup> Too conscious, sich . . . zu sehr bewußt.

<sup>48</sup> To evade, aus dem Wege gehen, with the dative.

## RELATIONS OF CAUSE AND PURPOSE.

§ 378. The adverbial determination indicating the cause or purpose of a predicated state or action, is expressed by prepositions, or by adverbial clauses.

1. A *real* cause is expressed by the following prepositions:—*von*, *vor* with the dative, *vermöge* indicate the active cause of an effect suffered by the subject; *durch* and *vermittelt* indicate the means which produces an effect; *aus* and *von* indicate the material of which anything is made. For example:—*Die Flüsse schwellen von dem Regen*, the rivers are swelling from the rain. *Sie weinen vor Schmerz und vor Freude, Sch.*, they weep for pain and joy. *Ein Stein fällt vermöge seiner Schwere zu Boden*, a stone falls to the ground by reason of its weight. *Durch falsches Zeugniß glaubt' er sich zu retten, Sch.*, through a false evidence he believes to save himself. *Vermittelt der geheimen Verständnisse hoffte der Herzog die Städte zu erschöpfen, Sch.*, by means of the secret understandings the duke hoped to exhaust the towns. *Er fertigt seine Bildsäulen aus Marmor*, he makes his statues of marble. *Von schönem Stammholz ist das Haus gezimmert, Sch.*, the house is built of fine timber.

2. A *moral* ground or motive is indicated by the prepositions *aus*, *wegen*, *halber* or *halben*, *um . . . willen*. For example:—*Er hilft den Armen aus Barmherzigkeit*, he helps the poor from charity. *Er reist seiner Gesundheit wegen nach Italien*, he goes to Italy on account of his health. *Er thut es der Ehre halber*, he does it for the sake of honour. *Um meiner Ruhe willen erklären Sie sich deutlicher*, for the sake of my peace explain yourself.

3. A *logical* ground—that is, a cause by which a person derives some knowledge, or is enabled to form an opinion—is expressed by *aus*, *an* with the dative, *nach*, *gemäß*, *zufolge*, *laut*. For example:—*Ich weiß es aus Erfahrung, aus der Zeitung*, I know it from experience, from the newspaper. *An ihren Früchten sollt ihr sie erkennen, B.*, ye shall know them by their fruits. *Mein Schwert, ich feur's an guten*

Klang, *U.*, my sword, I know it by the good sound. *Das* ist nach seiner Haltung ein Soldat, that is a soldier by his bearing.

4. A *possible* ground—that is, a ground on the realisation of which the reality of the effect is made to depend—is expressed by the preposition *bei*. For example:—*Bei großer Sommerhitze* werden die Trauben süß, with great heat of summer (that is, if the heat of summer is great) the grapes become sweet.

5. The real as well as the moral ground is called an *adversative* ground, when it is contrary to the reality of the predicate. It is expressed by *wider*, *zuwider*, *ungeachtet*, *troß*, sometimes *bei*. For example:—*Er ist wider meinen Willen* hergekommen, he has come here against my will. *Ungeachtet der Dunkelheit der Nacht* fanden wir den Weg, notwithstanding the darkness of the night we found our way. *Er machte sich troß der heftigen Kälte* auf den Weg, he set out on his way in spite of the intense cold. *Bei aller ihrer Sparsamkeit* wurden wir doch nicht reicher, we never grew richer with all her contrivances.

6. A *purpose*—that is, the intended effect of an action—is expressed by the preposition *zu*. For example:—*Er liest zur Unterhaltung der Gesellschaft* ein Buch vor, he is reading a book for the entertainment of the company. *Was konnten wir zu seiner Rettung wagen?* *Sch.*, what could we venture to do for his deliverance?

But when the purpose of an activity is the advantage or disadvantage of a person, or of an object conceived as a person, the former is indicated by *für*, sometimes *um* . . . *wissen*, the latter by *wider* or *gegen*. For example:—*Er sammelt Geld für die Armen*, he collects money for the poor. *Eltern arbeiten und sparen um ihrer Kinder willen*, parents work and save for (the sake of) their children. *Ich sterbe für die Freiheit*, für die ich lebte und focht, *G.*, I die for the liberty for which I lived and fought. *Die Briefe haben wider dich gezeugt*, *Sch.*, the letters have been evidence against thee. *Brüder stritten gegen Brüder*, brothers fought against brothers.

## EXERCISE LXX.

From the prison-air<sup>1</sup> his face had become pale. The fields reeked<sup>2</sup> with blood. She could not speak for sobbing.<sup>3</sup> His whole face shone<sup>4</sup> with joy. By virtue of its weight<sup>5</sup> the stone sinks into the water. The Greeks took<sup>6</sup> Troy<sup>7</sup> by stratagem. Many make themselves wretched<sup>8</sup> by their own folly.<sup>9</sup> We are created out of dust. This cup<sup>10</sup> is made of boxwood.<sup>11</sup> Paper is made of rags.<sup>12</sup> From avarice<sup>13</sup> he drinks only water. He calumniates<sup>14</sup> his neighbour from envy.<sup>15</sup> I warn you from friendship. One praises him for (say, on account of) his skill<sup>16</sup> in painting.<sup>17</sup> On account of the expenses the journey was not undertaken.<sup>18</sup> For the sake of his friend he would have risked everything. I speak from experience. We know the bird by the feathers. We must not judge<sup>19</sup> of a man by<sup>20</sup> his outside.<sup>21</sup> I shall act according to my conviction.<sup>22</sup> Agreeably to the devised<sup>23</sup> plan, all *the* regiments will be collected<sup>24</sup> on a certain<sup>25</sup> day. With a favourable wind one makes the voyage<sup>26</sup> in twelve days. I have come here against my will. In spite of the bad weather I must set out<sup>27</sup> on my journey. With<sup>28</sup> all his virtues he did not escape<sup>29</sup> the calumnies<sup>30</sup> of the courtiers.<sup>31</sup> He travels only for his amusement.<sup>32</sup> The estate will be offered<sup>33</sup> for sale.<sup>34</sup> He applies<sup>35</sup> his fortune to good purposes.<sup>36</sup> For what purpose<sup>37</sup> did we learn to bend<sup>38</sup> the cross-bow?<sup>39</sup> What can I do for you? Many Christians suffered persecution<sup>40</sup> and death for the truth. He has borne<sup>41</sup> false witness against his neighbour.<sup>42</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Prison-air, Kerkerluft. <sup>2</sup> To reek with, rauchen von. <sup>3</sup> Sobbing, Schluchzen. <sup>4</sup> To shine, leuchten. <sup>5</sup> Weight, Schwere. <sup>6</sup> To take, erobern. <sup>7</sup> Troy, Troja. <sup>8</sup> Wretched, unglücklich. <sup>9</sup> Folly, Thorheit. <sup>10</sup> Cup, Becher. <sup>11</sup> Boxwood, Buchsbaumholz. <sup>12</sup> Rag, Lump. <sup>13</sup> Avarice, Geiz. <sup>14</sup> To calumniate, verleumben. <sup>15</sup> Envy, Neid. <sup>16</sup> Skill, Geschicklichkeit. <sup>17</sup> In painting, im Malen. <sup>18</sup> Was not undertaken, unterblieb. <sup>19</sup> To judge of, beurtheilen. <sup>20</sup> By, nach. <sup>21</sup> Outside, Aeußere, n. <sup>22</sup> Conviction, Ueberzeugung. <sup>23</sup> Devised, entworfen. <sup>24</sup> To collect, zusammenziehen. <sup>25</sup> Certain, bestimmt. <sup>26</sup> Voyage, Reise. <sup>27</sup> To set out on a journey, sich auf die Reise machen. <sup>28</sup> With, here bei. <sup>29</sup> To escape, entgehen. (See § 353.) <sup>30</sup> Calumny, Verleumdung. <sup>31</sup> Courtier, Höfling. <sup>32</sup> Amusement, Vergnügen. <sup>33</sup> To offer, anbieten. <sup>34</sup> For sale, zum Verkauf. <sup>35</sup> To apply, anwenden. <sup>36</sup> Purpose, Zweck. <sup>37</sup> For what purpose, wozu. <sup>38</sup> To bend, spannen. (See § 365.) <sup>39</sup> Cross-bow, Armbrust. <sup>40</sup> Persecution, Verfolgung. <sup>41</sup> To bear false witness, falsch Zeugniß reden. <sup>42</sup> Neighbour, Nächste.

§ 379. When an adverbial sentence is employed to indicate the relation of causality, various conjunctions may be used to connect it with the principal clause. *Weil* expresses both a real and moral cause, and answers to the English 'because.' For the sake of emphasis it is sometimes preceded in the principal clause by one of the adverbial compounds, *darum*, *deswegen*, *desßhalb*, meaning 'on this account,' 'for this cause.' *Da*, on the other hand, indicates a logical cause from which an inference is drawn. It answers to 'as' or 'since,' but is very frequently expressed in English by a participial construction. When the dependent clause beginning with *da* or *weil* precedes the principal one, the latter sometimes commences with *so*, the order being inverted. Examples:—*Sie weichen einander auß, weil sie keine Freunde sind*, they avoid each other, because they are no friends. *Die Blume schließt ihren Kelch, weil es Abend wird*, the flower closes its calyx, because evening draws on. *Da er ein Spanier ist, so muß er die spanische Sprache verstehen*, as he is a Spaniard, he must understand the Spanish language. *Sie kannte die Welt durchaus, da sie in ihrer Jugend in der Nähe des Hofes gelebt hatte*, she had a thorough knowledge of the world, *having lived* in her youth about the court. *Da der Kaiser einsah, daß er sich auf seine Truppen nicht verlassen konnte, so zog er sich plötzlich in die Quartiere zurück*, the emperor, *perceiving* that he could not trust his troops, retired abruptly to his quarters. The adverb *nun* is sometimes used instead of *da*, but in reference to present time only; *e.g.*—*Nun ich sie dir empfehle, sterb' ich ruhig*, *G.*, now that I recommend her to you, I die tranquilly.

Some causal relations are expressed by sentences beginning with the conjunction *daß*, and preceded in the principal clause by one of the adverbial compounds, *davon* or *daher*, from this; *dadurch*, through or by this; *daraus*, from this; *daran*, by this. The English, in such cases, generally do not employ the conjunction 'that' with a finite verb, but draw both clauses into one, by joining to the preposition 'from' or 'by' the participle of the verb in the dependent clause. Examples:—*Sie ist davon krank geworden, daß sie zu viel Obst gegessen hat*, she has become ill *from eating* too much fruit. *Seine Krankheit rührt daher, daß er zu viel arbeitet*, his illness is owing *to his studying* too much. *Er rettete sich*

dadurch, daß er zum Fenster hinaussprang, he saved himself *by springing* out of the window. Daß er krank ist, schließe ich daraus, daß er mir nicht geschrieben hat, that he is ill, I infer from his not *having written* me.

§ 380. Adverbial clauses expressing a purpose take the conjunctions damit or daß, 'that, in order that,' the verb being put in the conjunctive or conditional (§ 314, 3). For the sake of emphasis, the adverbial compound darum, 'for this purpose,' is sometimes put before the dependent clause containing the purpose. For example:—Er eilt heim mit sorgender Seele, damit er die Frist nicht verfehle, *Sch.*, he hastens home with an anxious mind, lest he should fail of the appointed time. Nun zerbricht mir das Gebäude, daß sich Herz und Auge weide, *Sch.*, now break the fabric, that heart and eye may delight themselves. Darum bin ich eben vorangeilt, damit ich euch in Fassung setzen und ermahnen möchte, *Sch.*, for this purpose I have hastened hither, that I might prepare and admonish you. Auf daß is sometimes employed for daß, but this usage is rather obsolete; *e. g.*—Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest im Lande, das dir der Herr, dein Gott, giebt, *B.*, honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

§ 381. A purpose is frequently expressed by the supine, often preceded by the preposition um, 'for,' which is placed at the head of the clause stating the purpose, whilst the supine is placed at the end. This construction is chiefly made use of, when the subject is the same in the principal and dependent clauses. Examples:—Ich komme, Abschied zu nehmen, I come to take leave. Wie oft hast du mit den Stunden des Schlafes gedarbt, um sie der Weisheit zu schenken? *Engel*, how often hast thou deprived thyself of the hours of sleep, in order to give them to wisdom? Warum kommt er nicht, um meinen letzten Segen zu empfangen? *Sch.*, why does he not come to receive my last blessing?

§ 382. Among the adverbial sentences which express causal relations, there are also comprised hypothetical sentences—that is, sentences expressing a condition—and the concessive sentences—that is, sentences implying a concession or granting anything. The former indicate the relation of



the possible ground, the latter that of the adversative ground. (§ 378, 4 and 5.)

Hypothetical sentences are generally introduced by the conjunction *wenn*, 'if,' sometimes by *so*, *falls*, *wo*, *wofern*, 'in case.' When the hypothetical clause precedes the principal one, the latter is generally put in the inverted form, and often commences with the adverb *so*, which may be rendered in English by 'then.' For example:—*Wenn ein Ring bricht, so reißt die ganze Kette*, if one link breaks, (then) the whole chain breaks. *Falls er dich fragt, so sprich die Wahrheit*, in case he ask thee, say the truth. Hypothetical clauses also very frequently assume the inverted form, the conjunction being dropped; as—*Hätt' ich Schwingen, hätte ich Flügel, nach den Höhen zög' ich hin, Sch.*, had I pinions, had I wings, I should fly to those hills.

Note.

A condition is sometimes expressed by an imperative clause, if its realisation involves the certainty of the inference. The inference, in such cases, is introduced by *so* or *und*. For example:—*Halte meine Gebote, so wirst du leben, B.*, keep my commandments and live. *Sei im Besitze, und du wohnst im Recht*, be in possession, and thou art in the right. A concessive clause also is sometimes turned into an imperative one for a similar reason; *e. g.*—*Sage was du willst, du kannst es doch nicht ändern*, say what thou chooseth, yet thou canst not help it.

§ 383. Concessive sentences are introduced by one of the conjunctions, *obgleich*, *ob schon*, *obwohl*, *ob auch*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn schon*, *wenn auch*, *wiewohl*, all meaning 'although;' or *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding; *wie . . . auch*, *so . . . auch*, however. When the principal clause follows the dependent one containing the concession, the former commonly begins with *so*, and in prose generally assumes the inverted form, one of the adverbs *doch*, *dennoch*, *gleichwohl*, yet, still, being inserted. For example:—*Obgleich das Wetter ungünstig war, so reiste er doch ab*, although the weather was unfavourable, he still set out. *Ob schon er noch sehr jung ist, so hat er doch viel Erfahrung gehabt*, although he is very young, yet he has had much experience.

Those concessive conjunctions which are compounded with *ob* or *wenn*, often occur in such a form that the second member (*gleich*, *schon*, *wohl*, *auch*) is separated from the first and placed after the subject, or even after the object of the

clause; *e.g.*—Ob das Wetter gleich ungünstig war, so reiste er doch ab, although the weather was unfavourable, yet he set out. Wenn es dir gleich unangenehm ist, so muß ich dich dennoch tadeln, though it be unpleasant to thee, yet I must blame thee.

Frequently the first part of the conjunction (ob, wenn) is dropped, and the second part (gleich, schon, wohl, auch) is inserted as before, the clause assuming an inverted form; *e.g.*—Hat uns auch der Mai verlassen, Jugend ist im Winter Mai, *Platen*, although May has left us, youth is May even in winter.

In poetry, ob by itself is used in a concessive sense, the second member being entirely suppressed; *e.g.*—ob uns der See, ob uns die Berge scheiden, *Sch.*, though the lake, though the mountains separate us.

When the concession is a merely assumed one, involving the contrary, it is sometimes expressed by the mere inversion of the sentence, the verb being in the conditional mood; *e.g.*—Und käm' die Hölle selber in die Schranken, mir soll der Muth nicht weichen und nicht wanken, *Sch.*, and even though hell itself entered the lists, my courage shall not yield nor falter.

The two members of the conjunctions wie . . . auch and so . . . auch are always separated; *e.g.*—Wie weit er auch spähet und blicket, *Sch.*, however far he spies and looks. Sometimes the first member alone occurs—So allgewaltig Elisabeth war, so würde sie gleichwohl nicht gewagt haben, &c., *Rotteck*, powerful as Elizabeth was, yet she would not have dared, &c. Ihr müßtet euch, so schwer sie war, der Buße schweigend fügen, *Sch.*, you ought to have submitted to the punishment, however heavy it was.

Note.

Interrogative concessive sentences are constructed in the same manner as those beginning with wie . . . auch, or so . . . auch. For example:—Wer er auch sei, ich fürchte ihn nicht, whoever he is, I do not fear him. Was es auch sei, dein Leben sich' ich dir, *Sch.*, whatever it be, I guarantee your life.

## EXERCISE LXXI.

He is jealous<sup>1</sup> of thee, because thou art happy. One must not condemn<sup>2</sup> a character<sup>3</sup> as a bad one, because it is not a (say, no) perfectly good one. As we lived near<sup>4</sup> the road,<sup>5</sup> we<sup>6</sup> often had the traveller or stranger visit us, to taste our gooseberry-wine.<sup>7</sup> Seeing my friend in this situation, I hastened to his relief.<sup>8</sup> The train having been detained<sup>9</sup> by (say, through) an accident,<sup>10</sup> the letters have not arrived at<sup>11</sup> the usual time. Hoping that you would come to see<sup>12</sup> me this evening, I remained at home. He has become brown by having constantly<sup>13</sup> exposed<sup>14</sup> himself to the heat of the sun.<sup>15</sup> Many ruin<sup>16</sup> their health by living intemperately<sup>17</sup> in their youth. One knows a true friend by this, that he remains faithful in misfortune.<sup>18</sup> The boys have been sent to a grammar-school,<sup>19</sup> that they may learn Latin and Greek. I shew<sup>20</sup> you the danger, in order that you may avoid<sup>21</sup> it. One does not live, in order to eat, but one eats, in order to live. He goes to Berlin to study medicine.<sup>22</sup> To judge<sup>23</sup> rightly of the present,<sup>24</sup> we must oppose<sup>25</sup> it to the past.<sup>26</sup> The physician prevailed<sup>27</sup> on the prince to make an excursion<sup>28</sup> upon the river, in order to change<sup>29</sup> the air. When the day scarcely begins to dawn,<sup>30</sup> the lark<sup>31</sup> is already on the wing,<sup>32</sup> to salute<sup>33</sup> the early harbinger<sup>34</sup> of the coming day. If thou art content with thy destiny, thou art happy. If thou savest<sup>35</sup> to-day, thou wilt suffer no want to-morrow. In case it should rain, we shall not go out. Charles the

<sup>1</sup> Jealous, neidisch, with the preposition auf. <sup>2</sup> To condemn, verdammen. <sup>3</sup> Character, Charakter. <sup>4</sup> Near, nahe an. <sup>5</sup> Road, Landstraße. <sup>6</sup> We often had, &c., so wurden wir oft von Reisenden oder Fremden besucht. <sup>7</sup> Gooseberry-wine, Stachelbeerwein. <sup>8</sup> To his relief, ihm zu Hülfe. <sup>9</sup> To detain, aufhalten. <sup>10</sup> Accident, Unglücksfall. <sup>11</sup> At, zu. <sup>12</sup> To come to see, besuchen. <sup>13</sup> Constantly, fortwährend. <sup>14</sup> To expose, aussetzen. <sup>15</sup> Heat of the sun, Sonnenhitze. <sup>16</sup> To ruin, zu Grunde richten. <sup>17</sup> Intemperately, unmäßig. <sup>18</sup> In misfortune, im Unglück. <sup>19</sup> To a grammar-school, auf eine Gelehrtenschule. <sup>20</sup> To shew, auf etwas aufmerksam machen. <sup>21</sup> To avoid, aus dem Wege gehen, with the dative. <sup>22</sup> Medicine, Medizin. <sup>23</sup> To judge of, beurtheilen. <sup>24</sup> Present, Gegenwart, f. <sup>25</sup> To oppose, entgegenstellen. <sup>26</sup> Past, Vergangenheit. <sup>27</sup> To prevail on, herreden. <sup>28</sup> Excursion, Spazierfahrt. <sup>29</sup> To change, verändern. <sup>30</sup> To dawn, dämmern. <sup>31</sup> Lark, Lerche. <sup>32</sup> On the wing, auf ihren Flügeln. <sup>33</sup> To salute, begrüßen. <sup>34</sup> Harbinger, Bote. <sup>35</sup> To save, sparen.

Fifth would not have been so unfortunate, had he been as prudent as he was valiant. Save<sup>36</sup> a thief from the gallows,<sup>37</sup> and he will cut<sup>38</sup> thy throat<sup>39</sup> (say, to thee the throat). Say yes or no, and<sup>40</sup> we are satisfied. Although he is old, yet his mind<sup>41</sup> is still youthful. The soldiers did not murmur,<sup>42</sup> although they had to endure many hardships.<sup>43</sup> Though many sing the praise of [the] virtue, yet only few give themselves the trouble of practising<sup>44</sup> it. Though a man possessed all earthly goods, wealth alone could not make him happy. However little he was, he still possessed great strength. Whatever the punishment may be, you will be obliged to submit<sup>45</sup> to it. Every citizen,<sup>46</sup> whoever he may be, must obey<sup>47</sup> the laws.

<sup>36</sup> To save, retten. <sup>37</sup> Gallows, Galgen. <sup>38</sup> To cut, abschneiden. <sup>39</sup> Throat, Gurgel, f. <sup>40</sup> And we are satisfied, so sind wir schon zufrieden. <sup>41</sup> Mind, Geist. <sup>42</sup> To murmur, murren. <sup>43</sup> Hardship, Beschwerde. <sup>44</sup> To practise, üben. <sup>45</sup> To submit, sich unterwerfen. <sup>46</sup> Citizen, Bürger. <sup>47</sup> See § 352.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

d. d.	=	das ist, that is.
d. h.	=	das heißt, that means.
d. J.	=	dieses Jahres, of this year.
d. M.	=	dieses Monats, of this month.
Dr.	=	Dokter, Doctor.
Eu.	=	Euer, Eure, your . . . }
Eur.	=	Eurer, to your . . . }
f. or ff.	=	folgende, and the following page, pages, &c.
geb.	=	geboren, born.
gest.	=	gestorben, died.
Hr.	=	Herr, Mr.
Hrn.	=	Herrn, to Mr.
i. J.	=	im Jahre, in the year.
Mspt.	=	Manuscript, manuscript.
N. S.	=	Nachschrift, postscript.
Prof.	=	Professor, professor.
S.	=	Seite, page.
Se.	=	Seine, his . . . }
Se.	=	Seiner, to his . . . }
St.	=	Sanct, saint.
s.	=	siehe, see.
u. f. f.	=	und so ferner, }
u. f. w.	=	und so weiter, } and so forth.
v. Chr. Geb.	=	vor Christi Geburt, before the birth of Christ.
vergl. or vgl.	=	vergleiche, compare.
z. B.	=	zum Beispiel, for example.

The following abbreviations of Latin words are also frequently met with:—

a. c.	=	<i>anni currentis</i> , of the current year.
a. C. n.	=	<i>ante Christum natum</i> , before the birth of Christ.
dd.	=	<i>dedit</i> , paid.
L. S.	=	<i>loco sigilli</i> , in place of the seal.
n. b.	=	<i>nota bene</i> , observe.
p.	=	<i>pagina</i> , page.
p. C. n.	=	<i>post Christum natum</i> , after the birth of Christ.
p. t.	=	<i>pro tempore</i> , for the time.
v.	=	<i>vide</i> , see.

# I N D E X.

---

\*. \* The numbers in the Index refer to the §, and *n.* signifies *Note*.

- a, its pronunciation, 3.
- ā, its pronunciation, 4.
- Abbreviations, *see* opposite page.
- aber, conjunction, 258, 259.
- aber, prefix of substantives, 277, 4.
- Absolute superlative of adjectives, 183, 185; of adverbs, 241, 3.
- Abstract substantives, 113, 115, 168.
- Accentuation, 27-31; full accent, 29; subordinate accent, 30; unaccented syllables, 31.
- Accusative with transitive verbs, 338-343; with some intransitive verbs, 344, 349; expresses measure, weight, age, or value, 345; governed by adjectives, 350; expresses time, 369; used in elliptical clauses, 373, *n.*
- Active form of verbs, 52, 295. An active sentence changed into a passive, 296.
- Adjective clause, 283, 386; abbreviated, 337.
- Adjectives, their declension, 171-178; indeclinable adjectives in *er* formed from proper names of places, 176, 275, 2, *n.* 2; adjectives used as substantives, 116, 178; comparison of adjectives, 179-186; adjectives and participles which cannot have any degrees of comparison, 187-188; derivation of adjectives, 264-266, 275; compound adjectives, 278; adjectives which cannot be employed in a predicative sense, 287, *n.* 2; adjectives used only in a predicative sense, 287, *n.* 3; attributive relation of adjectives, 320-324; an adjective expresses the result of an action with transitive and some intransitive verbs, 343, and *note*. "
- Adverbial clause, 283; containing a comparison, 315, 4; expressing the relation of place, 367; of time, 370-372; of manner and intensity, 375-377; of cause and purpose, 379-383.
- Adverbial expression, 45, 281, 366-383.
- Adverbs, 239-243; formation, 240; degrees of comparison, 241-242; peculiar signification of some adverbs, 243. *See* also 'Pronominal adverbs.'
- Adversative conjunctions, 258.
- after, prefix of substantives, 277, 4.
- ai, its pronunciation, 7.
- all* expressed by *ganj*, 234, *n.* 1.

- allein**, conjunction, 258, 259.  
**aller**, *c*, *es*, 234; *aller* strengthens a relative superlative, 184, *n*. 1.  
**Alphabet**, 1.  
**als**, 257, 3; 370; differs from *wenn*, 370, *n*. 1; after a comparative, 182, *n*. 2; 376; with verbs of considering, representing, &c., 342, 343.  
**also**, 258.  
**als ob** or **als wenn**, 257, 3; 375.  
**am** before a superlative, 184, *n*. 2; 241, 2; 374.  
**an**, 248, 368, 378; governed by verbs, 359, 1; by adjectives, 359, 2.  
**andere**, obsolete in the sense of a numeral, 223, *n*.  
**angesichts**, 249, *n*. 2.  
**anstatt**, 249.  
**ant**, prefix of substantives, 277, 4.  
**Apodosis** or consequent clause, 284.  
**Apposition**, 326-327.  
**Article**, use of the definite and indefinite, 117-128; its history, 117, *n*.; its declension, 118; contraction of the definite article with prepositions, 118; article with common names, 119-120; with proper names, 121, 159, 161; with names of materials, 122; with collective substantives, 123; with abstract substantives, 124.  
**Assertion**, 41-43.  
**-at**, suffix of substantives, 273, 7; shewing their gender, 182, 3, *n*.  
**Attribute**, 44, 319.  
**Attributive combination**, 281, 319-337.  
**au**, its pronunciation, 7.  
**äu**, its pronunciation, 7.  
**auch**, its peculiar meanings, 243, 9; joined to relative pronouns and pronominal adverbs, 212.  
**auf**, 248, 368, 374; in the superlative of adverbs, 241, 3; governed by verbs, 347, 349, 359, 1; by adjectives, 359, 2.  
**auf daß**, 380.  
**Augment**, see *ge*.  
**aus**, 246, 378.  
**außer**, 246.  
**außerhalb**, 249.  
**Auxiliary verbs of mood**, their conjugation, 95-102; their use, 317.  
**Auxiliary verbs of tense**, 64-69; omitted in dependent clauses, 285.  
**ay**, antiquated, 7, *n*.  
**ß**, its pronunciation, 25.  
**balb**, its degrees of comparison, 242.  
**balb . . . balb**, 258.  
**-bar**, suffix of adjectives, 275, 4.  
**Bar**, its derivation, 145, *n*.  
**be**, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 1.  
**behuße**, 249, *n*. 2.  
**bei**, 246, 368, 378.  
**beide**, 220, *n*. 2.  
**bevor**, 370.  
**binnen**, 250, 368.  
**bis**, preposition, 251, 368; conjunction, 257, 3; 370.  
**both . . . and**, 220, *n*. 2.  
**brauchen** used as an auxiliary verb of mood, 317, 4.  
**Bräutigam**, its derivation, 277, 1, *n*.  
*c*, its pronunciation, 21.  
**Cardinal numerals**, 218-221.  
**Cause expressed by prepositions**, 378; by a clause, 379, 382, 383; causal conjunctions, 257, 3; 258.  
**ch**, its pronunciation, 14.  
**chen**, suffix of substantives, 272, 4; shewing their gender, 182, 6.  
**chs**, its pronunciation, 14.  
**Clauses**, co-ordinate and dependent, 256, 282; dependent substantive, adjective, adverbial, 257, 283. See also 'Sentences.'  
**Collective names**, 114, 167.  
**Common names**, 114, 165.  
**Comparative degree of adjectives**, 179-182; of adverbs, 241.  
**Compound adjectives**, 278; equal to absolute superlatives, 185, *n*.  
**Compound letters**, 2.

- Compound phrases used like separable compound verbs, 112.
- Compound substantives, their gender, 132, 6; declension, 149; formation, 277.
- Compound verbs, 73; separable and inseparable, 106-112; verbs compounded with substantives and adjectives, 111; formation of compound verbs, 279.
- Concession expressed by conjunctions, 257, 3; 258; mood in concessive clauses, 315, 2; their construction, 383.
- Concrete substantives, 113-114.
- Condition expressed by conjunctions, 257, 3; mood in clauses stating a condition, 315, 1; construction of clauses expressing a condition, 382.
- Conditional mood, 55, 315; formation of the conditional of the present, 61, 4.
- Conjugation of verbs, 60; strong and weak, 61-62; paradigms of the strong conjugation, 70-71; of the weak, 72; irregular, 93-101.
- Conjunctions, 255-259; subordinative, 257; co-ordinative, 258-259.
- Conjunctive mood, 55, 314.
- Consonants, 8-26; their classification, 9.
- Copula or link, 287.
- Copulative conjunctions, 258.
- ð*, its pronunciation, 18.
- ð* or *-de*, suffix of substantives, 265.
- da*, pronominal adverb, 211; with a preposition annexed, 193, 200, n. 2; conjunction, 257, 3; 370, and *note*; differs from *weil*, 379.
- bagegen*, 258.
- daßer, daßwegen, daßhalb, darum, &c.*, 258, 379, 380.
- damit*, 257, 3; 380
- dann*, 211.
- dannen* or *von bannen*, 211.
- daß*, 257; omitted, 314, 1; *daß* with a finite verb, used instead of the 'accusative with the infinitive,' 363; after *daßon, daßer, daßurch, &c.*, introduces a cause, 379; introduces a purpose, 380.
- Date of the month, 224.
- Dative expresses the remote object of transitive verbs, 338, 351; governed by simple intransitive verbs, 352; by intransitive verbs compounded with prefixes, 353; by compound verbal expressions, 354; by impersonal phrases, 355; by adjectives, 356; idiomatic use of the dative instead of the possessive genitive or possessive pronoun, 357; ethical dative, 358.
- Declension of substantives, 134-170; general view, 134-137; paradigms, 138; modification of vowel, 139; substantives of the strong declension, 140; contracted form, 141; enlarged form, 142; feminine substantives following the strong declension, 143; substantives of the weak declension, 144-145; peculiarities in declension, 146-147; substantives having a double plural, 148; declension of compound substantives, 149; of foreign substantives, 150-153; of proper names, 154-164.
- Declension of adjectives, 171-178; general view, 171; strong and weak declensions, 173-175.
- Declension of cardinal numerals, 219-221; of ordinal numerals, 223.
- demnach*, 258.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 199-204.
- dein*, 258, 259.
- demnoch*, 258.
- der, die, das*, definite article, 117; declension, 118; used to shew the case with some proper names, 158; demonstrative pronoun,



- 199-200; relative pronoun, 208, 210.
- Derivation, 262-275; roots, 262-263; primary derivatives, 264-266; secondary derivatives, 267-275; derivative verbs, 270-271; their conjugation, 73, 92; derivative substantives, 272-274; derivative adjectives, 275.
- derjenige, its declension, 199; its use, 203.
- der nämlich, 204, n. 2.
- derselbe, its declension, 199; its use, 204.
- derselbige, 204, n. 2.
- deß used for dessen, 208, n. 1.
- dessen and dem used for the genitive and dative of the neuter of the third personal pronoun, 193.
- deffenungeachtet, 258.
- deutsch, its derivation, *Introduction*; 275, 2, n. 1.
- tiefer, its declension, 199; its use, 201.
- dießseit, 249.
- Diphthongs, 7.
- Distinctive numerals, 225.
- Distributive numerals, 222.
- doch, adverb; peculiar meanings, 243, 8; strengthens the intensity of a wish, 315, 3; conjunction, 258.
- dort, 211.
- brei, its declension, 220.
- durch, 247, 378; prefix, 109.
- dürfen, its conjugation, 96; its use, 317, 2, and *note*.
- e, its pronunciation, 3; thrown out in conjugation, 62, n.; in the declension of substantives, 138, n.; of adjectives, 173, n. 2.
- e, suffix of substantives, 265, 273, 5; shewing their gender, 132, 3.
- even, 243, 2.
- eben derselbe, 204, n. 2.
- eße, 257, 3; 370.
- ei, its pronunciation, 7
- ei, suffix of substantives, 273, 4; shewing their gender, 132, 3.
- ein, indefinite article, 117; its declension, 118; numeral, 219; used in the sense of 'the same,' 219, n.
- einander, 196.
- Einer, used for Jemand, 213.
- einige, 236.
- einmal, distinguished from *cinmal*, 228, n.
- einß, 217.
- ein und derselbe, 204, n. 2.
- el, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 2.
- Elent, its derivation, 131, 1 (b.), n.
- elf, its derivation, 218, n.
- Elliptical sentences, 316, n.; changed into regular sentences, 371.
- eln and -ern, terminations of verbs, 271.
- en, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 2.
- emp, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 3.
- Emphasis, 27.
- en, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 2; suffix of adjectives, 275, 6.
- end, suffix of substantives, 273, 7; shewing their gender, 132, 3.
- ens, termination of adverbs, 240, 241, n.
- ent, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 2.
- entlang, 251.
- entweder . . . oder, 258.
- en, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.
- er, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 4.
- er, ending of substantives, 272, 1; shews their gender, 132, 2.
- er, -el, -en, insignificant terminations of some substantives and adjectives, 264.
- ern, suffix of adjectives, 275, 6.
- erst, adverb, its signification, 243, 4.
- erste, its derivation, 186.
- er, prefix of substantives, 277, 4.
- es, used for the English 'so,' 193, n.
- es giebt, 303, n. 3.

- ffin* or *-iffin*, suffix of substantives, 272, 2, *n.*  
*etliche*, 236.  
*etwa*, 217.  
*etwas*, 213, 216, 236.  
*eu*, its pronunciation, 7.  
 Euphonic letters and syllables in derivative words, 269; in compound substantives, 277, 1.  
*every* expressed by *alle*, 234.  
*ey*, antiquated, 7, *n.*  
*falls*, 257, 3; 382.  
*fehlen* and similar verbs, their construction, 303, *n.* 1.  
*folglich*, 258.  
 Foreign substantives, their gender, 132, 7; their declension, 150-153.  
 Foreign words, their pronunciation, 33-39.  
 Formation of words, 262-279.  
 Fractional numbers, 229.  
*freilich*, 258.  
*für*, 247, 378; with verbs of declaring, and the like, 342, 343.  
*fürß*, its derivation, 145, *n.*  
 Future tense, 56, 308.  
 Future-perfect tense, 56, 311.  
*g*, its pronunciation, 12.  
*ganß*, 175, 4; differs from *all*, 234, *n.* 1.  
*ge*, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 8; augment in the past participle of verbs, 63; in substantives and adjectives, 266, 274; gender of substantives beginning with *ge*, 132, 5.  
*gegen*, 247, 368, 378; governed by adjectives, 359, 2.  
*gegenüber*, 250.  
*gehen*, its derivation and conjugation, 88, *n.*  
*gesingen* and similar verbs, their construction, 303, *n.* 2.  
*gemäß*, 250, 374, 378.  
*gen*, 247, *n.*  
 Gender of living beings, 129; of seasons, months, days, stones, mountains, rivers, countries, towns, metals, and of words originally not substantives, 131; of monosyllables, 132, 1; of substantives having terminations, 132, 2-4; of substantives beginning with *ge*, 132, 5; of compound substantives, 132, 6; of foreign substantives, 132, 7; substantives having two genders, 133.  
 Genitive expresses the attribute, 328-334; denotes possession, 329; denotes a personal connection, 330; subjective genitive, 331; objective genitive, 332; partitive genitive, 333; not used with substantives denoting measure, weight, or number, 334; genitive used in an adverbial sense, 240, 3; with transitive verbs, 346; with reflexive verbs, 347; with impersonal expressions, 348; with intransitive verbs, 349; with adjectives, 350; expresses locality, 366, *n.*; time, 369; manner, 374.  
*gern*, its signification, 243, 3; 317, 3; its degrees of comparison, 242.  
*gesamt*, 234, *n.* 2.  
*gleichwohl*, 258.  
 Grammatical accent, 27.  
 Grammatical subject, 293.  
*groß*, its degrees of comparison, 186.  
*gut*, its degrees of comparison, 186, 242.  
*h*, mute after a vowel, 6, 3; after *t*, 8.  
*haben*, its conjugation, 64; its use, 65; joined to the supine of verbs, to express possibility and necessity, 318.  
*-haft*, suffix of adjectives, 275, 5.  
*halb*, 175, 4; 229.  
*halben* or *halber*, 249, 378.  
*-heit*, suffix of substantives, 273, 5; shewing their gender, 132, 8.  
*her*, *herauf*, *heraus*, &c. 211.

**Ger**, its derivation, 145, *n*.  
**hier**, 211; with a preposition annexed, 201, *n*. 2.  
**hin**, **hinauf**, **hinaus**, &c., 211.  
**hingegen**, 258.  
**hinnen** or **von hinnen**, 211.  
**hinsichts** or **hinsichtlich**, 249, *n*. 2.  
**hinter**, preposition, 248; prefix, 109.  
**hoch**, its declension, 173, *n*. 3; its degrees of comparison, 186.  
**Hours of the day**, 223.  
**hübſch**, its derivation, 275, 2, *n*. 1.  
**hundert**, 221.  
*i*, its pronunciation, 3.  
**-ich** or **-icht**, suffix of substantives, 272, 5.  
**-icht**, suffix of adjectives, 275, 7.  
*ie*, its pronunciation, 6.  
**-ie**, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.  
**-ig**, suffix of substantives, 272, 5; shewing their gender, 132, 2; suffix of adjectives, 275, 1.  
**-if**, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.  
**im Begriff sein**, 308, *n*. 1.  
**immer**, 217; joined to relative pronouns and pronominal adverbs, 212.  
**Imperative mood**, 55, 316; formation of the imperative, 61, 5; an imperative clause sometimes expresses condition or concession, 382, *n*.  
**Imperfect tense**, 56, 61; its use, 309.  
**Impersonal verbs**, 54; their use, 302; verbs which assume an impersonal form, 303; with the accusative, 340; with the dative, 355.  
**in**, preposition, 248, 368; governed by adjectives, 359, 2.  
**-in**, suffix of substantives, 272, 2; shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
**Indefinite numerals**, 231-237.  
**Indefinite pronominal adverbs**, 217.  
**Indefinite pronouns**, 218-216.

**indef**, **intessen**, **intem**, 257, 3; 370.  
**inbeſſen**, 258.  
**Indicative mood**, 55, 313; used for the imperative, 313, *n*.  
**Indirect speech**, 314, 1.  
**Infinitive**, 58; infinitive of auxiliary verbs of mood and of some other verbs used for the past participle, 102; infinitives used as substantives, 116; an infinitive expresses the subject of a sentence, 286; the object, 365; has the force of a present participle, 365, *notes*.  
**-ing**, suffix of substantives, 272, 5; shewing their gender, 132, 2.  
**inmitten**, 249, *n*. 2.  
**innerhalb**, 249, 368.  
**Inseparable compound verbs**, 106, 107, 109, 110, *n*.; 111, 1.  
**Intensity expressed by adverbs**, 374; by a clause, 376-377.  
**Interjections**, 260-261.  
**Interrogative pronouns**, 205-207.  
**Intransitive verbs**, 51, 67; passive voice of intransitive verbs used impersonally, 297, 304.  
**-ion**, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.  
**-iren**, ending of verbs, 271; their accent, 38.  
**irgent**, 217.  
**Irregular conjugation**, 93-101.  
**-iſch**, suffix of adjectives, 275, 2.  
*i*, its pronunciation, 10.  
**ja**, its peculiar meanings, 243, 10.  
**je**, 217; before cardinal numerals, 222.  
**je . . . deſto**, 182, *n*. 2; 376.  
**jeber**, 233; used in the sense of 'any,' 214.  
**Sebermann**, 213-214.  
**jeboch**, 258.  
**jebeiber**, 233.  
**jeglicher**, 233.  
**Jemand**, 213.  
**jener**, its declension, 199; its use, 201.

jenfelt, 249.  
jeht, 243.

faunt . . . alē, 370, *n.* 2.  
fein, 232; *Keiner*, used for *Nie-*  
*mand*, 213, 216, *n.* 2.  
-feit, suffix of substantives, 273, 5;  
shewing their gender, 132, 3.  
femen, its signification, 94, *n.*  
fennen, with the past participle,  
365, *n.* 2.  
fennen, its conjugation, 97; its use,  
317, 1, and *note*.  
kraft, 249.

lang, joined to an accusative, ex-  
presses a duration of time, 369.  
längs, 249.  
lassen, its use, 317, 7; with reflexive  
expressions, 300; in the  
imperative, 316.  
laut, 249, 378.  
-lei, joined to numerals, 226.  
-lein, suffix of substantives, 272, 4;  
shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
legte, its derivation, 186.  
-lich, suffix of adverbs, 240; of  
adjectives, 275, 3.  
lieber, am liebsten, 243, 3.  
-ling, suffix of substantives, 272, 4;  
shewing their gender, 132, 2.  
-lings, suffix of adverbs, 240.

man, 213, 215.  
mancher, 235.  
mangeln, its construction, 303, *n.* 1.  
Manner expressed by adverbs, pre-  
positions, or the genitive, 374;  
by a clause, 375-377; conjunc-  
tions denoting manner, 257, 3.  
Männin, obsolete, 272, 2, *n.*  
mehr, 237.  
mehrere, 237.  
meiste, with the definite article, 237.  
Mensch, its derivation, 145, *n.*; 275,  
2, *n.* 1.  
Million, its derivation, 218, *n.*; its  
declension, 221.  
miß, prefix, 107, 277, 4; 279, 7.

mit, 246, 374; governed by adjectives,  
359, 2.

Mode of addressing a person, 194.  
Modification of vowels, 4; in con-  
jugation, 61, 4 and 5; in the  
plural of substantives, 139; in  
the degrees of comparison, 181,  
241; in derivation, 268, 270, 274.  
mögen, its conjugation, 98; its use,  
317, 3, and *note*.  
Moods of the verb, 55, 312-316.  
Multiplicative numerals, 227.  
müssen, its conjugation, 99; its use,  
317, 4, and *note*.

nach, 246, 368, 374, 378; governed  
by verbs, 359, 1.  
nachdem, 257, 3; 370.  
nächst, 250.  
Nachtigall, its derivation, 277, 1, *n.*  
naß, its degrees of comparison, 186.  
Names of materials, 114, 166.  
nämlich, 258.  
neben, 252.  
neht, 250.  
nicht, its position in a sentence, 47.  
nicht . . . sondern, 258.  
nichts, 213, 216.  
nichtsbedürftiger, 258.  
nie, 217.  
Niemand, 213.  
nimmer, 217.  
nirgend or nirgendē, 217.  
-niß, suffix of substantives, 273, 2;  
shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
noch, adverb, its significations, 243, 6.  
noch ein, equivalent to 'another',  
223, *n.*  
*no sooner . . . than*, 370, *n.* 2.  
Numbers stated by approximation,  
238.  
Numerals, cardinal, 218-221; dis-  
tributive, 222; ordinal, 223-224;  
distinctive, 225; variative, 226;  
multiplicative, 227; reiterative,  
228; fractional, 229; indefinite,  
231-237.  
nun, adverb, 243, 1; conjunction,  
257, 3; 379.

- nur, joined to relative pronouns and pronominal adverbs, 212.
- o, its pronunciation, 3.
- ö, its pronunciation, 4.
- ob, preposition, 246, *n.*; conjunction, 257, 1; used in a concessive sense, 383.
- überhalb, 249.
- obgleich, obgleich, obwohl, ob auch, 257, 3; 383.
- Objective combination, 281, 338-383.
- Objects of a sentence, 45, 281; completing object expressed by the accusative, 338-345; by the genitive, 346-350; by the dative, 351-358; by prepositions, 359; by a clause, or by the supine, or the infinitive, 360-365.
- oder, 258, 259.
- ohne, 251, 374; ohne daß or ohne with the supine, 372, *n.*
- oi. its pronunciation, 7, *n.*
- one, indefinite pronoun, 215; not expressed in German, 215, *n.* 1; expressed by ein gewisser, 215, *n.* 2.
- Ordinal numerals, 223; in apposition, 224, 326.
- Participial constructions, 337; changed into regular sentences, 371, 379; express the simultaneousness of one action with another, 372; express state or condition, 378.
- Participles, 58; used as adjectives, 177; as substantives, 178; participle gerundive in *end*, 318, *n.*
- Passive voice of verbs, 52; specimen, 108; passive of transitive verbs, 296; of intransitive verbs, 297.
- Past participle, 61, 3; 63; used for the imperative, 316, *n.*
- Perfect tense, 56; its use, 307.
- Personal pronouns, 191-194.
- pf, its pronunciation, 26.
- Place and direction expressed by adverbs or prepositions, 366; by cases, 366, *n.*; by a clause, 367.
- Pluperfect tense, 56; its use, 310.
- Positive degree, 179.
- Possessive pronouns, 197-198.
- Predicate, 40, 281, 287; its agreement with the subject, 288-294.
- Predicative combination, 281, 286-318.
- Prefixes of verbs, inseparable, 107, 279; separable, 108; separable and inseparable, 109; compound prefixes, 110; prefixes of substantives, 277, 4.
- Prepositions, general remarks, 244-245; genuine prepositions, governing the dative, 246; accusative, 247; dative and accusative, 248; spurious prepositions governing the genitive, 249; dative, 250; accusative, 251; dative and accusative, 252; prepositions joined to adverbs, 253-254; express the object of verbs and adjectives, 359.
- Present tense, 56, 61, 5; its use, 306; for the imperfect, 306, *n.* 1; for the future, 306, *n.* 2.
- Pronominal adverbs, 211; indefinite, 217.
- Pronouns, 189-217; personal, 191-194; reflective, 195; reciprocal, 196; possessive, 197-198; demonstrative, 199-204; interrogative, 205-207; relative, 208-210; indefinite, 218-216.
- Pronunciation, 3-39.
- Proper names, 114, 165.
- Protasis or antecedent clause, 284.
- Purpose expressed by a preposition, 378, 6; by a clause, 381; mood in clauses expressing a purpose, 314, 3.
- qu, its pronunciation, 13.
- Radical verbs, 73.
- Reflective pronouns, 195; used in a reciprocal sense, 196.

- Reflective verbs, 53; specimen, 105; their use, 298-300; verbs which are used only in the reflective form, 301; reflective verbs used impersonally, 304; have the reflective pronoun in the accusative, 339; some in the dative, 339, *n.*  
 Reiterative numerals, 228.  
 Relative pronouns, 208-210; introduce adjective clauses, 257, 2; 336; cannot be suppressed in German, 336, *n.* 1.  
 Relative superlative of adjectives, 183-184; of adverbs, 241, 2.  
 -*rich*, suffix of substantives, 272, 5.  
 Roots of words, 262.  
 rücksichtlich, 249, *n.* 2.  
*r*, its pronunciation, 15; *ß* final, 1, *n.*; *ij* and *ß*, 16.  
*ß*, termination of adverbs, 240.  
 's, a contraction for *es*, 191, *n.* 2.  
 -*sal*, suffix of substantives, 272, 3; shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
 -*sam*, suffix of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 2.  
*sännt*, 250.  
*sänntlich*, 234, *n.* 2.  
*sch*, its pronunciation, 17.  
 -*schaft*, suffix of substantives, 273, 6; shewing their gender, 132, 3.  
*schon*, 143, 5.  
*sein*, its conjugation, 66, 83, *n.*; verbs conjugated with *sein*, 67, 71; joined to the supine of verbs, 318.  
*seit*, preposition, 250, 368; conjunction, 257, 3; 370.  
*seittem*, 257, 3; 370.  
 -*sel*, suffix of substantives, 273, 3; shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
*selbst* or *selber*, 195, *n.*  
 -*selig*, suffix of adjectives, 275, 1, *n.*  
 Sentences, their construction, 40-49; direct principal sentence, 40-47; inverted principal sentence, 48; dependent sentence, 49; simple and compound sentences, 280-285. See also 'Clauses.'  
*so*, pronominal adverb, 211; obsolete relative pronoun, 208, *n.* 2; obsolete conjunction, 257, 3; 382; introduces an inference, 379, 382, 383.  
*so . . . als* or *so . . . so*, 376.  
*so . . . auch*, 257, 3; 383.  
*so bald (als)*, 257, 3; 370.  
*so . . . daß*, 377.  
*so lange*, 257, 3.  
*solcher*, its declension, 199; its use, 202.  
*sollen*, its conjugation, 100; its use, 317, 5, and *note*.  
*sonder*, obsolete preposition, 251, *n.*  
*sontern*, 258, 259.  
*sonst*, 258.  
*sonie*, 257, 3; 370.  
*sowohl . . . als*, 258.  
*st*, suffix of substantives, 265.  
*statt*, 249.  
*stehen*, its conjugation and derivation, 90, *n.*; joined to the supine of verbs, 318.  
 Subject and predicate, 40, 281; agreement between subject and predicate, 286-294.  
 Subjunctive mood. See 'Conjunctive mood.'  
 Substantive clause, 283; expresses the subject of a sentence, 286; the object, 360, 362-364.  
 Substantives, their kinds, 113-116; their gender, 129-133; their declension, 134-170; denoting measure, weight, or number, 169; substantives used only in the plural, 170; accent of substantives ending in *st*, 36.  
 Superlative degree of adjectives, 183-186; of adverbs, 241-242.  
 Supine of verbs, 59; with *haben* and *sein*, to express possibility and necessity, 318; has the force of an objective genitive, 332, *n.* 2; expresses the object of a sentence, 361-362, 364; joined to *ohne*, 372, *n.*; expresses a purpose, 381.

- t** or **te**, suffix of substantives, 265.  
**tät**, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.  
**tausent**, 221.  
 Tenses of the verb, 56; their use, 305-311.  
 Terminations of conjugation, 62; of the declension of substantives, 138; of adjectives, 173.  
**th**, its pronunciation, 8.  
**theils** . . . **theils**, 258.  
**thum**, suffix of substantives, 273, 6; shewing their gender, 132, 4.  
**thun**, its conjugation, 94.  
 Time expressed by adverbs and prepositions, 368; by cases, 369; by a clause, 370-372; conjunctions denoting time, 257, 3.  
 Transitive verbs, 51; derivation, 270, 279, 1; passive form, 295.  
**trug**, 249, 378.  
**ü** used for double **y**, 20.  
**u**, its pronunciation, 3.  
**ü**, its pronunciation, 4.  
**über**, preposition, 248, 368; governed by verbs, 347, 349, 359, 1; prefix, 109.  
**um**, prefix, 109; preposition, 247, 368; governed by verbs, 359, 1; with the supine, 381.  
**um** . . . **wissen**, 249, 378.  
**un**, prefixed to substantives, 277, 4; to adjectives, 278, *n*.  
**unbeschadet**, 249, *n*. 2.  
**unb**, 258, 259.  
**ung**, suffix of substantives, 273, 1; shewing their gender, 132, 3.  
**ungachtet**, preposition, 249, 378; conjunction, 257, 3.  
**unter**, preposition, 248, 368; prefix, 109.  
**unterhalb**, 249.  
**unweit** or **unfern**, 249.  
**ur**, prefix of substantives and adjectives, 277, 4.  
**ur**, ending of substantives, shewing their gender, 132, 7.  
**ut**, ending of substantives, 273, 7; shewing their gender, 132, 3, *n*.  
**v**, its pronunciation, 24.  
 Variative numerals, 226.  
**ver**, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 5.  
 Verbals, 58.  
 Verbs, 50-112; subjective, objective, transitive and intransitive, 51; verbs conjugated with **sein**, 67, 71; strong verbs, 70, 71; classification of strong verbs, 74-91; weak verbs, 72; irregular verbs, 93-101; specimen of the passive voice, 103; specimen of a reflective verb, 105; compound verbs, 106-112; use of the active and passive forms, 295-297; of reflective verbs, 298-301; of impersonal verbs, 302-304; of the tenses, 305-311; of the moods, 312-316; of auxiliary verbs of mood, 317-318.  
**vermitteltst**, 249, 378.  
**vermöge**, 249, 378.  
**viel**, 237; its degrees of comparison, 186.  
**voll**, its position, 322; joined to the accusative or genitive, 350, *n*.; prefix of verbs, 111, 2, *n*.  
**von**, preposition, 246, 378; used for the genitive, 159, 333, 335; governed by verbs, 346, 359, 1; by adjectives, 359, 2.  
**vor**, 248, 368, 378; governed by verbs, 359, 1; by adjectives, 359, 2.  
 Vowels, pure, 3; modified, 4; long and short, 5; double, 6.  
**w**, its pronunciation, 23.  
**während**, preposition, 249, 368; conjunction, 257, 3; 370.  
**wann**, pronominal adverb, 211; introduces an adjective clause, 336; conjunction, 257, *n*.  
**(von) wannen**, 211.  
**was**, interrogative pronoun, its declension, 205; its use, 206;

- sometimes signifies 'why,' 206;  
*n.* 2; relative pronoun, 208-209;  
 used for *etwas*, 216, *n.* 1.
- was* für ein, its declension, 205; its  
 use, 207.
- weiter* . . . noch, 258.
- wegen*, 249, 378.
- weil*, 257, 3; 370; differs from *da*,  
 379.
- welcher*, interrogative pronoun, its  
 declension, 205; its use, 207;  
 relative pronoun, 208, 210;  
 employed for 'some,' 236,  
*n.* 1.
- wenig*, 237; its degrees of compari-  
 son, 186.
- wenn*, 257, 3; 370; differs from  
*als*, 370, *n.* 1.; introduces a con-  
 dition, 382.
- wenn anders*, 257, 3.
- wenn gleich*, *wenn schon*, *wenn auch*,  
 257, 3; 383.
- wer*, interrogative pronoun, its de-  
 clension, 205; its use, 206;  
 relative pronoun, 208-209; used  
 for *Jemand*, 216, *n.* 1.
- wären*, its conjugation, 68.
- wiber*, preposition, 247, 378; pre-  
 fix, 107.
- wie*, pronominal adverb, 211; intro-  
 duces an adjective clause, 336;  
 conjunction, 257, 3; introduces  
 an adverbial clause, 370, 375.
- wie auch*, 257, 3; 383.
- wieder*, prefix, 109.
- wiewohl*, 257, 3.
- Wish*, expressed by the mood of the  
 verb, 314, 2; 315, 3.
- wissen*, 94.
- wo*, pronominal adverb, 211; intro-  
 duces an adjective clause, 336;  
*wo* or *wor* with a preposition  
 annexed is used for *was*, 205;  
 conjunction, 257, 3; 382.
- wofern*, 257, 3; 382.
- woher*, *wohin*, 211.
- wohl*, its degrees of comparison, 242;  
 its peculiar significations, 243,  
 7; 258.
- wollen*, its conjugation, 101; its  
 use, 308, *n.* 1.; 317, 6, *and note*.
- werden*, omitted, 104.
- x*, its pronunciation, 22.
- y*, a foreign vowel, 3.
- z*, its pronunciation, 20.
- zen* and *-sen*, endings of verbs, 271.
- zer*, prefix, 31, 107, 279, 6.
- zig* in numerals, its derivation,  
 218, *n.*
- zu*, 246, 368, 374, 378; with verbs  
 of choosing, appointing, and the  
 like, 342; followed by *als daß* or  
*um zu*, 377.
- zufolge*, 249, 378.
- zuwider*, 250, 378.
- zwar*, 258.
- zwei*, its declension, 220.
- zwischen*, 252.
- zwoölf*, its derivation, 218, *n.*

THE END.









